



## Design Guide

VLT<sup>®</sup> AQUA Drive FC 202 110-1400 kW



Contents

<b>1 How to Read this Design Guide</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>2 Introduction</b>	<b>12</b>
2.1 Safety	12
2.2 Software Version	13
2.3 CE Labelling	13
2.4 Air Humidity	14
2.5 Aggressive Environments	14
2.6 Vibration and Shock	15
2.7 Frequency Converter Benefits	15
2.8 Control Structures	18
2.8.1 Control Principle	18
2.8.2 Control Structure Open Loop	22
2.8.3 Local (Hand On) and Remote (Auto On) Control	22
2.8.4 Control Structure Closed Loop	23
2.8.5 Feedback Handling	24
2.8.6 Feedback Conversion	25
2.8.7 Reference Handling	26
2.8.8 Example of Closed Loop PID Control	27
2.8.9 Programming Order	28
2.8.10 Tuning the Closed Loop Controller	29
2.8.11 Manual PID Adjustment	29
2.9 General Aspects of EMC	30
2.9.1 General Aspects of EMC Emissions	30
2.9.2 Emission Requirements	31
2.9.3 EMC Test Results (Emission)	32
2.9.4 General Aspects of Harmonics Emission	32
2.9.5 Harmonics Emission Requirements	33
2.9.6 Harmonics Test Results (Emission)	33
2.10 Immunity Requirements	33
2.11 Galvanic Isolation (PELV)	34
2.12 Earth Leakage Current	35
2.13 Control with Brake Function	36
2.14 Mechanical Brake Control	37
2.15 Extreme Running Conditions	37
2.15.1 Motor Thermal Protection	37
2.15.2 Safe Stop Operation (optional)	39
<b>3 Selection</b>	<b>40</b>
3.1 General Specifications	40

3.1.1 Mains Supply 3x380-480 V AC	40
3.1.2 Mains Supply 3x525-690 V AC	42
3.1.3 12-Pulse Specifications	45
3.2 Efficiency	51
3.3 Acoustic Noise	51
3.4 Peak Voltage on Motor	52
3.5 Special Conditions	52
3.5.1 Purpose of Derating	52
3.5.2 Derating for Low Air Pressure	52
3.5.3 Derating for Running at Low Speed	53
3.5.4 Automatic Adaptations to Ensure Performance	54
3.5.5 Derating for Ambient Temperature	54
3.6 Options and Accessories	56
3.6.1 General Purpose Input Output Module MCB 101	56
3.6.2 Digital Inputs - Terminal X30/1-4	57
3.6.3 Analog Voltage Inputs - Terminal X30/10-12	57
3.6.4 Digital Outputs - Terminal X30/5-7	57
3.6.5 Analog Outputs - Terminal X30/5+8	57
3.6.6 Relay Option MCB 105	58
3.6.7 24 V Back-Up Option MCB 107 (Option D)	59
3.6.8 Analog I/O option MCB 109	59
3.6.9 General Description	61
3.6.10 Extended Cascade Controller MCO 101	62
3.6.11 Brake Resistors	62
3.6.12 Remote Mounting Kit for LCP	63
3.6.13 Input Filters	63
3.6.14 Output Filters	63
3.7 High Power Options	64
3.7.1 Installation of Back Channel Cooling Kit in Rittal Enclosures	64
3.7.2 Outside Installation/NEMA 3R Kit for Rittal Enclosures	66
3.7.3 Installation on Pedestal	66
3.7.4 Installation of Input Plate Options	68
3.7.5 Installation of Mains Shield for Frequency Converters	68
3.7.6 D-frame Options	68
3.7.6.1 Load Share Terminals	68
3.7.6.2 Regeneration Terminals	68
3.7.6.3 Anti-Condensation Heater	69
3.7.6.4 Brake Chopper	69
3.7.6.5 Mains Shield	69
3.7.6.6 Ruggedized Printed Circuit Boards	69

3.7.6.7 Heat Sink Access Panel	69
3.7.6.8 Mains Disconnect	69
3.7.6.9 Contactor	69
3.7.6.10 Circuit Breaker	69
3.7.7 Frame Size F Options	69
<b>4 How to Order</b>	<b>72</b>
4.1 Ordering Form	72
4.1.1 Drive Configurator	72
4.1.2 Type Code String	73
4.2 Ordering Numbers	77
4.2.1 Ordering Numbers: Options and Accessories	77
4.2.2 Ordering Numbers: Advanced Harmonic Filters	78
4.2.3 Ordering Numbers: Sine-Wave Filter Modules, 380–690 V AC	83
4.2.4 Ordering Numbers: dU/dt Filters	85
4.2.5 Ordering Numbers: Brake Resistors	86
<b>5 How to Install</b>	<b>87</b>
5.1 Mechanical Installation	87
5.1.1 Mechanical Mounting	90
5.1.2 Pedestal Installation of D-Frames	90
5.1.3 Pedestal Installation on F-Frame Drives	91
5.1.4 Safety Requirements of Mechanical Installation	91
5.2 Pre-installation	91
5.2.1 Planning the Installation Site	91
5.2.2 Receiving the Frequency Converter	92
5.2.3 Transportation and Unpacking	92
5.2.4 Lifting	92
5.2.5 Tools Needed	93
5.2.6 General Considerations	94
5.2.7 Cooling and Airflow	96
5.2.8 Gland/Conduit Entry - IP21 (NEMA 1) and IP54 (NEMA12)	98
5.2.9 Gland/Conduit Entry, 12-Pulse - IP21 (NEMA 1) and IP54 (NEMA12)	99
5.3 Electrical Installation	100
5.3.1 Cables General	100
5.3.2 Preparing Gland Plates for Cables	100
5.3.3 Connection to Mains and Earthing	101
5.3.4 Motor Cable Connection	101
5.3.5 Motor Cables	102
5.3.6 Electrical Installation of Motor Cables	102
5.3.7 Fuses	103

5.3.8 Fuse Specifications	103
5.3.9 Access to Control Terminals	105
5.3.10 Control Terminals	105
5.3.11 Control Cable Terminals	105
5.3.12 Basic Wiring Example	106
5.3.13 Control Cable Length	107
5.3.14 Electrical Installation, Control Cables	107
5.3.15 12-Pulse Control Cables	110
5.3.16 Switches S201, S202 and S801	112
<b>5.4 Connections - Frame Sizes D, E and F</b>	<b>113</b>
5.4.1 Torque	113
5.4.2 Power Connections	114
5.4.3 Power Connections 12-Pulse Drives	134
5.4.4 Shielding against Electrical Noise	144
5.4.5 External Fan Power Supply	144
<b>5.5 Input Options</b>	<b>145</b>
5.5.1 Mains Disconnects	145
5.5.2 Mains Contactors	146
5.5.3 Relay Output D frame	147
5.5.4 Relay Output E & F-Frame	147
<b>5.6 Final Set-Up and Test</b>	<b>147</b>
<b>5.7 Safe Stop Installation</b>	<b>148</b>
5.7.1 Safe Stop Commissioning Test	149
<b>5.8 Installation of Miscellaneous Connections</b>	<b>149</b>
5.8.1 RS-485 Bus Connection	149
5.8.2 How to Connect a PC to the Unit	150
5.8.3 PC Software Tools	150
5.8.3.1 MCT 10	150
5.8.3.2 MCT 31	151
<b>5.9 Safety</b>	<b>151</b>
5.9.1 High Voltage Test	151
5.9.2 Safety Earth Connection	151
<b>5.10 EMC-correct Installation</b>	<b>151</b>
5.10.1 Electrical Installation - EMC Precautions	151
5.10.2 Use of EMC-Correct Cables	153
5.10.3 Earthing of Screened/Armoured Control Cables	153
5.11 Residual Current Device	155
<b>6 Application Examples</b>	<b>156</b>
6.1 Typical Application Examples	156
6.1.1 Start/Stop	156

6.1.2 Pulse Start/Stop	156
6.1.3 Potentiometer Reference	157
6.1.4 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)	157
6.1.5 Smart Logic Control	157
6.1.6 Smart Logic Control Programming	158
6.1.7 SLC Application Example	158
6.1.8 BASIC Cascade Controller	160
6.1.9 Pump Staging with Lead Pump Alternation	161
6.1.10 System Status and Operation	161
6.1.11 Cascade Controller Wiring Diagram	162
6.1.12 Fixed Variable Speed Pump Wiring Diagram	163
6.1.13 Lead Pump Alternation Wiring Diagram	163
<b>7 RS-485 Installation and Set-up</b>	<b>165</b>
7.1 Introduction	165
7.1.1 Hardware Setup	165
7.1.2 Parameter Settings for Modbus Communication	165
7.1.3 EMC Precautions	165
7.2 FC Protocol Overview	166
7.3 Network Connection	166
7.4 FC Protocol Message Framing Structure	167
7.4.1 Content of a Character (byte)	167
7.4.2 Telegram Structure	167
7.4.3 Telegram Length (LGE)	167
7.4.4 Frequency Converter Address (ADR)	167
7.4.5 Data Control Byte (BCC)	167
7.4.6 The Data Field	168
7.4.7 The PKE Field	168
7.4.8 Parameter Number (PNU)	169
7.4.9 Index (IND)	169
7.4.10 Parameter Value (PWE)	169
7.4.11 Data Types Supported	170
7.4.12 Conversion	170
7.4.13 Process Words (PCD)	170
7.5 Examples	170
7.5.1 Writing a Parameter Value	170
7.5.2 Reading a Parameter Value	171
7.6 Modbus RTU Overview	171
7.6.1 Assumptions	171
7.6.2 Prerequisite Knowledge	171
7.6.3 Modbus RTU Overview	171

7.6.4 Frequency Converter with Modbus RTU	172
7.7 Network Configuration	172
7.7.1 Frequency Converter with Modbus RTU	172
7.8 Modbus RTU Message Framing Structure	172
7.8.1 Frequency Converter with Modbus RTU	172
7.8.2 Modbus RTU Message Structure	172
7.8.3 Start/Stop Field	173
7.8.4 Address Field	173
7.8.5 Function Field	173
7.8.6 Data Field	173
7.8.7 CRC Check Field	173
7.8.8 Coil Register Addressing	174
7.8.9 Function Codes Supported by Modbus RTU	175
7.9 How to Access Parameters	177
7.9.1 Parameter Handling	177
7.9.2 Storage of Data	177
7.9.3 IND	177
7.9.4 Text Blocks	177
7.9.5 Conversion Factor	177
7.9.6 Parameter Values	177
7.10 Examples	177
7.10.1 Read Coil Status (01 HEX)	177
7.10.2 Force/Write Single Coil (05 HEX)	178
7.10.3 Force/Write Multiple Coils (0F HEX)	178
7.10.4 Read Holding Registers (03 HEX)	178
7.10.5 Preset Single Register (06 HEX)	179
7.11 Danfoss FC Control Profile	179
7.11.1 Control Word According to FC Profile (8-10 Control Profile=FC profile)	179
7.11.2 Status Word According to FC Profile (STW) (8-10 Control Profile = FC profile)	181
7.11.3 Bus Speed Reference Value	183
<b>8 Troubleshooting</b>	<b>184</b>
8.1 Status Messages	184
<b>Index</b>	<b>188</b>

# 1 How to Read this Design Guide

## 1.1.1 Copyright, Limitation of Liability and Revision Rights

This publication contains information proprietary to Danfoss. By accepting and using this manual, the user agrees to use the information contained herein solely for operating equipment from Danfoss or equipment from other vendors if such equipment is intended for communication with Danfoss equipment over a serial communication link. This publication is protected under the Copyright laws of Denmark and most other countries.

Danfoss does not warrant that a software program produced according to the guidelines provided in this manual functions properly in every physical, hardware, or software environment.

Although Danfoss has tested and reviewed the documentation within this manual, Danfoss makes no warranty or representation, neither expressed nor implied, with respect to this documentation, including its quality, performance, or fitness for a particular purpose.

In no event shall Danfoss be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages arising out of the use, or the inability to use information contained in this manual, even if advised of the possibility of such damages. In particular, Danfoss is not responsible for any costs, including but not limited to costs incurred as a result of lost profits or revenue, loss or damage of equipment, loss of computer programs, loss of data, the costs to substitute these losses, or any claims by third parties.

Danfoss reserves the right to revise this publication at any time and to change its contents without prior notice or any obligation to notify former or present users of such revisions or changes.

## 1.1.2 Available Literature

- VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202, 0.25-90 kW, Operating Instructions provide the necessary information for getting the frequency converter up and running.
- VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202, 110-400 kW, D frame Operating Instructions provide installation, startup, and basic information for the newest D-frame models.
- VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202 High Power Operating Instructions provide the necessary information for getting the HP frequency converter up and running.
- VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202, 110-1400 kW, Design Guide provides all technical information about the frame D, E, and F frequency converter and customer design and applications.
- VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202 Programming Guide provides information on how to programme and includes complete parameter descriptions.
- VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202 Profibus.
- VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202 DeviceNet.
- Output Filters Design Guide.
- VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202 Cascade Controller.
- Application Note: Submersible Pump Application
- Application Note: Master/Follower Operation Application
- Application Note: Drive Closed Loop and Sleep Mode
- Instruction: Analog I/O Option MCB109
- Instruction: Panel through mount kit
- VLT® Active Filter Operating Instruction.

Danfoss technical literature is also available online at [www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Documentations/Technical+Documentation.htm](http://www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Documentations/Technical+Documentation.htm).

### Symbols

The following symbols are used in this manual.



Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which could result in death or serious injury.



Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which can result in minor or moderate injury. It can also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

## CAUTION

Indicates a situation that could result in equipment or property-damage-only accidents.

## NOTE

Indicates highlighted information to regard with attention to avoid mistakes or operate equipment at less than optimal performance.


**Table 1.1 Approvals**

### 1.1.3 Abbreviations

Alternating current	AC
American wire gauge	AWG
Ampere/AMP	A
Automatic Motor Adaptation	AMA
Current limit	$I_{LIM}$
Degrees Celsius	°C
Direct current	DC
Drive Dependent	D-TYPE
Electro Magnetic Compatibility	EMC
Electronic Thermal Relay	ETR
Frequency converter	FC
Gram	g
Hertz	Hz
Horsepower	hp
Kilohertz	kHz
Local Control Panel	LCP
Meter	m
Millihenry Inductance	mH
Milliamperere	mA
Millisecond	ms
Minute	min
Motion Control Tool	MCT
Nanofarad	nF
Newton Meters	Nm
Nominal motor current	$I_{M,N}$
Nominal motor frequency	$f_{M,N}$
Nominal motor power	$P_{M,N}$
Nominal motor voltage	$U_{M,N}$
Permanent Magnet motor	PM motor
Protective Extra Low Voltage	PELV
Printed Circuit Board	PCB
Rated Inverter Output Current	$I_{INV}$
Revolutions Per Minute	RPM
Regenerative terminals	Regen
Second	sec.
Synchronous Motor Speed	$n_s$
Torque limit	$T_{LIM}$
Volts	V
The maximum output current	$I_{VLT,MAX}$
The rated output current supplied by the frequency converter	$I_{VLT,N}$

**Table 1.2 Abbreviations**

### 1.1.4 Definitions

**Frequency converter:**
 $I_{VLT,MAX}$ 

The maximum output current.

 $I_{VLT,N}$ 

The rated output current supplied by the frequency converter.

 $U_{VLT, MAX}$ 

The maximum output voltage.

**Input:**
**Control command**

Stop the connected motor with LCP and the digital inputs. Functions are divided into two groups.

Functions in group 1 have higher priority than functions in group 2.

Group 1	Reset, Coasting stop, Reset and Coasting stop, Quick-stop, DC braking, Stop and the "Off" key.
Group 2	Start, Pulse start, Reversing, Start reversing, Jog, and Freeze output

**Table 1.3 Control Command**
**Motor:**
 $f_{JOG}$ 

The motor frequency when the jog function is activated (via digital terminals).

 $f_M$ 

The motor frequency.

 $f_{MAX}$ 

The maximum motor frequency.

 $f_{MIN}$ 

The minimum motor frequency.

 $f_{M,N}$ 

The rated motor frequency (nameplate data).

 $I_M$ 

The motor current.

 $I_{M,N}$ 

The rated motor current (nameplate data).

 $n_{M,N}$ 

The rated motor speed (nameplate data).

 $P_{M,N}$ 

The rated motor power (nameplate data).

 $T_{M,N}$ 

The rated torque (motor).

 $U_M$ 

The instantaneous motor voltage.

 $U_{M,N}$ 

The rated motor voltage (nameplate data).

$\eta_{VLT}$ 

The efficiency of the frequency converter is defined as the ratio between the power output and the power input.

Start-disable command

A stop command belonging to the group 1 control commands - see this group.

Stop command

See Control Command.

**References:**Analog Reference

A signal transmitted to the analog inputs 53 or 54, can be voltage or current.

Bus Reference

A signal transmitted to the serial communication port (FC port).

Preset Reference

A defined preset reference from -100% to +100% of the reference range. Selection of eight preset references via the digital terminals.

Pulse Reference

A pulse frequency signal transmitted to the digital inputs (terminal 29 or 33).

Ref<sub>MAX</sub>

Determines the relationship between the reference input at 100% full scale value (typically 10 V, 20 mA) and the resulting reference. The maximum reference value set in *3-03 Maximum Reference*.

Ref<sub>MIN</sub>

Determines the relationship between the reference input at 0% value (typically 0 V, 0 mA, 4 mA) and the resulting reference. The minimum reference value set in *3-02 Minimum Reference*.

**Miscellaneous:**Analog Inputs

The analog inputs are used for controlling various functions of the frequency converter.

There are two types of analog inputs:

Current input, 0–20 mA, and 4–20 mA

Voltage input, 0–10 V DC.

Analog Outputs

The analog outputs can supply a signal of 0–20 mA, 4–20 mA, or a digital signal.

Automatic Motor Adaptation, AMA

AMA algorithm determines the electrical parameters for the connected motor at standstill.

Brake Resistor

The brake resistor is a module capable of absorbing the brake power generated in regenerative braking. This regenerative braking power increases the intermediate circuit voltage and a brake chopper ensures that the power is transmitted to the brake resistor.

CT Characteristics

Constant torque characteristics used for positive displacement pumps and blowers.

Digital Inputs

The digital inputs can be used for controlling various functions of the frequency converter.

Digital Outputs

The drive features two solid-state outputs that can supply a 24 V DC (max. 40 mA) signal.

DSP

Digital Signal Processor.

Relay Outputs

The frequency converter features two programmable relay outputs.

ETR

Electronic Thermal Relay is a thermal load calculation based on present load and time. Its purpose is to estimate the motor temperature.

GLCP

Graphical Local Control Panel (LCP 102)

Initialising

If initialising is carried out (*14-22 Operation Mode*), the programmable parameters of the frequency converter return to their default settings.

Intermittent Duty Cycle

An intermittent duty rating refers to a sequence of duty cycles. Each cycle consists of an on-load and an off-load period. The operation can be either periodic duty or non-periodic duty.

LCP

The Local Control Panel (LCP) makes up a complete interface for control and programming of the frequency converter. The control panel is detachable and can be installed up to 3 metres from the frequency converter, for example, in a front panel with the installation kit option. The Local Control Panel is available in two versions:

- Numerical LCP 101 (NLCP)
- Graphical LCP 102 (GLCP)

lsb

Least significant bit.

MCM

Short for Mille Circular Mil, an American measuring unit for cable cross-section. 1 MCM  $\equiv$  0.5067 mm<sup>2</sup>.

msb

Most significant bit.

NLCP

Numerical Local Control Panel LCP 101

On-line/Off-line Parameters

Changes to on-line parameters are activated immediately after the data value is changed. Enter [OK] to activate changes to off-line parameters.

PID Controller

The PID controller maintains the desired speed, pressure, temperature by adjusting the output frequency to match the varying load.

RCD

Residual Current Device.

Set-up

Save parameter settings in 4 set-ups. Change between the 4 parameter set-ups and edit one set-up, while another set-up is active.

SFAVM

Switching pattern called Stator Flux oriented Aynchronous Vector Modulation (14-00 Switching Pattern).

Slip Compensation

The frequency converter compensates for the motor slip by giving the frequency a supplement that follows the measured motor load keeping the motor speed almost constant.

Smart Logic Control (SLC)

The SLC is a sequence of user-defined actions executed when the associated user-defined events are evaluated as true by the SLC.

Thermistor

A temperature-dependent resistor placed where the temperature is monitored (frequency converter or motor).

Trip

A state entered in fault situations, for example, the frequency converter is subject to an over-temperature or when the frequency converter is protecting the motor process or mechanism. Restart is prevented until the cause of the fault has disappeared and the trip state is cancelled by activating reset or, in some cases, by being programmed to reset automatically. Do not use trip for personal safety.

Trip Locked

A state entered in fault situations when the frequency converter is protecting itself and requiring physical intervention, for example, the frequency converter is subject to a short circuit on the output. A locked trip can only be cancelled by cutting off mains, removing the cause of the fault, and reconnecting the frequency converter. Restart is prevented until the trip state is cancelled by activating reset or, in some cases, by being programmed to reset automatically. Do not use trip lock for personal safety.

VT Characteristics

Variable torque characteristics used for pumps and fans.

VVC<sup>plus</sup>

If compared with standard voltage/frequency ratio control, Voltage Vector Control (VVC<sup>plus</sup>) improves the dynamics and the stability, both when the speed reference is changed and in relation to the load torque.

60° AVM

Switching pattern called 60° Aynchronous Vector Modulation (14-00 Switching Pattern).

### 1.1.5 Power Factor

The power factor is the relation between  $I_1$  and  $I_{RMS}$ .

$$\text{Power factor} = \frac{\sqrt{3} \times U \times I_1 \times \cos\phi}{\sqrt{3} \times U \times I_{RMS}}$$

The power factor for 3-phase control:

$$= \frac{I_1 \times \cos\phi}{I_{RMS}} = \frac{I_1}{I_{RMS}} \text{ since } \cos\phi = 1$$

The power factor indicates to which extent the frequency converter imposes a load on the mains supply.

The lower the power factor, the higher the  $I_{RMS}$  for the same kW performance.

$$I_{RMS} = \sqrt{I_1^2 + I_5^2 + I_7^2 + \dots + I_n^2}$$

In addition, a high power factor indicates that the different harmonic currents are low.

The built-in DC coils produce a high power factor, which reduces the imposed load on the mains supply.

## 2 Introduction

# 2

### 2.1 Safety

#### 2.1.1 Safety Note

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The voltage of the frequency converter is dangerous whenever connected to mains. Incorrect installation of the motor, frequency converter, or fieldbus could damage the equipment or cause serious personal injury or death. The instructions in this manual, as well as national and local rules and safety regulations, must be complied with.

#### Safety Regulations

1. The frequency converter must be disconnected from mains for repairs. Check that the mains supply has been disconnected and that the necessary time has passed before removing motor and mains plugs.
2. [Stop/Reset] does not disconnect the equipment from mains and is not intended as a safety switch.
3. Correct protective earthing of the equipment must be established, the operator must be protected against supply voltage, and the motor must be protected against overload in accordance with applicable national and local regulations.
4. The earth leakage currents are higher than 3.5 mA.
5. Protection against motor overload comes from *1-90 Motor Thermal Protection*. If this function is desired, set *1-90 Motor Thermal Protection* to data value [4] *ETR trip* (default value) or data value [3] *ETR warning*

#### NOTE

The function is initialised at 1.16 x rated motor current and rated motor frequency. For the North American market: The ETR functions provide class 20 motor overload protection in accordance with NEC.

6. Do not remove the plugs for the motor and mains supply while the frequency converter is connected to mains. Check that the mains supply has been disconnected and that the necessary time has passed before removing motor and mains plugs.
7. The frequency converter has more voltage inputs than L1, L2, and L3, when load sharing (linking of

DC intermediate circuit) and external 24 V DC have been installed. Check that all voltage inputs have been disconnected and that the necessary time has passed before commencing repair work.

#### Installation at High Altitudes

#### **⚠ WARNING**

For installation in altitudes above 3 km (350-500 V), or 2 km (525-690 V), contact Danfoss regarding PELV.

#### Warning against unintended start

1. The motor can be brought to a stop with digital commands, bus commands, references, or a local stop, while the frequency converter is connected to mains. If personal safety considerations make it necessary to ensure that no unintended start occurs, these stop functions are not sufficient.
2. While parameters are being changed, the motor could start. [Stop/Reset] must always be activated; after which data can be modified.
3. A stopped motor may start if faults occur in the electronics of the frequency converter, or if a temporary overload or a fault in the supply mains or the motor connection ceases.

Refer to *VLT® AQUA Drive Operating Instructions* for further safety guidelines.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

#### DISCHARGE TIME!

Frequency converters contain DC-link capacitors that can remain charged even when the frequency converter is not powered. To avoid electrical hazards, disconnect AC mains, any permanent magnet type motors, and any remote DC-link power supplies, including battery backups, UPS and DC-link connections to other frequency converters. Wait for the capacitors to fully discharge before performing any service or repair work. The amount of wait time is listed in the *Discharge Time* table. Failure to wait the specified time after power has been removed before doing service or repair could result in death or serious injury.

Rating [kW]	380–480 V	525–690 V
110–315	20 minutes	
45–400		20 minutes
315–1000	40 minutes	
450–1200		30 minutes

Table 2.1 DC Capacitor Discharge Times

### 2.1.2 Disposal Instruction

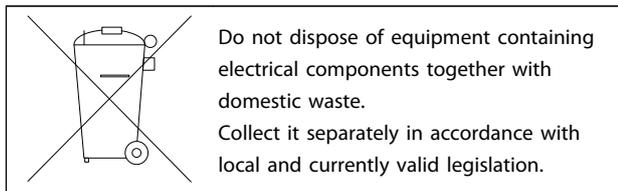


Table 2.2 Disposal Instruction

## 2.2 Software Version

### 2.2.1 Software Version and Approvals

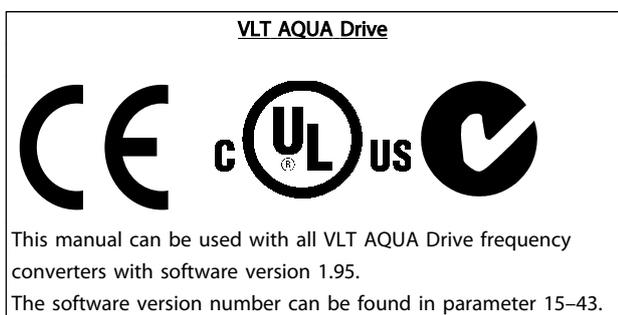


Table 2.3 Software Version

## 2.3 CE Labelling

### 2.3.1 CE Conformity and Labelling

#### What is CE Conformity and Labelling?

The purpose of CE labelling is to avoid technical trade obstacles within EFTA and the EU. The EU has introduced the CE label as a simple way of showing whether a product complies with the relevant EU directives. The CE label says nothing about the specifications or quality of the product. There are three EU directives that regulate frequency converters:

#### The machinery directive (2006/42/EC)

Frequency converters with integrated safety function are now falling under the Machinery Directive. Danfoss CE-labels in accordance with the directive and issues a declaration of conformity upon request. Frequency converters without safety function do not fall under the machinery directive. However, if a frequency converter is supplied for use in a machine, we provide information on safety aspects relating to the frequency converter.

#### The low-voltage directive (2006/95/EC)

Frequency converters must be CE labelled in accordance with the low-voltage directive of January 1, 1997. The directive applies to all electrical equipment and appliances used in the 50–1000 V AC and the 75–1500 V DC voltage ranges. Danfoss CE-labels in accordance with the directive and issues a declaration of conformity upon request.

#### The EMC directive (2004/108/EC)

EMC is short for electromagnetic compatibility. The presence of electromagnetic compatibility means that the mutual interference between different components/appliances does not affect the way the appliances work. The EMC directive came into effect January 1, 1996. Danfoss CE-labels in accordance with the directive and issues a declaration of conformity upon request. To carry out EMC-correct installation, see the instructions in this Design Guide. Additionally, find specifications of which standards the Danfoss products comply with. The filters presented in the specifications are part of the product range. Furthermore, Danfoss offers other types of assistance to ensure optimum EMC result.

### 2.3.2 What Is Covered

The EU "Guidelines on the Application of Council Directive 2004/108/EC" outline three typical situations of using a frequency converter. See the following list for EMC coverage and CE labelling.

1. The frequency converter is sold directly to the end consumer, for example, to a DIY market. The end consumer is a layman who installs the frequency converter for use with a household appliance. For such applications, the frequency converter must be CE labelled in accordance with the EMC directive.
2. The frequency converter is sold for installation in a plant designed by professionals of the trade. The frequency converter and the finished plant do not have to be CE labelled under the EMC directive. However, the unit must comply with the basic EMC requirements of the directive. Compliance is ensured by using components, appliances, and systems that are CE labelled under the EMC directive.
3. The frequency converter is sold as part of a complete system (an air-conditioning system, for example). The complete system must be CE labelled in accordance with the EMC directive. The manufacturer can ensure CE labelling under the EMC directive either by using CE labelled components or by testing the EMC of the system. If the manufacturer chooses to use only CE labelled components, there is no need to test the entire system.

### 2.3.3 Danfoss Frequency Converter and CE Labelling

CE labelling is a positive feature when used for its original purpose, which is to facilitate trade within the EU and EFTA.

CE labelling can cover many different specifications so check the CE label to ensure that it covers the relevant applications.

Danfoss CE labels the frequency converters in accordance with the low-voltage directive, meaning that if the frequency converter is installed correctly, Danfoss guarantees compliance with the low-voltage directive. Danfoss issues a declaration of conformity that confirms our CE labelling in accordance with the low-voltage directive.

If following the instructions for EMC-correct installation and filtering, the CE label also applies.

5.10 *EMC-correct Installation* offers detailed instructions for EMC-correct installation. Furthermore, Danfoss specifies which our products comply with.

### 2.3.4 Compliance with EMC Directive 2004/108/EC

The primary users of the frequency converter are trade professionals, who use it as a complex component forming part of a larger appliance, system, or installation. The responsibility for the final EMC properties of the appliance, system, or installation rests with the installer. As an aid to the installer, Danfoss has prepared EMC installation guidelines for the Power Drive system. If the EMC-correct instructions for installation are followed, the standards and test levels stated for power drive systems are complied with. See 2.10 *Immunity Requirements*.

## 2.4 Air Humidity

The frequency converter has been designed to meet the IEC/EN 60068-2-3 standard, EN 50178 pkt. 9.4.2.2 at 50 °C.

## 2.5 Aggressive Environments

A frequency converter contains many mechanical and electronic components. All are to some extent vulnerable to environmental effects.

### **CAUTION**

**The frequency converter must not be installed in environments with airborne liquids, particles, or gases capable of affecting and damaging the electronic components. Failure to take the necessary protective measures increases the risk of stoppages, thus reducing the life of the frequency converter.**

### Degree of protection as per IEC 60529

The safe stop function can only be installed and operated in a control cabinet with degree of protection IP54 or higher (or equivalent environment) to avoid cross faults and short circuits between terminals, connectors, tracks, and safety-related circuitry caused by foreign objects.

Liquids can be carried through the air and condense in the frequency converter and can cause corrosion of components and metal parts. Steam, oil, and salt water can cause corrosion of components and metal parts. In such environments, use equipment with enclosure rating IP54/IP55. As an extra protection, coated printed circuit boards can be ordered as an option.

Airborne Particles such as dust can cause mechanical, electrical, or thermal failure in the frequency converter. A typical indicator of excessive levels of airborne particles is dust particles around the frequency converter fan. In dusty environments, use equipment with enclosure rating IP54/IP55 or a cabinet for IP00/IP20/NEMA 1 equipment.

In environments with high temperatures and humidity, corrosive gases such as sulphur, nitrogen, and chlorine compounds cause chemical processes on the frequency converter components.

Such chemical reactions damage the electronic components quickly. In such environments, mount the equipment in a cabinet with fresh air ventilation, keeping aggressive gases away from the frequency converter. An extra protection in such areas is a coating of the printed circuit boards, which can be ordered as an option.

### NOTE

**Mounting frequency converters in aggressive environments increases the risk of stoppages and considerably reduces the life of the converter.**

Before installing the frequency converter, check the ambient air for liquids, particles, and gases by observing existing installations in this environment. Typical indicators of harmful airborne liquids are water or oil on metal parts, or corrosion of metal parts.

Excessive dust particle levels are often found on installation cabinets and existing electrical installations. One indicator of aggressive airborne gases is blackening of copper rails and cable ends on existing installations.

D and E enclosures have a stainless steel back channel option to provide more protection in aggressive environments. Proper ventilation is still required for the internal components of the frequency converter. Contact Danfoss for more information.

## 2.6 Vibration and Shock

The frequency converter has been tested according to the procedure based on the following standards:

The frequency converter complies with requirements that exist for units mounted on the walls and floors of production premises, as well as in panels bolted to walls or floors.

- IEC/EN 60068-2-6: Vibration (sinusoidal) - 1970
- IEC/EN 60068-2-64: Vibration, broad-band random

## 2.7 Frequency Converter Benefits

### 2.7.1 Why use a Frequency Converter for Controlling Fans and Pumps?

A frequency converter takes advantage of the fact that centrifugal fans and pumps follow the laws of proportionality for such fans and pumps. For further information, see the text and *Illustration 2.1*.

### 2.7.2 The Clear Advantage - Energy Savings

The clear advantage of using a frequency converter for controlling the speed of fans or pumps lies in the electricity savings.

When comparing with alternative control systems and technologies, a frequency converter is the optimum energy control system for controlling fan and pump systems.

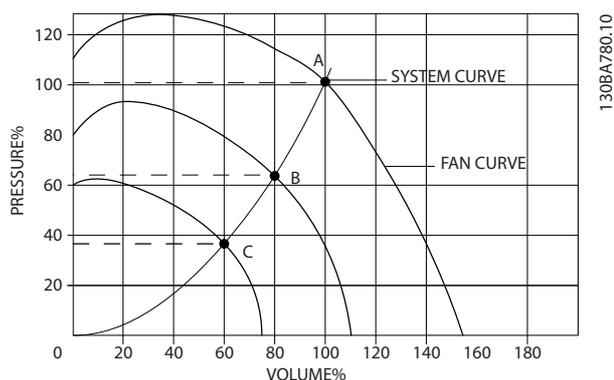


Illustration 2.1 Fan Curves (A, B and C) for Reduced Fan Volumes

More than 50% energy savings can be obtained in typical applications when a frequency converter is used to reduce fan capacity to 60%.

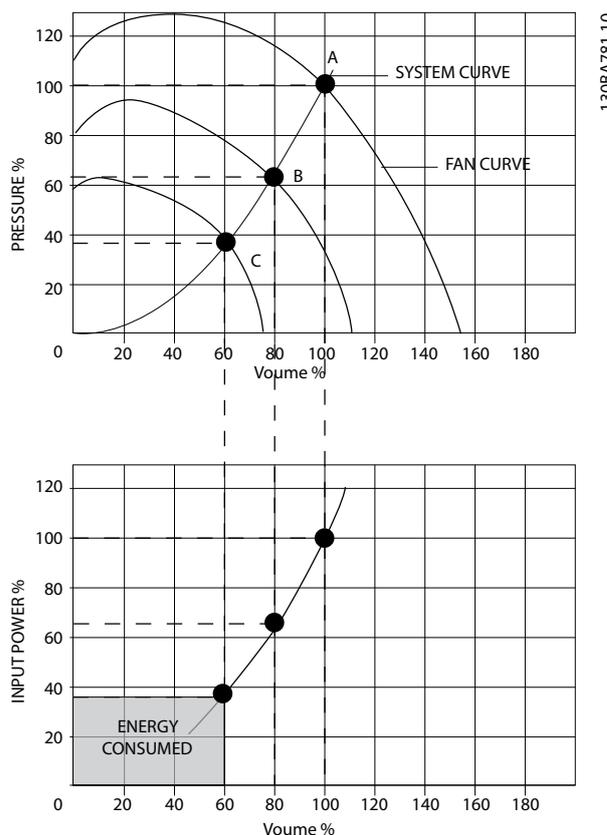


Illustration 2.2 Energy Savings

### 2.7.3 Example of Energy Savings

As can be seen in *Illustration 2.3*, the flow is controlled by changing the RPM. Reducing the speed only 20% from the rated speed reduces the flow by 20%. This reduction occurs because the flow is directly proportional to the RPM. The consumption of electricity, however, is 50% lower.

If the system in question must supply a flow that corresponds to 100% only a few days in a year, while the average is below 80% of the rated flow for the remainder of the year, the amount of energy saved is even more than 50%.

Q = Flow	P = Power
Q <sub>1</sub> = Rated flow	P <sub>1</sub> = Rated power
Q <sub>2</sub> = Reduced flow	P <sub>2</sub> = Reduced power
H = Pressure	n = Speed regulation
H <sub>1</sub> = Rated pressure	n <sub>1</sub> = Rated speed
H <sub>2</sub> = Reduced pressure	n <sub>2</sub> = Reduced speed

Table 2.4 Laws of Proportionality

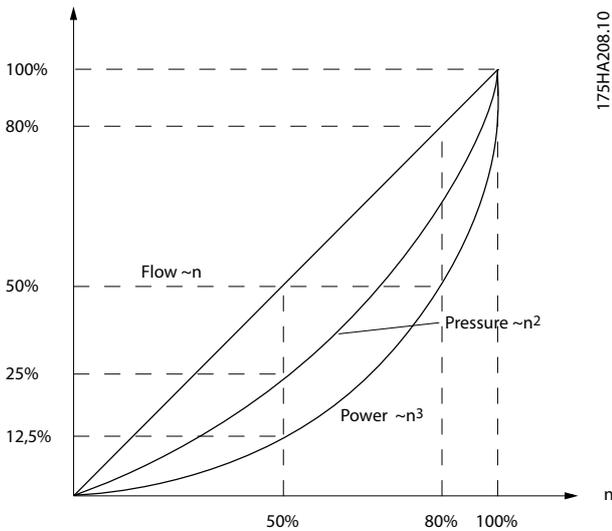


Illustration 2.3 Dependence of Flow, Pressure and Power consumption on RPM

$$\text{Flow : } \frac{Q_1}{Q_2} = \frac{n_1}{n_2}$$

$$\text{Pressure : } \frac{H_1}{H_2} = \left(\frac{n_1}{n_2}\right)^2$$

$$\text{Power : } \frac{P_1}{P_2} = \left(\frac{n_1}{n_2}\right)^3$$

### 2.7.4 Example with Varying Flow Over One Year

Illustration 2.4 is calculated based on pump characteristics obtained from a pump datasheet. The result obtained shows energy savings in excess of 50% at the given flow distribution over a year. The pay back period depends on the price per kWh and the price of the frequency converter. In this example, it is less than a year when compared with valves and constant speed.

#### Energy savings

$P_{\text{shaft}} = P_{\text{shaft output}}$

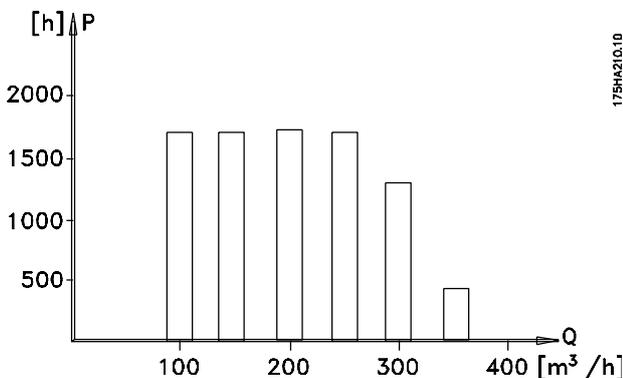


Illustration 2.4 Flow Distribution over 1 Year

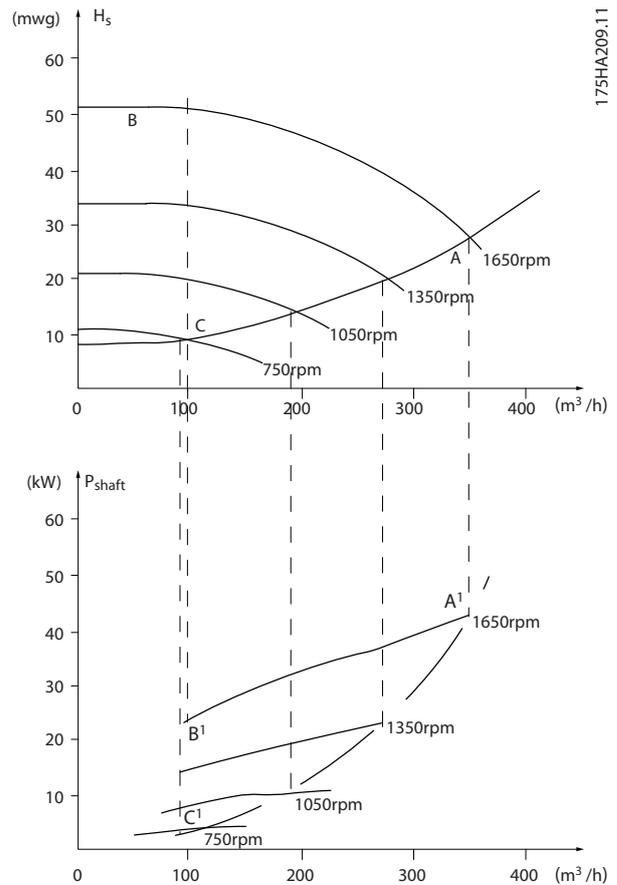


Illustration 2.5 Energy Savings in a Pump Application

m³/h	Distri- bution		Valve regulation		Frequency converter control	
	%	Hours	Power	Consump- tion	Power	Consump- tion
			A <sub>1</sub> - B <sub>1</sub>	kWh	A <sub>1</sub> - C <sub>1</sub>	kWh
350	5	438	42,5	18.615	42,5	18.615
300	15	1314	38,5	50.589	29,0	38.106
250	20	1752	35,0	61.320	18,5	32.412
200	20	1752	31,5	55.188	11,5	20.148
150	20	1752	28,0	49.056	6,5	11.388
100	20	1752	23,0	40.296	3,5	6.132
Σ	100	8760		275.064		26.801

Table 2.5 Energy Savings - Calculation

### 2.7.5 Better Control

If a frequency converter is used for controlling the flow or pressure of a system, improved control is obtained. A frequency converter can vary the speed of the fan or pump, obtaining variable control of flow and pressure. Furthermore, a frequency converter can quickly adapt the speed of the fan or pump to new flow or pressure conditions in the system. Simple control of process (flow, level, or pressure) utilising the built-in PID control.

### 2.7.6 Cos φ Compensation

Generally speaking, the frequency converter has a cos φ of 1 and provides power factor correction for the cos φ of the motor, which means that there is no need to make allowance for the cos φ of the motor when sizing the power factor correction unit.

### 2.7.7 Star/delta Starter or Soft-starter not required

When larger motors are started, it is necessary in many countries to use equipment that limits the start-up current. In more traditional systems, a star/delta starter or soft-starter is widely used. Such motor starters are not required if a frequency converter is used.

As shown in *Illustration 2.6*, a frequency converter does not consume more than rated current.

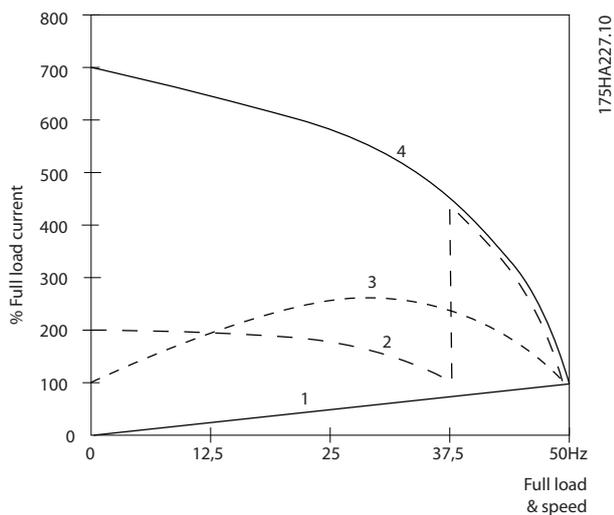


Illustration 2.6 Current Consumption with a Frequency Converter

1	VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202
2	Star/delta starter
3	Soft-starter
4	Start directly on mains

Table 2.6 Legend to *Illustration 2.6*

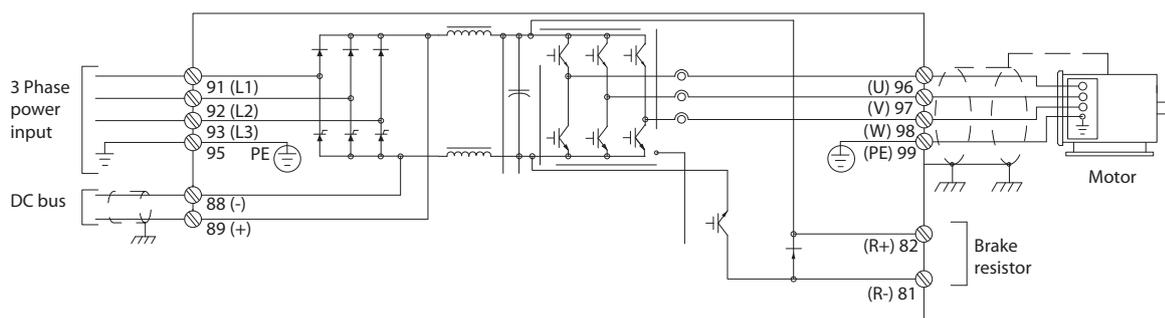
2

2.8 Control Structures

2.8.1 Control Principle

A frequency converter rectifies AC voltage from mains into DC voltage, after which this DC voltage is converted into AC power with a variable amplitude and frequency.

The motor is supplied with variable voltage/current and frequency, which enables infinitely variable speed control of three-phased, standard AC motors and permanent magnet synchronous motors.



130BC514:11

Illustration 2.7 Example Control Frequency

The control terminals provide for wiring feedback, reference, and other input signals to the frequency converter, output of frequency converter status and fault conditions, relays to operate auxiliary equipment, and serial communication interface. 24 V common power is also provided. Control terminals are programmable for various functions by selecting parameter options described in the main or quick menus. Most control wiring is customer supplied unless factory ordered. A 24 V DC power supply is also provided for use with the frequency converter control inputs and outputs.

Table 2.7 describes the functions of the control terminals. Many of these terminals have multiple functions determined by parameter settings. Some options provide more terminals. See Illustration 2.9 for terminal locations.

**NOTE**

The example provided does not show optional equipment.

Terminal No.	Function
01, 02, 03 and 04, 05, 06	Two form C output relays. Maximum 240 V AC, 2 A. minimum 24 V DC, 10 mA, or 24 V AC, 100 mA. Can be used for indicating status and warnings. Physically located on the power card.
12, 13	24 V DC power supply to digital inputs and external transducers. The maximum output current is 200 mA.
18, 19, 27, 29, 32, 33	Digital inputs for controlling the frequency converter. R=2 kΩ. Less than 5 V=logi c 0 (open). Greater than 10 V=logi c 1 (closed). Terminals 27 and 29 are programmable as digital/pulse outputs.
20	Common for digital inputs.
37	0–24 V DC input for safety stop (some units).
39	Common for analog and digital outputs.
42	Analog and digital outputs for indicating values such as frequency, reference, current, and torque. The analog signal is 0/4 to 20 mA at a maximum of 500 Ω. The digital signal is 24 V DC at a minimum of 500 Ω.
50	10 V DC, 15 mA maximum analog supply voltage for potentiometer or thermistor.
53, 54	Selectable for 0–10 V DC voltage input, R=10 kΩ, or analog signals 0/4 to 20 mA at a maximum of 200 Ω. Used for reference or feedback signals. A thermistor can be connected here.
55	Common for terminals 53 and 54.
61	RS-485 common.
68, 69	RS-485 interface and serial communication.

Table 2.7 Terminal Control Functions

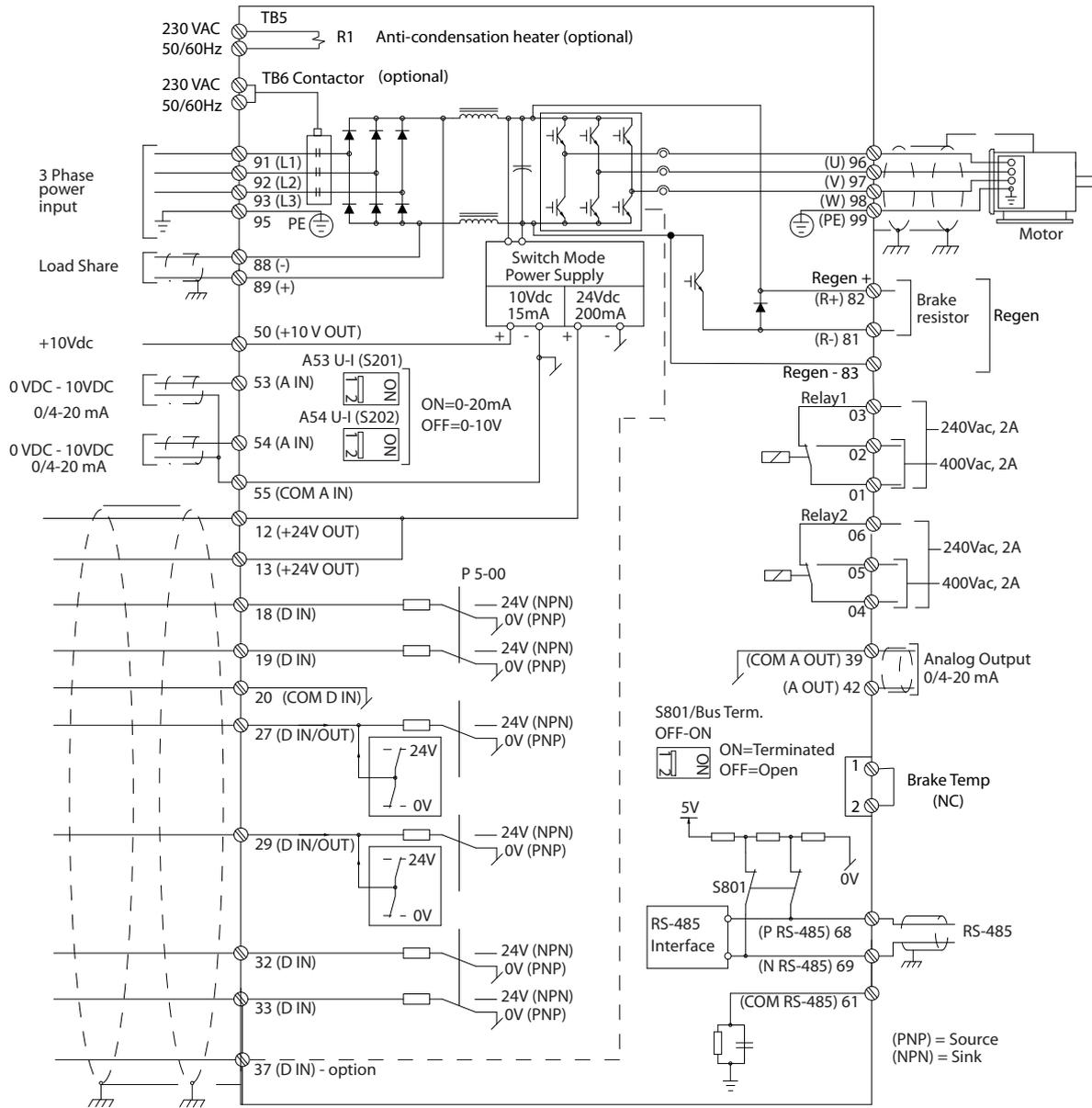
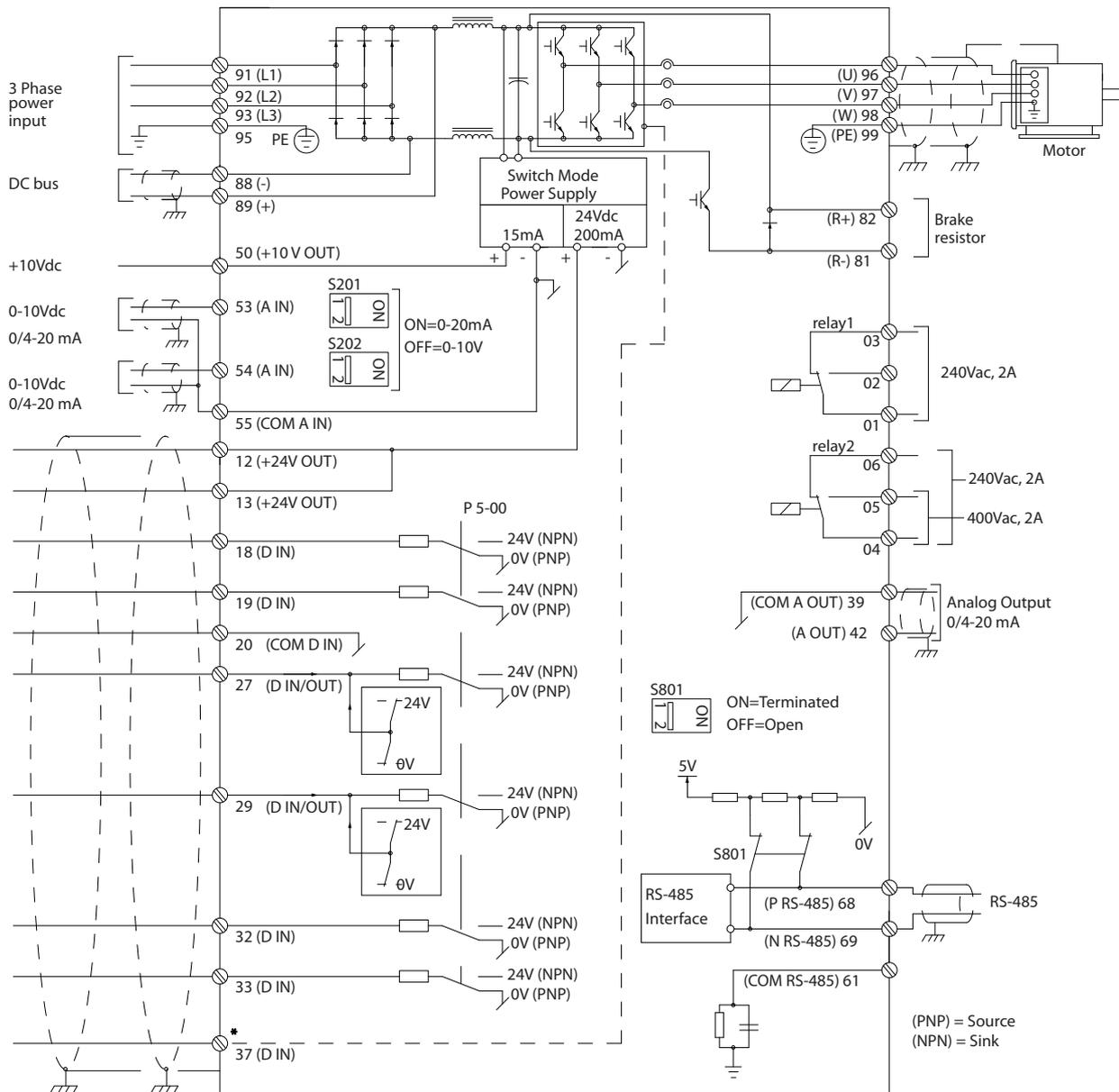


Illustration 2.8 D-frame Interconnect Diagram



130BA544.12

Illustration 2.9 E- and F-frame Interconnect Diagram

## 2.8.2 Control Structure Open Loop

2

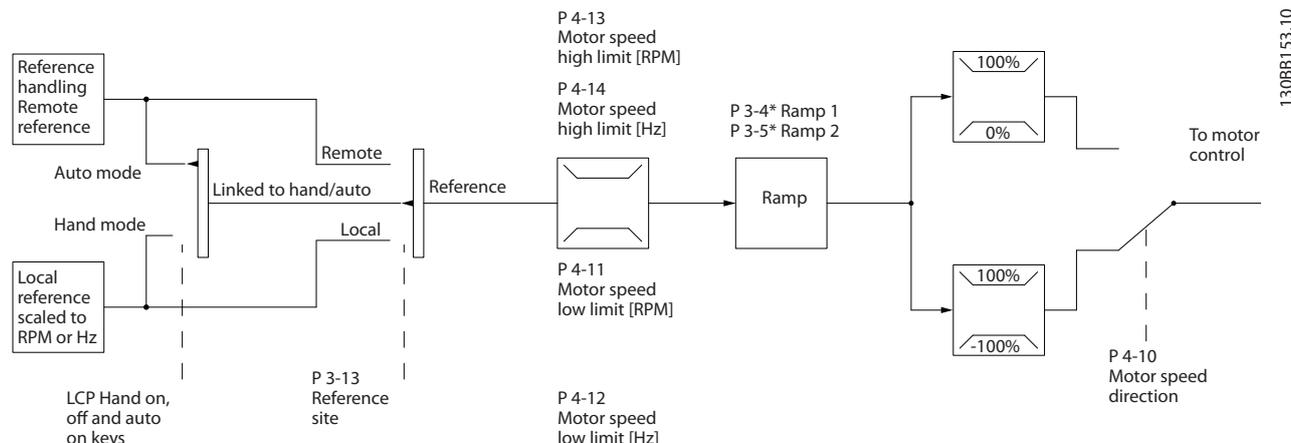


Illustration 2.10 Open Loop Structure

In the configuration shown in *Illustration 2.10*, *1-00 Configuration Mode* is set to *[0] Open loop*. The resulting reference from the reference handling system or the local reference is received and fed through the ramp limitation and speed limitation before being sent to the motor control. The maximum frequency allowed limits the output from the motor control.

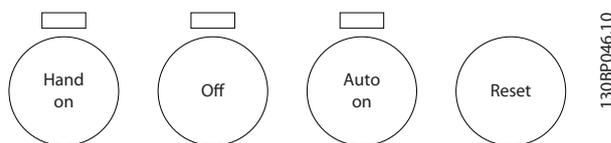


Illustration 2.11 LCP Control Keys

## 2.8.3 Local (Hand On) and Remote (Auto On) Control

The frequency converter can be operated manually via the LCP or remotely via analog/digital inputs or serial bus. If allowed in *0-40 [Hand on] Key on LCP*, *0-41 [Off] Key on LCP*, *0-42 [Auto on] Key on LCP*, and *0-43 [Reset] Key on LCP*, it is possible to start and stop the frequency converter by LCP using the [HandOn] and [Off] keys. Alarms can be reset via the [Reset] key. After pressing the [Hand On] key, the frequency converter goes into Hand Mode and follows (as default) the local reference set by pressing the navigation keys [▲] and [▼].

After pressing the [Auto On] key, the frequency converter goes into auto mode and follows (as default) the remote reference. In this mode, it is possible to control the frequency converter via the digital inputs and various serial interfaces (RS-485, USB, or an optional fieldbus). See more about starting, stopping, changing ramps and parameter set-ups in parameter group *5-1\* Digital Inputs* or parameter group *8-5\* Serial Communication*.

Hand Off Auto LCP Keys	Reference Site 3-13 Reference Site	Active Reference
Hand	Linked to Hand/ Auto	Local
Hand ⇒ Off	Linked to Hand/ Auto	Local
Auto	Linked to Hand/ Auto	Remote
Auto ⇒ Off	Linked to Hand/ Auto	Remote
All keys	Local	Local
All keys	Remote	Remote

Table 2.8 Conditions for either Local or Remote Reference

Table 2.8 shows under which conditions either the local reference or the remote reference is active. One of them is always active, but both cannot be active at the same time.

Local reference forces the configuration mode to open loop, independent on the setting of *1-00 Configuration Mode*.

Local reference is restored at power-down.

### 2.8.4 Control Structure Closed Loop

The internal controller allows the frequency converter to become a part of the controlled system. The frequency converter receives a feedback signal from a sensor in the system. It then compares this feedback to a set-point reference value and determines the error, if any, between these two signals. It then adjusts the speed of the motor to correct this error.

For example, consider a pump application in which the speed of a pump is controlled so that the static pressure in a pipe is constant. The desired static pressure value is supplied to the frequency converter as the set-point reference. A static pressure sensor measures the actual static pressure in the pipe and supplies this information to the frequency converter as a feedback signal. If the feedback signal is greater than the set-point reference, the frequency converter slows to reduce the pressure. In a similar way, if the pipe pressure is lower than the set-point reference, the frequency converter speeds up to increase the pressure provided by the pump.

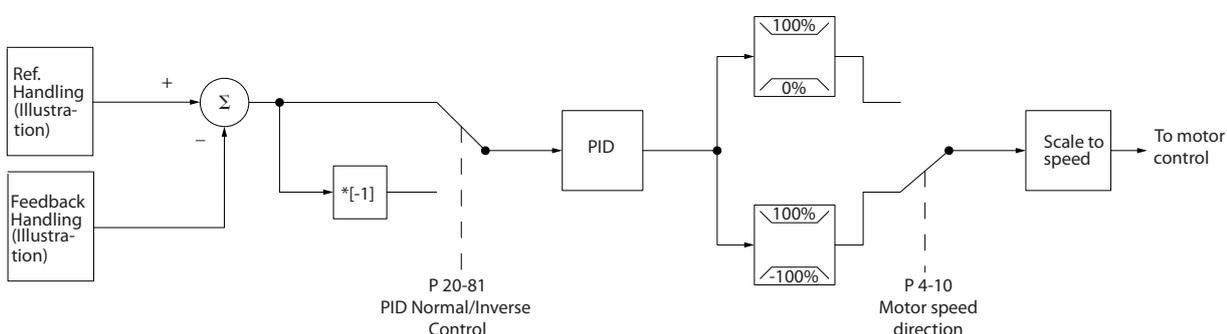


Illustration 2.12 Block Diagram of Closed Loop Controller

While the default values for the closed loop controller often provides satisfactory performance, the control of the system can often be optimised by adjusting some of the parameters of the closed loop controller. It is also possible to autotune the PI constants.

## 2.8.5 Feedback Handling

2

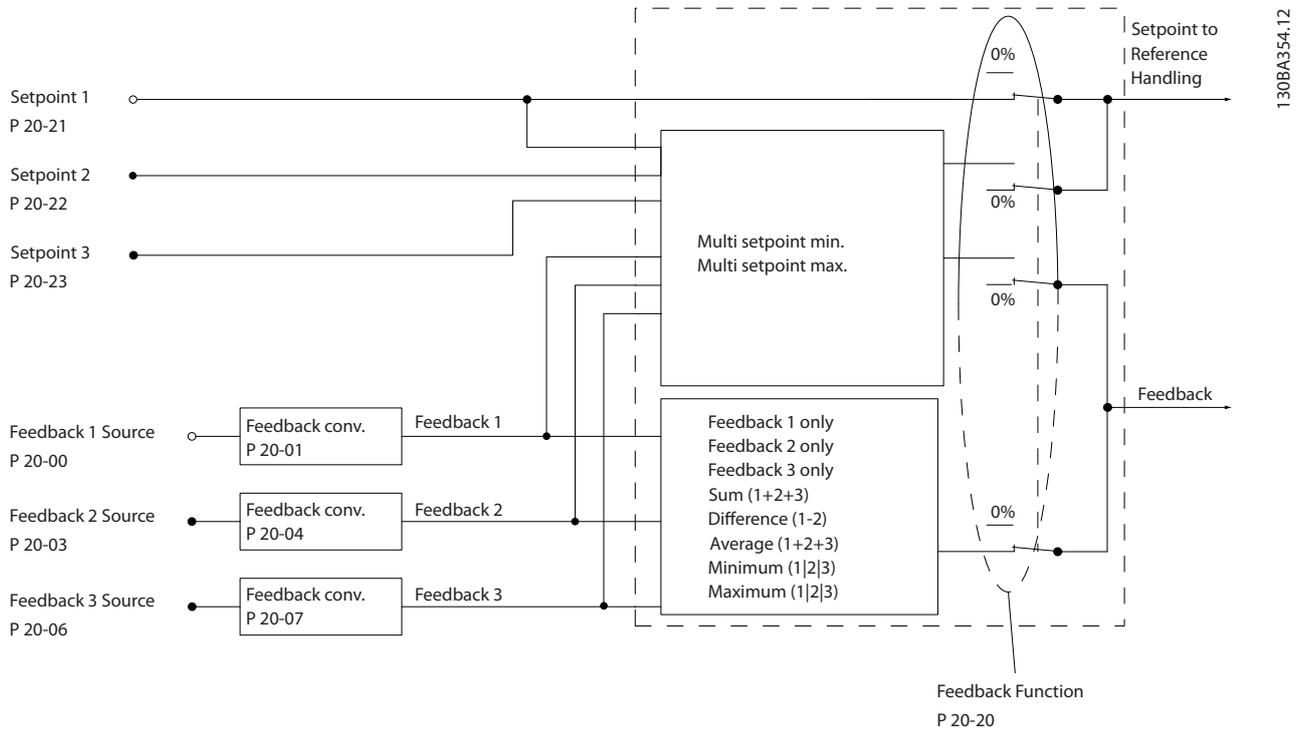


Illustration 2.13 Block Diagram of Feedback Signal Processing

Feedback handling can be configured to work with applications requiring advanced control, such as multiple setpoints and multiple types of feedback. Three types of control are common.

### Single zone, single setpoint

Single Zone Single Setpoint is a basic configuration. Setpoint 1 is added to any other reference (if any, see Reference Handling) and the feedback signal is selected using *20-20 Feedback Function*.

### Multi-zone, single setpoint

Multi-Zone Single Setpoint uses two or three feedback sensors but only one setpoint. The feedback can be added, subtracted (only feedback 1 and 2) or averaged. In addition, the maximum or minimum value can be used. Setpoint 1 is used exclusively in this configuration.

If [13] *Multi-Setpoint Min* is selected, the setpoint/feedback pair with the largest difference controls the speed of the frequency converter. [14] *Multi-Setpoint Maximum* attempts to keep all zones at or below their respective setpoints, while [13] *Multi-Setpoint Min* attempts to keep all zones at or above their respective setpoints.

### Example:

A two zone, two setpoint application Zone 1 setpoint is 15 bar and the feedback is 5.5 bar. Zone 2 setpoint is 4.4 bar and the feedback is 4.6 bar. If [14] *Multi-Setpoint Max* is selected, Zone 1 setpoint and feedback are sent to the PID controller, since it has the smaller difference (feedback is higher than setpoint, resulting in a negative difference). If [13] *Multi-Setpoint Min* is selected, Zone 2 setpoint and feedback is sent to the PID controller, since it has the larger difference (feedback is lower than setpoint, resulting in a positive difference).

### 2.8.6 Feedback Conversion

In some applications it could be useful to convert the feedback signal. One example is using a pressure signal to provide flow feedback. Since the square root of pressure is proportional to flow, the square root of the pressure signal yields a value proportional to the flow. For an example, see *Illustration 2.14*.

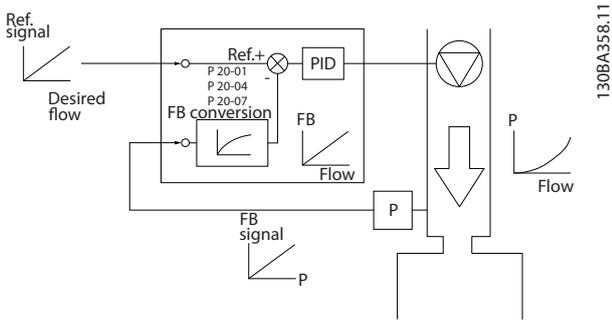
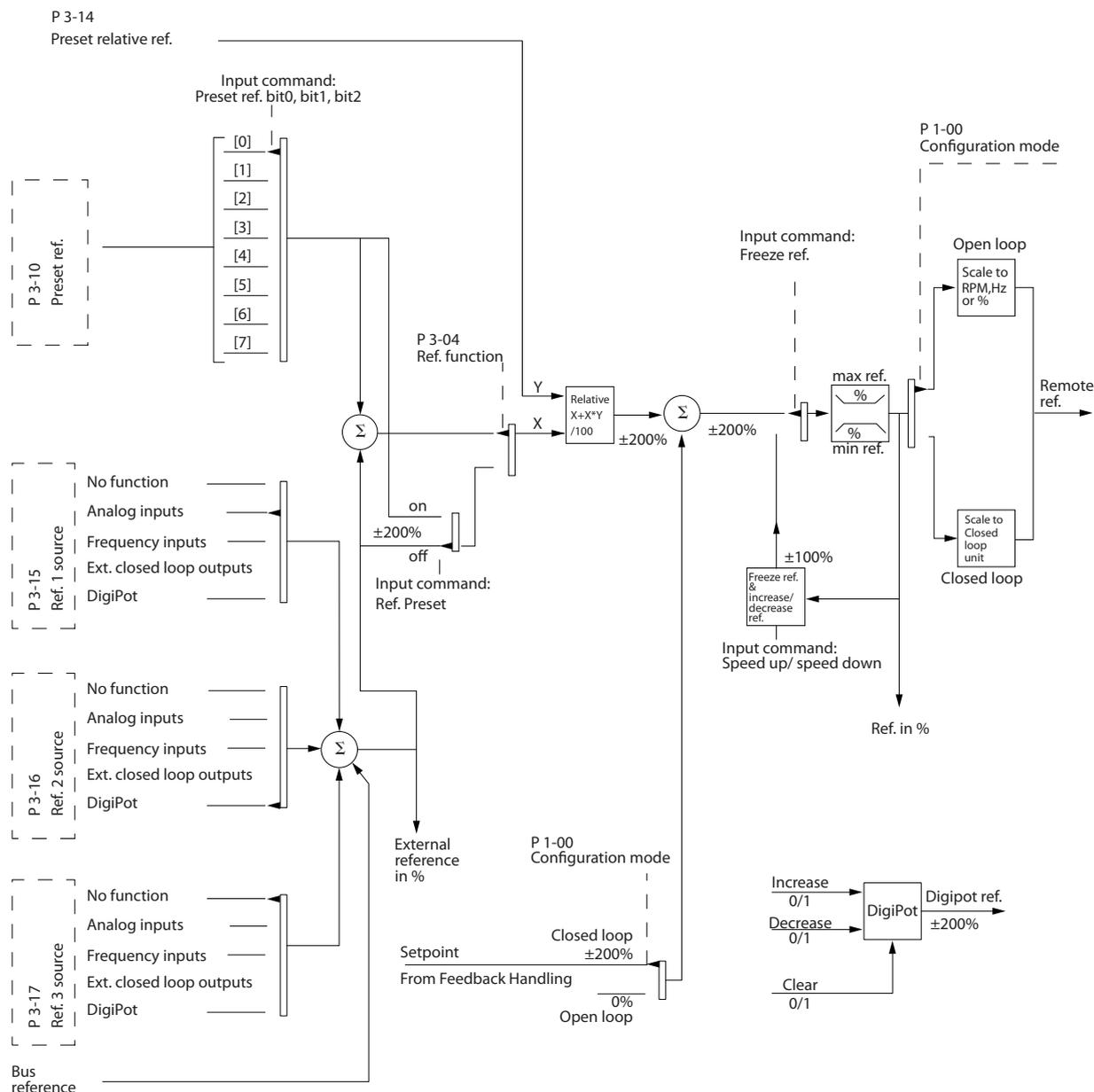


Illustration 2.14 Feedback Conversion

## 2.8.7 Reference Handling

### Details for Open Loop and Closed Loop operation.



130BA357.12

Illustration 2.15 Block Diagram Showing Remote Reference

The Remote Reference is comprised of:

- Preset references.
- External references (analog inputs, pulse frequency inputs, digital potentiometer inputs, and serial communication bus references).
- The preset relative reference.
- Feedback controlled setpoint.

Up to eight preset references can be programmed in the frequency converter. The active preset reference can be

selected using digital inputs or the serial communications bus. The reference can also be supplied externally, most commonly from an analog input. Select this external source via one of the three reference source parameters (3-15 Reference 1 Source, 3-16 Reference 2 Source and 3-17 Reference 3 Source). DigiPot is a digital potentiometer, also commonly called a Speed Up/Speed Down Control or a Floating Point Control. To set it up, one digital input is programmed to increase the reference while another digital input is programmed to decrease the reference. A third digital input can be used to reset the digipot reference. All reference resources and the bus reference

are added to produce the total External Reference. The External Reference, the Preset Reference or the sum of the two can be selected to be the active reference. Finally, this reference can be scaled using 3-14 Preset Relative Reference.

The scaled reference is calculated as follows:

$$Reference = X + X \times \left(\frac{Y}{100}\right)$$

Where X is the external reference, the preset reference, or the sum of these and Y is 3-14 Preset Relative Reference in [%].

If Y, 3-14 Preset Relative Reference is set to 0%, the scaling does not affect the reference.

### 2.8.8 Example of Closed Loop PID Control

The following is an example of a Closed Loop Control for a booster pump application:

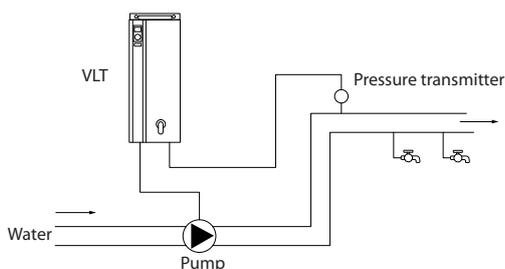


Illustration 2.16 Closed Loop PID Control

In a water distribution system, the pressure must be maintained at a constant value. The desired pressure (set-point) is set between 0 and 10 Bar using a 0–10 V potentiometer or a parameter. The pressure sensor has a range of 0–10 Bar and uses a two-wire transmitter to

provide a 4–20 mA signal. The output frequency range of the frequency converter is 10–50 Hz.

1. Start/Stop via switch connected between terminals 12 (+24 V) and 18.
2. Pressure reference via a potentiometer (0–10 Bar, 0–10 V) connected to terminals 50 (+10 V), 53 (input) and 55 (common).
3. Pressure feedback via transmitter (0–10 Bar, 4–20 mA) connected to terminal 54. Switch S202 behind the Local Control Panel set to ON (current input).

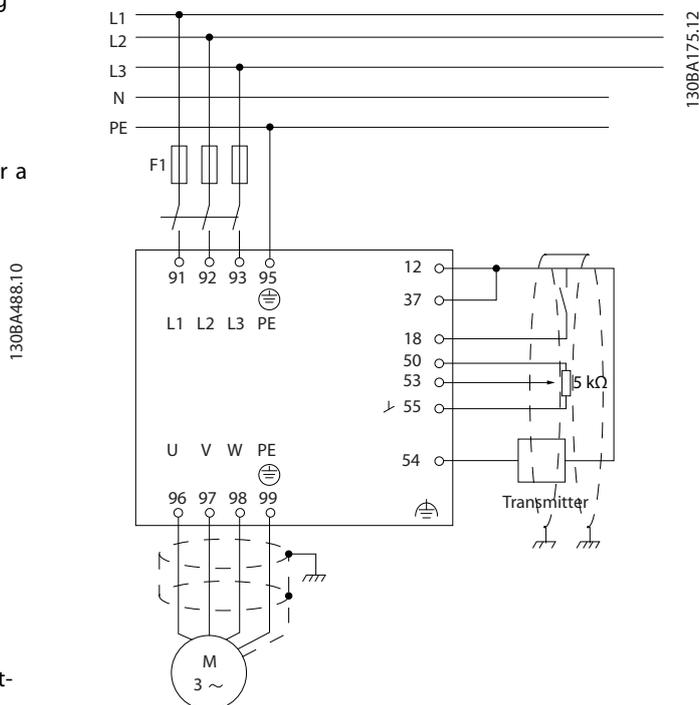


Illustration 2.17

## 2.8.9 Programming Order

2

Function	Par. no.	Setting
1) Make sure that the motor runs properly. Do the following:		
Set the motor parameters using nameplate data.	1-2*	As specified by motor name plate
Run Automatic Motor Adaptation.	1-29	[1] <i>Enable complete AMA</i> and then run the AMA function.
2) Check that the motor is running in the right direction.		
Run Motor Rotation Check.	1-28	If the motor runs in the wrong direction, remove power temporarily and reverse two of the motor phases.
3) Make sure that the frequency converter limits are set to safe values		
Check that the ramp settings are within capabilities of the drive and allowed application operating specifications.	3-41 3-42	60 s. 60 s. Depends on motor/load size! Also active in Hand mode.
Prohibit the motor from reversing (if necessary)	4-10	[0] <i>Clockwise</i>
Set acceptable limits for the motor speed.	4-12 4-14 4-19	10 Hz, <i>Motor min speed</i> 50 Hz, <i>Motor max speed</i> 50 Hz, <i>Drive max output frequency</i>
Switch from open loop to closed loop.	1-00	[3] <i>Closed Loop</i>
4) Configure the feedback to the PID controller.		
Select the appropriate reference/feedback unit.	20-12	[71] <i>Bar</i>
5) Configure the set-point reference for the PID controller.		
Set acceptable limits for the set-point reference.	3-02 3-03	0 Bar 10 Bar
Choose current or voltage by switches S201/S202		
6) Scale the analog inputs used for set-point reference and feedback.		
Scale Analog Input 53 for the pressure range of the potentiometer (0-10 Bar, 0-10 V).	6-10 6-11 6-14 6-15	0 V 10 V (default) 0 Bar 10 Bar
Scale Analog Input 54 for pressure sensor (0-10 Bar, 4-20 mA)	6-22 6-23 6-24 6-25	4 mA 20 mA (default) 0 Bar 10 Bar
7) Tune the PID controller parameters.		
Adjust the closed loop controller, if needed.	20-93 20-94	See 2.8.11 <i>Manual PID Adjustment</i> .
8) Finished!		
Save the parameter setting to the LCP for safe keeping	0-50	[1] <i>All to LCP</i>

Table 2.9 Programming Closed Loop PID

## 2.8.10 Tuning the Closed Loop Controller

Once the closed loop controller has been set up, test the performance of the controller. In many cases, its performance is acceptable using the default values of *20-93 PID Proportional Gain* and *20-94 PID Integral Time*. However, in some cases it is helpful to optimise these parameter values to provide faster system response while still controlling speed overshoot.

## 2.8.11 Manual PID Adjustment

1. Start the motor
2. Set *20-93 PID Proportional Gain* to 0.3 and increase it until the feedback signal begins to oscillate. If necessary, start and stop the frequency converter or make step changes in the set-point reference to attempt to cause oscillation. Next reduce the PID Proportional Gain until the feedback signal stabilises. Then reduce the proportional gain by 40–60%.
3. Set *20-94 PID Integral Time* to 20 s. and reduce it until the feedback signal begins to oscillate. If necessary, start and stop the frequency converter or make step changes in the set-point reference to attempt to cause oscillation. Next, increase the PID Integral Time until the feedback signal stabilises. Then increase of the Integral Time by 15–50%.
4. Use *20-95 PID Differentiation Time* only for fast-acting systems. The typical value is 25% of *20-94 PID Integral Time*. Use the differential function only when the setting of the proportional gain and the integral time has been fully optimised. Make sure that oscillations of the feedback signal are sufficiently dampened by the low-pass filter for the feedback signal (*6-16 Terminal 53 Filter Time Constant*, *6-26 Terminal 54 Filter Time Constant*, *5-54 Pulse Filter Time Constant #29* or *5-59 Pulse Filter Time Constant #33* as required).

2

## 2.9 General Aspects of EMC

### 2.9.1 General Aspects of EMC Emissions

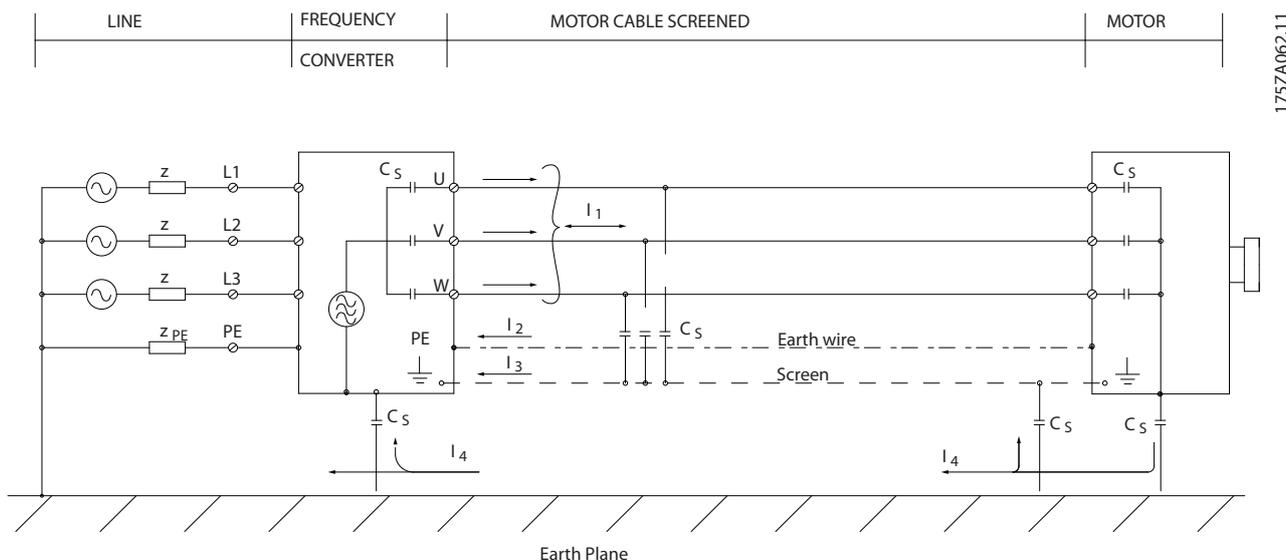
Electrical interference is most commonly conducted at frequencies in the range 150 kHz to 30 MHz. Airborne interference from the frequency converter system in the range 30 MHz to 1 GHz is generated from the inverter, motor cable, and the motor.

As shown in *Illustration 2.18*, capacitive currents in the motor cable coupled with a high  $dU/dt$  from the motor voltage generate leakage currents.

The use of a screened motor cable increases the leakage current (see *Illustration 2.18*) because screened cables have higher capacitance to earth than unscreened cables. If the leakage current is not filtered, it causes greater interference on the mains in the radio frequency range below 5 MHz. Since the leakage current ( $I_1$ ) is carried back to the unit through the screen ( $I_3$ ), in principle, there is only a small electromagnetic field ( $I_4$ ) from the screened motor cable according to *Illustration 2.18*.

The screen reduces the radiated interference but increases the low-frequency interference on the mains. The motor cable screen must be connected to the frequency converter enclosure as well as the motor enclosure. The best way to connect them is by using integrated screen clamps to avoid twisted screen ends (pigtailed). These increase the screen impedance at higher frequencies, which reduces the screen effect and increases the leakage current ( $I_4$ ).

If a screened cable is used for fieldbus, relay, control cable, signal interface, and brake, the screen must be mounted on the enclosure at both ends. In some situations, however, it is necessary to break the screen to avoid current loops.



175ZA062.11

**Illustration 2.18** Leakage Currents

*Illustration 2.18* shows an example of a 6-pulse frequency converter, but could be applicable to a 12-pulse as well.

If placing the screen on a mounting plate for the frequency converter, the mounting plate must be made of metal, because the screen currents must be conveyed back to the unit. Ensure good electrical contact from the mounting plate through the mounting screws to the frequency converter chassis.

When unscreened cables are used, some emission requirements are not complied with, although the immunity requirements are observed.

To reduce the interference level from the entire system (unit and installation), make motor and brake cables as short as possible. Avoid placing cables with a sensitive signal level alongside motor and brake cables. Radio interference higher than 50 MHz (airborne) comes from the control electronics. See 5.10 *EMC-correct Installation* for more information on EMC.

## 2.9.2 Emission Requirements

According to the EMC product standard for adjustable speed frequency converters EN/IEC 61800-3:2004, the EMC requirements depend on the environment in which the frequency converter is installed. Four categories are defined in the EMC product standard. The definitions of the four categories together with the requirements for mains supply voltage conducted emissions are given in *Table 2.10*.

Category	Definition	Conducted emission requirement according to the limits given in EN 55011
C1	Frequency converters installed in the first environment (home and office) with a supply voltage less than 1,000 V.	Class B
C2	Frequency converters installed in the first environment (home and office) with a supply voltage less than 1,000 V. These frequency converters are not plug-in and cannot be moved and are intended to for professional installation and commissioning.	Class A Group 1
C3	Frequency converters installed in the second environment (industrial) with a supply voltage lower than 1,000 V.	Class A Group 2
C4	Frequency converters installed in the second environment with a supply voltage equal to or above 1,000 V or rated current equal to or above 400 A or intended for use in complex systems.	No limit line Make an EMC plan

**Table 2.10 Emission Requirements**

When the generic emission standards are used, the frequency converters are required to comply with *Table 2.11*

Environment	Generic standard	Conducted emission requirement according to the limits given in EN 55011
First environment (home and office)	EN/IEC 61000-6-3 Emission standard for residential, commercial, and light industrial environments.	Class B
Second environment (industrial environment)	EN/IEC 61000-6-4 Emission standard for industrial environments.	Class A Group 1

**Table 2.11 Limits**

### 2.9.3 EMC Test Results (Emission)

The test results in *Table 2.12* have been obtained using a system with a frequency converter (with options if relevant), a screened control cable, a control box with potentiometer, as well as a motor and motor screened cable.

RFI filter type	Phase type	Conducted emission			Radiated emission	
		Maximum shielded cable length			Industrial environment	Housing, trades, and light industries
		Industrial environment	Housing, trades and light industries	Industrial environment	Housing, trades, and light industries	
Setup:	S / T	EN 55011 Class A2	EN 55011 Class A1	EN 55011 Class B	EN 55011 Class A1	EN 55011 Class B
H2 (6-pulse)		meter	meter	meter		
110-1000 kW 380-480 V	T4	50	No	No	No	No
45-1200 kW 525-690 V	T7	150	No	No	No	No
H4 (6-pulse)						
110-1000 kW 380-480 V	T4	150	150	No	Yes	No
110-400 kW 525-690 V	T7	150	30	No	No	No
B2 (12-pulse)						
250-800 kW 380-480 V	T4	150	No	No	No	No
355-1200 kW 525-690 V	T7	150	No	No	No	No
B4 (12-pulse)						
250-800 kW 380-480 V	T4	150	150	No	Yes	No
355-1200 kW 525-690 V	T7	150	25	No	No	No

Table 2.12 EMC Test Results (Emission)

#### **⚠ WARNING**

In a domestic environment, this product has the potential to cause radio interference, in which case supplementary mitigation measures are required. This type of power drive system is not intended to be used on a low-voltage public network which supplies domestic premises. Radio frequency interference is expected when used on such a network.

### 2.9.4 General Aspects of Harmonics Emission

A frequency converter takes up a non-sinusoidal current from mains, which increases the input current  $I_{RMS}$ . A non-sinusoidal current is transformed with a Fourier analysis and split up into sine-wave currents with different frequencies, such as harmonic currents  $I_n$  with 50 Hz (or 60 Hz) as the basic frequency:

	$I_1$	$I_5$	$I_7$
[Hz]	50	250	350
	60	300	420

Table 2.13 Harmonic Currents

The harmonics do not affect the power consumption directly but increase the heat losses in the installation (transformer, cables). In plants with a high percentage of

rectifier load, maintain harmonic currents at a low level to avoid overload of the transformer and high temperature in the cables.

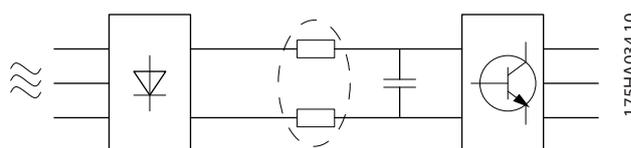


Illustration 2.19 Harmonics

#### **NOTE**

Some of the harmonic currents could disturb communication equipment connected to the same transformer or cause resonance with power-factor correction batteries.

To ensure low harmonic currents, the frequency converter is equipped with DC link inductors as standard, to reduce the input current  $I_{RMS}$  by 40%.

The voltage distortion on the mains supply voltage depends on the size of the harmonic currents multiplied by the mains impedance for the frequency in question. The individual voltage harmonics calculate the total voltage distortion (THD) using this formula:

$$THD \% = \sqrt{U_5^2 + U_7^2 + \dots + U_N^2}$$

( $U_N$ % of  $U$ )

## 2.9.5 Harmonics Emission Requirements

### Equipment connected to the public supply network

Options:	Definition:
1	IEC/EN 61000-3-2 Class A for 3-phase balanced equipment (for professional equipment only up to 1 kW total power).
2	IEC/EN 61000-3-12 Equipment 16 A-75 A and professional equipment as from 1 kW up to 16 A phase current.

Table 2.14 Harmonics Emission Standards

## 2.9.6 Harmonics Test Results (Emission)

Power sizes P110 - P450 in T4 also complies with IEC/EN 61000-3-12 even though not required because currents are above 75 A.

	Individual Harmonic Current $I_n/I_1$ (%)			
	$I_5$	$I_7$	$I_{11}$	$I_{13}$
Actual (typical)	40	20	10	8
Limit for $R_{scc} \geq 120$	40	25	15	10
	Harmonic current distortion factor (%)			
	THD		PWHF	
Actual (typical)	46		45	
Limit for $R_{scc} \geq 120$	48		46	

Table 2.15 Harmonics Test Results (Emission)

If the short-circuit power of the supply  $S_{sc}$  is greater than or equal to:

$$S_{SC} = \sqrt{3} \times R_{SCE} \times U_{mains} \times I_{equ} = \sqrt{3} \times 120 \times 400 \times I_{equ}$$

at the interface point between the customer supply and the public system ( $R_{scc}$ ).

It is the responsibility of the installer or user of the equipment to ensure, by consultation with the distribution network operator if necessary, that the equipment is connected only to a supply with a short-circuit power  $S_{sc}$  greater than or equal to specified.

Other power sizes can be connected to the public supply network by consultation with the distribution network operator.

Compliance with various system level guidelines:

The harmonic current data in the table are given in accordance with IEC/EN61000-3-12 regarding the Power Drive Systems product standard. They can be used as the basis for calculation of the influence the harmonic current has on the power supply system and for the documentation of compliance with relevant regional guidelines: IEEE 519 -1992; G5/4.

## 2.10 Immunity Requirements

The immunity requirements for frequency converters depend on the environment where they are installed. The requirements for the industrial environment are higher than the requirements for the home and office environment. All Danfoss frequency converters comply with the requirements for the industrial environment as well as the lower requirements for home and office environment with a large safety margin.

To document immunity against electrical interference from electrical phenomena, the following immunity tests have been made on a system consisting of a frequency converter (with options if relevant), a screened control cable and a control box with potentiometer, motor cable, and motor.

The tests were performed in accordance with the following basic standards:

- **EN 61000-4-2 (IEC 61000-4-2):** Electrostatic discharges (ESD): Simulation of electrostatic discharges from human beings.
- **EN 61000-4-3 (IEC 61000-4-3):** Incoming electromagnetic field radiation, amplitude modulated simulation of the effects of radar and radio communication equipment as well as mobile communications equipment.
- **EN 61000-4-4 (IEC 61000-4-4):** Burst transients: Simulation of interference brought about by switching a contactor, relay, or similar devices.
- **EN 61000-4-5 (IEC 61000-4-5):** Surge transients: Simulation of transients brought about for example, by lightning that strikes near installations.
- **EN 61000-4-6 (IEC 61000-4-6):** RF Common mode: Simulation of the effect from radio-transmission equipment joined by connection cables.

See Table 2.16.

Voltage range: 380-480 V, 525-600 V, 525-690 V					
Basic standard	Burst IEC 61000-4-4	Surge IEC 61000-4-5	ESD IEC 61000-4-2	Radiated electromagnetic field IEC 61000-4-3	RF common mode voltage IEC 61000-4-6
Acceptance criterion	B	B	B	A	A
Line	4 kV CM	2 kV/2Ω DM 4 kV/12Ω CM	—	—	10 V <sub>RMS</sub>
Motor	4 kV CM	4 kV/2Ω <sup>1)</sup>	—	—	10 V <sub>RMS</sub>
Brake	4 kV CM	4 kV/2Ω <sup>1)</sup>	—	—	10 V <sub>RMS</sub>
Load sharing	4 kV CM	4 kV/2Ω <sup>1)</sup>	—	—	10 V <sub>RMS</sub>
Control wires	2 kV CM	2 kV/2Ω <sup>1)</sup>	—	—	10 V <sub>RMS</sub>
Standard bus	2 kV CM	2 kV/2Ω <sup>1)</sup>	—	—	10 V <sub>RMS</sub>
Relay wires	2 kV CM	2 kV/2Ω <sup>1)</sup>	—	—	10 V <sub>RMS</sub>
Application and Fieldbus options	2 kV CM	2 kV/2Ω <sup>1)</sup>	—	—	10 V <sub>RMS</sub>
LCP cable	2 kV CM	2 kV/2Ω <sup>1)</sup>	—	—	10 V <sub>RMS</sub>
External 24V DC	2 V CM	0.5 kV/2Ω DM 1 kV/12Ω CM	—	—	10 V <sub>RMS</sub>
Enclosure	—	—	8 kV AD 6 kV CD	10V/m	—

**Table 2.16 EMC Immunity Form**

1) Injection on cable shield

AD: Air Discharge

CD: Contact Discharge

CM: Common mode

DM: Differential mode

## 2.11 Galvanic Isolation (PELV)

### 2.11.1 PELV - Protective Extra Low Voltage

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Installation at high altitude:

**380-500 V, enclosure D, E, and F: At altitudes above 3 km, contact Danfoss regarding PELV.**

**525-690 V: At altitudes above 2 km, contact Danfoss regarding PELV.**

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Touching the electrical parts could be fatal - even after the equipment has been disconnected from mains.**

**Before touching any electrical parts, wait at least the amount of time indicated in Table 2.1.**

**Shorter time is allowed only if indicated on the nameplate for the specific unit.**

**Also make sure that other voltage inputs have been disconnected, such as load sharing (linkage of DC intermediate circuit), as well as the motor connection for kinetic back-up.**

PELV offers protection by way of extra low voltage.

Protection against electric shock is ensured when the

electrical supply is of the PELV type and the installation is made as described in local/national regulations on PELV supplies.

All control terminals and relay terminals 01-03/04-06 comply with PELV (Protective Extra Low Voltage) (Does not apply to grounded Delta leg above 400 V).

Galvanic (ensured) isolation is obtained by fulfilling requirements for higher isolation and by providing the relevant creepage/clearance distances. These requirements are described in the EN 61800-5-1 standard.

The components that make up the electrical isolation also comply with the requirements for higher isolation and the relevant test as described in EN 61800-5-1.

The PELV galvanic isolation can be shown in six locations (see *Illustration 2.20*):

To maintain PELV all connections made to the control terminals must be PELV, for example, reinforce/double insulate the thermistor.

1. Power supply (SMPS) including signal isolation of  $U_{DC}$ , indicating the intermediate current voltage.
2. Gate drive that runs the IGBTs (trigger transformers/opto-couplers).
3. Current transducers.
4. Optocoupler, brake module.
5. Internal inrush, RFI, and temperature measurement circuits.
6. Custom relays.

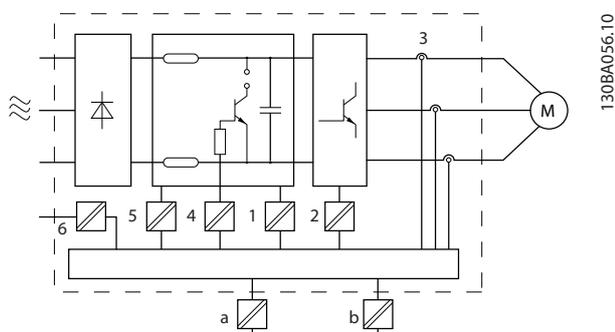


Illustration 2.20 Galvanic Isolation

The functional galvanic isolation (a and b on drawing) is for the 24 V backup option and for the RS-485 standard bus interface.

## 2.12 Earth Leakage Current

Follow national and local codes regarding protective earthing of equipment with a leakage current  $>3.5$  mA. Frequency converter technology implies high frequency switching at high power, generating a leakage current in the earth connection. A fault current in the frequency converter at the output power terminals could contain a DC component which can charge the filter capacitors and cause a transient earth current.

The earth leakage current is made up of several contributions and depends on various system configurations including RFI filtering, screened motor cables, and frequency converter power.

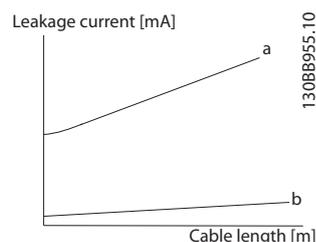


Illustration 2.21 Influence of the Cable Length and Power Size on the Leakage Current.  $P_a > P_b$

The leakage current also depends on the line distortion.

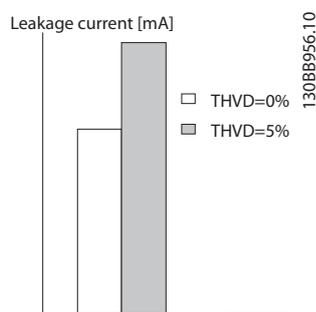


Illustration 2.22 Influence of Line Distortion on Leakage Current

### NOTE

**When a filter is used, turn off 14-50 RFI Filter when charging the filter, to avoid a high leakage current making the RCD switch.**

If the leakage current exceeds 3.5 mA, EN/IEC61800-5-1 (Power Drive System Product Standard) requires special care. Earth grounding must be reinforced in one of the following ways:

- Earth ground wire (terminal 95) of at least 10 mm<sup>2</sup>
- Two separate earth ground wires both complying with the dimensioning rules

See EN/IEC61800-5-1 and EN50178 for further information.

### Using RCDs

Where residual current devices (RCDs), also known as earth leakage circuit breakers (ELCBs), are used, comply with the following:

Use RCDs of type B only, capable of detecting AC and DC currents

Use RCDs with an inrush delay to prevent faults due to transient earth currents

Dimension RCDs according to the system configuration and environmental considerations

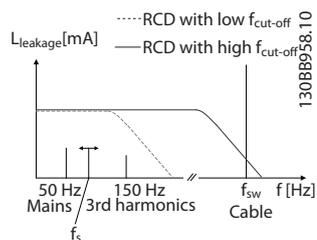


Illustration 2.23 Main Contributions to Leakage Current

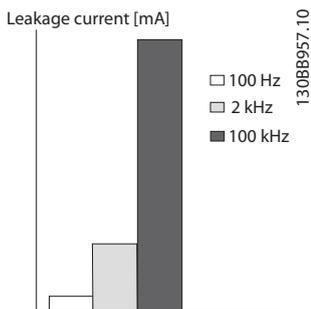


Illustration 2.24 The Influence of the Cut-off Frequency of the RCD on what is responded to/measured

See also *RCD Application Note*.

## 2.13 Control with Brake Function

### 2.13.1 Selection of Brake Resistor

In certain applications, for instance centrifuges, it is desirable to bring the motor to a stop more rapidly than can be achieved through controlling via ramp down or by free-wheeling. In such applications, dynamic braking with a braking resistor can be utilised. Using a braking resistor ensures that the energy is absorbed in the resistor and not in the frequency converter.

If the amount of kinetic energy transferred to the resistor in each braking period is not known, the average power can be calculated based on the cycle time and braking time also called intermittent duty cycle. The resistor intermittent duty cycle is an indication of the duty cycle at which the resistor is active. *Illustration 2.25* shows a typical braking cycle.

The intermittent duty cycle for the resistor is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Duty Cycle} = t_b/T$$

T = cycle time in seconds

$t_b$  is the braking time in seconds (as part of the total cycle time)

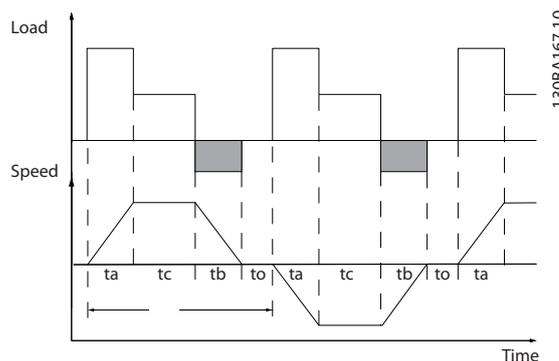


Illustration 2.25 Typical Braking Cycle

Danfoss offers brake resistors with duty cycles of 10% and 40% suitable for use with the VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202. If a 10% duty cycle resistor is applied, it can absorb braking power up to 10% of the cycle time with the remaining 90% being used to dissipate heat from the resistor.

For resistor selection information, refer to the *Brake Resistor Design Guide*.

### NOTE

If a short circuit in the brake transistor occurs, power dissipation in the brake resistor is only prevented by using a mains switch or contactor to disconnect the mains for the frequency converter. (The frequency converter can control the contactor).

### 2.13.2 Control with Brake Function

The brake is protected against short-circuiting of the brake resistor, and the brake transistor is monitored to ensure that short-circuiting of the transistor is detected. A relay/digital output can be used for protecting the brake resistor against overloading with a fault in the frequency converter. In addition, the brake makes it possible to read out the momentary power and the mean power for the latest 120 s. The brake can also monitor the power energizing and make sure that it does not exceed a limit selected in *2-12 Brake Power Limit (kW)*. In *2-13 Brake Power Monitoring*, select the function to carry out when the power transmitted to the brake resistor exceeds the limit set in *2-12 Brake Power Limit (kW)*.

### CAUTION

Monitoring the brake power is not a safety function; a thermal switch is required for that purpose. The brake resistor circuit is not earth leakage protected.

*Over voltage control (OVC)* (exclusive brake resistor) can be selected as an alternative brake function in *2-17 Over-voltage Control*. This function is active for all units and

ensures that if the DC link voltage increases, a trip can be avoided by increasing the output frequency to limit the voltage from the DC link. It is a useful function.

**NOTE**

OVC cannot be activated when running a PM motor (when 1-10 Motor Construction is set to [1] PM non-salient SPM).

2.14 Mechanical Brake Control

2.14.1 Brake Resistor Cabling

EMC (twisted cables/shielding)

To reduce the electrical noise from the wires between the brake resistor and the frequency converter, the wires must be twisted.

For enhanced EMC performance, a metal screen can be used.

2.15 Extreme Running Conditions

**Short circuit (motor phase – phase)**

The frequency converter is protected against short circuits by current measurement in each of the three motor phases or in the DC link. A short circuit between two output phases causes an overcurrent in the inverter. The inverter is turned off individually when the short circuit current exceeds the permitted value (Alarm 16 Trip Lock).

To protect the drive against a short circuit at the load sharing and brake outputs, see the design guidelines.

**Switching on the output**

Switching on the output between the motor and the frequency converter is fully permitted and cannot damage the frequency converter, but it can cause fault messages to appear.

**Motor-generated overvoltage**

The voltage in the intermediate circuit is increased when the motor acts as a generator.

**Overvoltage occurs in the following cases:**

1. The load drives the motor, generating energy.
2. During deceleration ("ramp-down") if the moment of inertia is high, the friction is low, and the ramp-down time is too short for the energy to be dissipated as a loss in the frequency converter, the motor, and the installation.
3. In-correct slip compensation setting can cause higher DC link voltage.

The control unit could attempt to correct the ramp if possible (2-17 Over-voltage Control).

The inverter turns off to protect the transistors and the intermediate circuit capacitors when a certain voltage level is reached.

See 2-10 Brake Function and 2-17 Over-voltage Control to select the method used for controlling the intermediate circuit voltage level.

**High temperature**

High ambient temperature can cause the frequency converter to overheat.

**Mains drop-out**

During a mains drop-out, the frequency converter keeps running until the intermediate circuit voltage drops below the minimum stop level, which is typically 15% below the lowest rated supply voltage.

The mains voltage before the drop-out and the motor load determines how long it takes for the inverter to coast.

**Static overload in VWC<sup>plus</sup> mode**

When the frequency converter is overloaded (the torque limit in 4-16 Torque Limit Motor Mode/4-17 Torque Limit Generator Mode is reached), the controls reduces the output frequency to reduce the load.

If the overload is excessive, a current could occur that makes the frequency converter cut out after approx. 5–10 s.

Operation within the torque limit is limited in time (0–60 s) in 14-25 Trip Delay at Torque Limit.

2.15.1 Motor Thermal Protection

Danfoss uses motor thermal protection to keep the motor from being overheated. It is an electronic feature that simulates a bimetal relay based on internal measurements. The characteristic is shown in Illustration 2.26

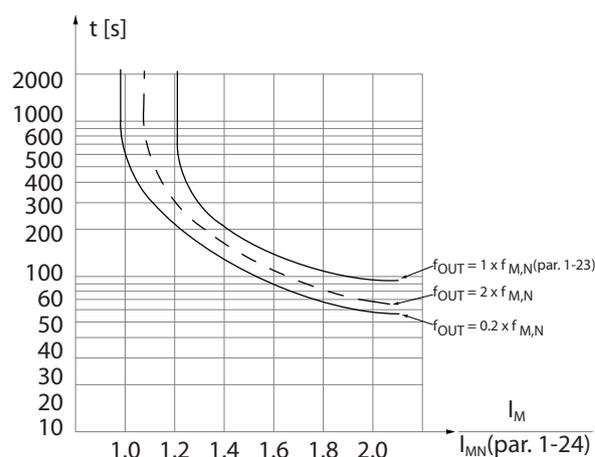


Illustration 2.26 Motor Thermal Protection

In Illustration 2.26, the X-axis is showing the ratio between  $I_{motor}$  and  $I_{motor}$  nominal. The Y-axis is showing the time in seconds before the ETR cuts off and trips the frequency converter. The curves are showing the characteristic

2

nominal speed at twice the nominal speed and at 0.2x the nominal speed.

It is clear that at lower speed the ETR cuts off at lower heat due to less cooling of the motor. In that way, the motor is protected from being over heated even at low speed. The ETR feature is calculating the motor temperature based on actual current and speed. The calculated temperature is visible as a read out parameter in 16-18 Motor Thermal in the frequency converter.

The thermistor cut-out value is  $> 3k\Omega$ .

Integrate a thermistor (PTC sensor) in the motor for winding protection.

Motor protection can be implemented using a range of techniques: PTC sensor in motor windings; mechanical thermal switch (Klixon type); or Electronic Thermal Relay (ETR).

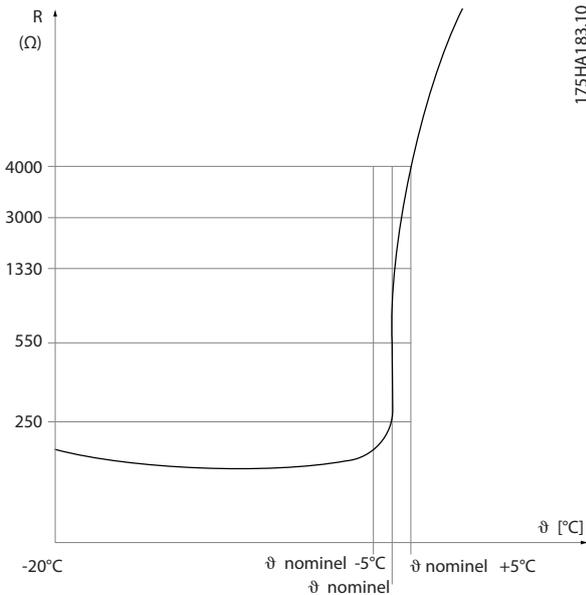


Illustration 2.27 Trip

Using a digital input and 24 V as power supply:  
 Example: The frequency converter trips when the motor temperature is too high.  
 Parameter set-up:  
 Set 1-90 Motor Thermal Protection to [2] Thermistor Trip  
 Set 1-93 Thermistor Source to [6] Digital Input 33

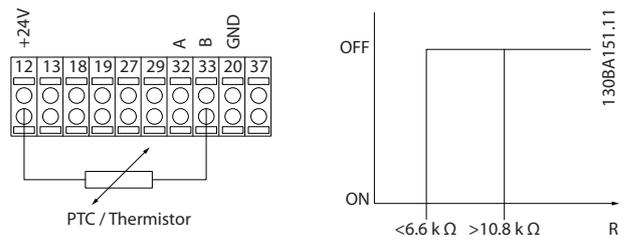


Illustration 2.28 Digital Input and 24 V Power Supply

Using a digital input and 10 V as power supply:  
 Example: The frequency converter trips when the motor temperature is too high.  
 Parameter set-up:  
 Set 1-90 Motor Thermal Protection to [2] Thermistor Trip  
 Set 1-93 Thermistor Source to [6] Digital Input 33

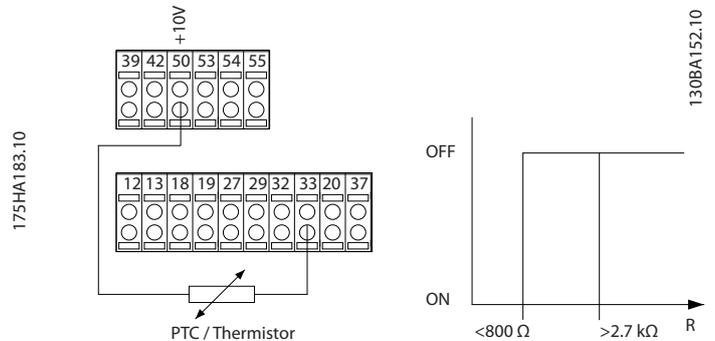


Illustration 2.29 Digital Input and 10 V Power Supply

Using an analog input and 10 V as power supply:  
 Example: The frequency converter trips when the motor temperature is too high.  
 Parameter set-up:  
 Set 1-90 Motor Thermal Protection to [2] Thermistor Trip  
 Set 1-93 Thermistor Source to [2] Analog Input 54  
 Do not select a reference source.

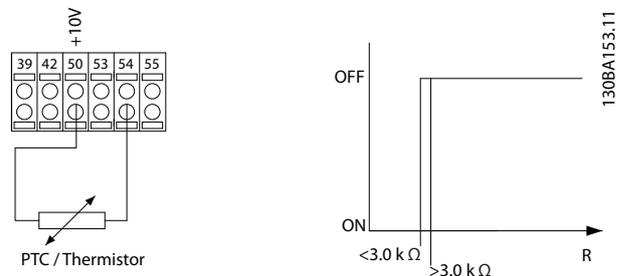


Illustration 2.30 Analog Input 10 V Power Supply

Input	Supply Voltage V	Threshold
Digital/analog	Cut-out Values	Cut-out Values
Digital	24	< 6.6kΩ - > 10.8kΩ
Digital	10	< 800Ω - > 2.7kΩ
Analog	10	< 3.0kΩ - > 3.0kΩ

**NOTE**

Check that the chosen supply voltage follows the specification of the used thermistor element.

**Summary**

With the torque limit feature, the motor is protected from being overloaded independent of the speed. With the ETR the motor is protected for being over heated and there is no need for any further motor protection. That means when the motor is heated up the ETR timer controls for how long time the motor can be running at the high temperature before it is stopped in order to prevent over heating. If the motor is overloaded without reaching the temperature where the ETR shuts off the motor, the torque limit is protecting the motor and application for being overloaded.

ETR is activated in *1-90 Motor Thermal Protection* and is controlled in *4-16 Torque Limit Motor Mode*. The time before the torque limit warning trips the frequency converter is set in *14-25 Trip Delay at Torque Limit*.

**2.15.2 Safe Stop Operation (optional)**

The FC 202 can perform the safety function “Uncontrolled Stopping by removal of power” (as defined by draft IEC 61800-5-2) or Stop Category 0 (as defined in EN 60204-1). It is designed and approved suitable for the requirements of Safety Category 3 in EN 954-1. This functionality is called safe stop.

Before integration and use of FC 202 safe stop in an installation, a thorough risk analysis on the installation must be carried out in order to determine whether the FC 202 safe stop functionality and safety category are appropriate and sufficient.

The safe stop function is activated by removing the voltage at Terminal 37 of the safe inverter. By connecting the safe inverter to external safety devices providing a safe relay, an installation for a safe stop category 1 can be obtained. The safe stop function of FC 202 can be used for asynchronous and synchronous motors.

**⚠ WARNING**

Safe Stop activation (that is, removal of 24 V DC voltage supply to terminal 37) does not provide electrical safety.

**NOTE**

The safe stop function of FC 202 can be used for asynchronous and synchronous motors. Two faults can occur in the power semiconductor and cause a residual rotation when using synchronous motors. The rotation can be calculated to  $Angle=360/(Number\ of\ Poles)$ . The application using synchronous motors must consider this possibility and ensure that it is not a safety critical issue. This situation is not relevant for asynchronous motors.

**NOTE**

In order to use the safe stop functionality in conformance with the requirements of EN-954-1 Category 3, the installation of safe stop must meet a number of conditions. See *5.7 Safe Stop Installation* for further information.

**NOTE**

The frequency converter does not provide a safety-related protection against unintended or malicious voltage supply to terminal 37 and subsequent reset. Provide this protection via the interrupt device, at the application level, or organisational level.

For more information, see *5.7 Safe Stop Installation*.

## 3 Selection

### 3

### 3.1 General Specifications

#### 3.1.1 Mains Supply 3x380-480 V AC

	N110	N132	N160	N200	N250	N315	P355	P400
<b>Normal Overload =110% current for 60 seconds</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>
Typical Shaft output at 400 V [kW]	110	132	160	200	250	315	355	400
Typical Shaft output at 460 V [hp]	150	200	250	300	350	450	500	550
Enclosure IP00							E2	E2
Enclosure IP20	D3h	D3h	D3h	D4h	D4h	D4h		
Enclosure IP21/NEMA 1	D1h	D1h	D1h	D2h	D2h	D2h	E1	E1
Enclosure IP54/NEMA 12	D1h	D1h	D1h	D2h	D2h	D2h	E1	E1
<b>Output current</b>								
Continuous (at 3x380-440 V) [A]	212	260	315	395	480	588	658	745
Intermittent (at 3x380-440 V) [A]	233	286	347	435	528	647	724	820
Continuous (at 3x441-480 V) [A]	190	240	302	361	443	535	590	678
Intermittent (at 3x441-480 V) [A]	209	264	332	397	487	588	649	746
Continuous kVA (at 400 V AC) [kVA]	147	180	218	274	333	407	456	516
Continuous kVA (at 460 V AC) [kVA]	151	191	241	288	353	426	470	540
<b>Max. Input current</b>								
Continuous (3x380-440 V) [A]	204	251	304	381	463	567	647	733
Continuous (3x441-480 V) [A]	183	231	291	348	427	516	580	667
Max. pre-fuses <sup>1)</sup> [A]	315	350	400	550	630	800	900	900
<b>Max. cable size</b>								
Motor (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2) 5)</sup>	2 x 95 2 x 3/0		2 x 185 2 x 350 mcm		4 x 240 4 x 500 mcm		2 x 185 2 x 350 mcm	
Mains (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2) 5)</sup>								
Loadsharing (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2) 5)</sup>								
Brake (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2) 5)</sup>								
Estimated power loss at 400 V AC at rated max load [W] <sup>3)</sup>	2555	2949	3764	4109	5129	6663	7532	8677
Estimated power loss at 460 V AC at rated max load [W] <sup>3)</sup>	2557	2719	3612	3561	4558	5703	6724	7819
Weight, enclosure IP00/IP20 kg (lbs.)	62 [135]		125 [275]		234 [515]		236 [519]	
Weight, enclosure IP21 kg (lbs.)							270 [594]	
Weight, enclosure IP54 kg (lbs.)							272 [598]	
Efficiency <sup>4)</sup>	0.98							
Output frequency [Hz]	0-590							
Heatsink overtemp. trip [°C]	110							
Power card ambient trip [°C]	75						85	

**Table 3.1 Mains Supply 3x380-480 V AC**

	P450	P500	P560	P630	P710	P800	P1M0
<b>Normal Overload =110% current for 60 seconds</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>
Typical Shaft output at 400 V [kW]	450	500	560	630	710	800	1000
Typical Shaft output at 460 V [hp]	600	700	750	900	1000	1200	1350
Enclosure IP00	E2						
Enclosure IP21/NEMA 1	E1	F1/F3	F1/F3	F1/F3	F1/F3	F2/F4	F2/F4
Enclosure IP54/NEMA 12	E1	F1/F3	F1/F3	F1/F3	F1/F3	F2/F4	F2/F4
<b>Output current</b>							
Continuous (at 3x380-440 V) [A]	800	880	990	1120	1260	1460	1720
Intermittent (at 3x380-440 V) [A]	880	968	1089	1232	1386	1606	1892
Continuous (at 3x441-480 V) [A]	730	780	890	1050	1160	1380	1530
Intermittent (at 3x441-480 V) [A]	803	858	979	1155	1276	1518	1683
Continuous kVA (at 400 V AC) [kVA]	554	610	686	776	873	1012	1192
Continuous kVA (at 460 V AC) [kVA]	582	621	709	837	924	1100	1219
<b>Max. Input current</b>							
Continuous (3 x 380-440 V) [A]	787	857	964	1090	1227	1422	1675
Continuous (3 x 441-480 V) [A]	718	759	867	1022	1129	1344	1490
Max. pre-fuses <sup>1)</sup> [A]	900	1600		2000		2500	
<b>Max. cable size</b>							
Motor (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2)</sup> )	4 x 240 4 x 500 mcm	8 x 150 8 x 300 mcm				12 x 150 12 x 300 mcm	
Mains (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2)</sup> )		8 x 240 8 x 500 mcm					
Loadsharing (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2)</sup> )		4 x 120 4 x 350 mcm					
Brake (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2)</sup> )	2 x 185 2 x 350 mcm	4 x 185 4 x 350 mcm				6 x 185 6 x 350 mcm	
Estimated power loss at 400 V AC at rated max load [W] <sup>3)</sup>	9473	10162	11822	12512	14674	17293	19278
Estimated power loss at 460 V AC at rated max load [W] <sup>3)</sup>	8527	8876	10424	11595	13213	16229	16624
Weight, enclosure IP00/IP20 kg [lbs.]	277 [609]	-	-	-	-	-	-
Weight, enclosure IP21 kg [lbs.]	313 [689]	1017/1318 [2237/2900]				1260/1561 [2772/3434]	
Weight, enclosure IP54 kg [lbs.]	313 [689]	1017/1318 [2237/2900]				1260/1561 [2772/3434]	
Efficiency <sup>4)</sup>	0.98						
Output frequency [Hz]	0-590						
Heatsink overtemp. trip [°C]	110	95					
Power card ambient trip	85						

**Table 3.2 Mains Supply 3x380-480 V AC**

1) For type of fuse, consult the Operating Instructions.

2) American Wire Gauge.

3) The typical power loss is at normal conditions and expected to be within ±15% (tolerance relates to variety in voltage and cable conditions.) These values are based on a typical motor efficiency (eff2/eff3 border line). Lower efficiency motors add to the power loss in the frequency converter and the opposite is also true. If the switching frequency is raised from nominal, the power losses rise significantly. LCP and typical control card power consumptions are included. Further options and customer load can add up to 30 W to the losses (though typically only 4 W extra for a fully loaded control card or options for slot A or slot B, each).

4) Measured using 5 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.

5) Wiring terminals on N132, N160, and N315 frequency converters cannot receive cables one size larger.

## 3.1.2 Mains Supply 3x525-690 V AC

3

	N75K	N90K	N110	N132	N160	N200
<b>Normal Overload =110% current for 60 seconds</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>
Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]	55	75	90	110	132	160
Typical Shaft output at 575 V [hp]	75	100	125	150	200	250
Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]	75	90	110	132	160	200
Enclosure IP20	D3h	D3h	D3h	D3h	D3h	D4h
Enclosure IP21	D1h	D1h	D1h	D1h	D1h	D2h
Enclosure IP54	D1h	D1h	D1h	D1h	D1h	D2h
<b>Output current</b>						
Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	90	113	137	162	201	253
Intermittent (60 s overload) (at 550 V)[A]	99	124	151	178	221	278
Continuous (at 575/690 V) [A]	86	108	131	155	192	242
Intermittent (60 s overload) (at 575/690 V) [kVA]	95	119	144	171	211	266
Continuous kVA (at 550 V) [kVA]	86	108	131	154	191	241
Continuous kVA (at 575 V) [kVA]	86	108	130	154	191	241
Continuous kVA (at 690 V) [kVA]	103	129	157	185	229	289
<b>Max. Input current</b>						
Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	89	110	130	158	198	245
Continuous (at 575 V) [A]	85	106	124	151	189	234
Continuous (at 690 V) [A]	87	109	128	155	197	240
Max. cable size: mains, motor, brake, and load share (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2</sup> )	2x95 (2x3/0)					
Max. external mains fuses [A]	160	315	315	315	350	350
Estimated power loss at 575 V [W] <sup>3)</sup>	1,161	1,426	1,739	2,099	2,646	3,071
Estimated power loss at 690 V [W] <sup>3)</sup>	1,203	1,476	1,796	2,165	2,738	3,172
Weight, enclosures IP20, IP21, IP54 kg (lbs.)	62 (135)					
Efficiency <sup>4)</sup>	0.98					
Output frequency [Hz]	0–590					
Heatsink overtemp. trip [°C]	110					
Power card ambient trip [°C]	75					

Table 3.3 Mains Supply 3x525-690 V AC

	<b>N250</b>	<b>N315</b>	<b>N400</b>	<b>P450</b>	<b>P500</b>	<b>P560</b>
<b>Normal Load</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>
Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]	200	250	315	355	400	450
Typical Shaft output at 575 V [hp]	300	350	400	450	500	600
Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]	250	315	400	450	500	560
Enclosure IP00				E2	E2	E2
Enclosure IP20	D4h	D4h	D4h			
Enclosure IP21	D2h	D2h	D2h	E1	E1	E1
Enclosure IP54	D2h	D2h	D2h	E1	E1	E1
<b>Output current</b>						
Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	303	360	418	470	523	596
Intermittent (60 s overload) (at 550 V)[A]	333	396	460	517	575	656
Continuous (at 575/690 V) [A]	290	344	400	450	500	570
Intermittent (60 s overload) (at 575/690 V) [kVA]	319	378	440	495	550	627
Continuous kVA (at 550 V) [kVA]	289	343	398	448	498	568
Continuous kVA (at 575 V) [kVA]	289	343	398	448	498	568
Continuous kVA (at 690 V) [kVA]	347	411	478	538	598	681
<b>Max. Input current</b>						
Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	299	355	408	453	504	574
Continuous (at 575 V) [A]	286	339	390	434	482	549
Continuous (at 690 V) [A]	296	352	400	434	482	549
Max. cable size: mains, motor, brake, and load share (mm <sup>2</sup> / AWG <sup>2</sup> )	2x185 (2x350 mcm)					
Max. external mains fuses [A]	400	500	550	700	700	900
Estimated power loss at 575 V [W] <sup>3)</sup>	3,719	4,460	5,023	5,323	6,010	7,395
Estimated power loss at 690 V [W] <sup>3)</sup>	3,848	4,610	5,150	5,529	6,239	7,653
Weight, enclosure IP20, IP21, IP54 kg (lbs.)	125 (275)					
Efficiency <sup>4)</sup>	0.98					
Output frequency [Hz]	0-590			0-525		
Heatsink overtemp. trip [°C]	110				95	
Power card ambient trip [°C]	80					

**Table 3.4 Mains Supply 3x525-690 V AC**

	P630	P710	P800	P900	P1M0	P1M2	P1M4
<b>Normal Load</b>							
Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]	500	560	670	750	850	1000	1100
Typical Shaft output at 575 V [hp]	650	750	950	1050	1150	1350	1550
Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]	630	710	800	900	1000	1200	1400
Enclosure IP00	E2						
Enclosure IP21	E1	F1/F3	F1/F3	F1/F3	F2/F4	F2/F4	F2/F4
Enclosure IP54	E1	F1/F3	F1/F3	F1/F3	F2/F4	F2/F4	F2/F4
<b>Output current</b>							
Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	630	763	889	988	1108	1317	1479
Intermittent (60 s overload) (at 550 V) [A]	693	839	978	1087	1219	1449	1627
Continuous (at 575/690 V) [A]	630	730	850	945	1060	1260	1415
Intermittent (60 s overload) (at 575/690 V) [kVA]	693	803	935	1040	1166	1386	1557
Continuous kVA (at 550 V) [kVA]	600	727	847	941	1056	1255	1409
Continuous kVA (at 575 V) [kVA]	627	727	847	941	1056	1255	1409
Continuous kVA (at 690 V) [kVA]	753	872	1016	1129	1267	1506	1691
<b>Max. Input current</b>							
Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	607	743	866	962	1079	1282	1440
Continuous (at 575 V) [A]	607	711	828	920	1032	1227	1378
Continuous (at 690 V) [A]	607	711	828	920	1032	1227	1378
<b>Max cable size</b>							
Motor (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2</sup> )	4x240 (4x500 mcm)	8x150 (8x300 mcm)			12x150 (12x300 mcm)		
Mains (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2</sup> )		8x240 (8x500 mcm)			8x240 (8x500 mcm)		
Loadsharing (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2</sup> )		4x185 (4x350 mcm)			6x185 (6x350 mcm)		
Brake (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2</sup> )	2x185 (2x350 mcm)						
Max. external mains fuses [A]	900	1600	1600	1600	1600	2000	2500
Estimated power loss at 575 V [W] <sup>3)</sup>	8209	9500	10872	12316	13731	16190	18536
Estimated power loss at 690 V [W] <sup>3)</sup>	8495	9863	11304	12798	14250	16821	19247
Weight, enclosure IP20, IP21, IP54 kg (lbs.)	125 (275)						
Efficiency <sup>4)</sup>	0.98						
Output frequency [Hz]	0-525						
Heatsink overtemp. trip [°C]	110	95	105		95	105	95
Power card ambient trip [°C]	85						

**Table 3.5 Mains Supply 3x525-690 V AC**

1) For type of fuse, consult the Operating Instructions.

2) American Wire Gauge.

3) The typical power loss is at normal conditions and expected to be within ±15% (tolerance relates to variety in voltage and cable conditions.) These values are based on a typical motor efficiency (eff2/eff3 border line). Lower efficiency motors add to the power loss in the frequency converter and the opposite is also true. If the switching frequency is raised from nominal, the power losses rise significantly. LCP and typical control card power consumptions are included. Further options and customer load can add up to 30 W to the losses (though typically only 4 W extra for a fully loaded control card or options for slot A or slot B, each).

4) Measured using 5 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.

Frame size	Description	Maximum weight [kg] ((lbs.))
D5h	D1h ratings+disconnect and/or brake chopper	166 (255)
D6h	D1h ratings+contactor and/or circuit breaker	129 (285)
D7h	D2h ratings+disconnect and/or brake chopper	200 (440)
D8h	D2h ratings+contactor and/or circuit breaker	225 (496)

Table 3.6 D5h–D8h Weights

### 3.1.3 12-Pulse Specifications

Mains Supply 380-480 V AC										
	P315	P355	P400	P450	P500	P560	P630	P710	P800	P1M0
<b>Normal overload 110% for 1 Minute</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>
Typical Shaft Output [kW] at 400 V	315	355	400	450	500	560	630	710	800	1000
Typical Shaft Output [HP] at 460 V	450	500	550/600	600	650	750	900	1000	1200	1350
IP 21/ NEMA 1	F8/F9				F10/F11				F12/F13	
IP 54 / NEMA 12	F8/F9				F10/F11				F12/F13	
<b>Output Current</b>										
Continuous (at 380-440 V)	600	658	745	800	880	990	1120	1260	1460	1720
Intermittent (60 second overload at 380-440 V)	660	724	820	880	968	1089	1232	1386	1606	1892
Continuous (at 400 V)	416	456	516	554	610	686	776	873	1,012	1,192
Intermittent (60 second overload at 460-500 V)	457	501	568	610	671	754	854	960	1,113	1,311
Continuous (at 441–500 V)	540	590	678	730	780	890	1,050	1,160	1,380	1,530
Intermittent (60 second overload) (at 441–500 V)	594	649	746	803	858	979	1,155	1,276	1,518	1,683
Continuous (at 460 V)	430	470	540	582	621	709	837	924	1,100	1,219
Continuous (at 500 V)	473	517	594	640	684	780	920	1,017	1,209	1,341
<b>Max Input Current</b>										
Continuous (3x380-440v) [A]	590	647	733	787	857	964	1,090	1,227	1,422	1,675
Continuous (3x441-480v) [A]	531	580	667	718	759	867	1,022	1,129	1,344	1,490
Max. external mains fuses <sup>1)</sup>	700	700	700	700	900	900	900	1,500	1,500	1,500
<b>Max Cable Size:</b>										
Motor (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2)</sup> )	8 x 300 MCM (8 x 150)								12 x 300 MCM (8 x 150)	
Mains (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2)</sup> )	8 x 500MCM (8 x 250)									
Regeneration terminals (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2)</sup> )	4 x 250 MCM (4 x 120)									
Brake (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2)</sup> )	2 x 350 MCM (2 x 185)					4 x 350 MCM (4 x 185)				
Estimated Power loss at 400 V AC at rated max. load (W) <sup>3)</sup>	6705	7532	8677	9473	10162	11822	12512	14674	17293	19278
Estimated Power loss at 460 V AC at rated max. load (W) <sup>3)</sup>	6705	6724	7819	8527	8876	10424	11595	13213	16229	16624
F9/F11/F13 Max. additional losses for A1, RFI, CB or disconnect & contactor	682	766	882	963	1054	1093	1230	2280	2236	2541
Weight Enclosure IP21 kg (lb)	263	270	272	313	1004 (2214)				1246 (2748)	
Weight enclosure IP 54 kg (lb)	(580)	(595)	(600)	(690)						
Efficiency <sup>4)</sup>	0.98									
Output Frequency	0-590 Hz									
Heatsink overtemp. trip	110 °C					95 °C				
Power card ambient trip	85 °C									

Table 3.7 Mains Supply 380-480 V AC

<b>Mains Supply 525-690 V AC</b>										
	<b>P450</b>	<b>P500</b>	<b>P560</b>	<b>P630</b>	<b>P710</b>	<b>P800</b>	<b>P900</b>	<b>P1M0</b>	<b>P1M2</b>	<b>P1M4</b>
<b>Normal overload 110% for 1 Minute</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>NO</b>
Typical Shaft Output [HP] at 525-550 V	355	400	450	500	560	670	750	850	1000	1100
Typical Shaft Output [kW] at 690	450	500	560	630	710	800	900	1000	1200	1400
Typical Shaft Output [HP] at 575	450	500	600	650	750	950	1050	1150	1350	1550
IP 21/ NEMA 1 at 525 V	F8/F9			F10/F11			F12/F13			
IP 21/ NEMA 1 at 575 V	F8/F9			F10/F11			F12/F13			
IP 21/ NEMA 1 at 690 V	F8/F9			F10/F11			F12/F13			
<b>Output Current</b>										
Continuous (6 x 525-550 V) [A]	470	523	596	630	763	889	988	1108	1317	1479
Intermittent (6 x 550 V)	515	575	656	693	839	978	1087	1219	1449	1627
Continuous (6 x 551-690 V) [A]	450	500	570	630	730	850	945	1060	1260	1415
Intermittent (6 x 551-690 V) [A]	495	550	627	693	803	935	1040	1166	1386	1557
Continuous KVA (550 V) [KVA]	448	498	568	600	727	847	941	1056	1255	1409
Continuous KVA (575 V) [KVA]	448	498	568	627	727	847	941	1056	1255	1409
Continuous KVA (690 V) [KVA]	538	598	681	753	872	1016	1129	1267	1506	1691
<b>Max Input Current</b>										
Continuous (6 x 550v) [A]	453	504	574	607	743	866	962	1079	1282	1440
Continuous (6 x 575v) [A]	434	482	549	607	711	828	920	1032	1227	1378
Continuous (6 x 690v) [A]	434	482	549	607	711	828	920	1032	1227	1378
Max. external mains fuses <sup>1)</sup>	630	630	630	630	900	900	900	1600	2000	2500
<b>Max Cable Size:</b>										
Motor (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2)</sup> )	8 x 300 MCM (8 x 150)						12 x 300 MCM (12 x 150)			
Mains (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2)</sup> )	8 x 500 MCM (8 x 250)									
Regeneration terminals (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2)</sup> )	4 x 250 MCM (4 x 120)									
Brake (mm <sup>2</sup> /AWG <sup>2)</sup> )	4 x 350 MCM (4 x 185)									
Estimated Power loss at 690 V AC at rated max. load (W) <sup>3)</sup>	4974	5623	7018	7793	8933	10310	11692	12909	15358	17602
Estimated Power loss at 575 V AC at rated max. load (W) <sup>3)</sup>	5128	5794	7221	8017	9212	10659	12080	13305	15865	18173
Weight Enclosure IP21 kg (lb)	440/656 (880/1443)			880/1096 (1936/2471)			1022/1238 (2248/2724)			
Weight enclosure IP 54 kg (lb)										
Efficiency <sup>4)</sup>	0.98									
Output Frequency	0-525 Hz									
Heatsink overtemp trip	110 °C				95 °C	105 °C	95 °C	95 °C	105 °C	95 °C
Power card ambient trip	85 °C									

**Table 3.8 Mains Supply 525-690 V AC**

1) For type of fuse, consult the Operating Instructions

2) American Wire Gauge

3) The typical power loss is at normal conditions and expected to be within +/- 15% (tolerance relates to variety in voltage and cable conditions.) These values are based on a typical motor efficiency (eff2/eff3 border line). Lower efficiency motors add to the power loss in the frequency converter and the opposite is also true. If the switching frequency is raised from nominal, the power losses rise significantly. LCP and typical control card power consumptions are included. Further options and customer load can add up to 30 W to the losses (though typically only 4 W extra for a fully loaded control card or options for slot A or slot B, each)

4) Measured using 5 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency

**Protection and Features**

- Electronic thermal motor protection against overload.
- Temperature monitoring of the heatsink ensures that the frequency converter trips when the temperature reaches  $95\text{ °C} \pm 5\text{ °C}$ . An overload temperature cannot be reset until the temperature of the heatsink is below  $70\text{ °C} \pm 5\text{ °C}$  (Guideline - these temperatures vary for different power sizes and enclosures). VLT® AQUA Drive has an auto derating function to prevent its heatsink reaching  $95\text{ °C}$ .
- The frequency converter is protected against short-circuits on motor terminals U, V, W.
- If a mains phase is missing, the frequency converter trips or issues a warning (depending on the load).
- Monitoring of the intermediate circuit voltage ensures that the frequency converter trips if the intermediate circuit voltage is too low or high.
- The frequency converter is protected against earth faults on motor terminals U, V, W.

**Mains supply**

Supply terminals (6-pulse)	L1, L2, L3
Supply terminals (12-pulse)	L1-1, L2-1, L3-1, L1-2, L2-2, L3-2
Supply voltage	380-480 V $\pm 10\%$
Supply voltage	525-600 V $\pm 10\%$
Supply voltage	525-690 V $\pm 10\%$

*Mains voltage low/mains drop-out:*

*During low mains voltage or a mains drop-out, the frequency converter continues until the intermediate circuit voltage drops below the minimum stop level, which corresponds typically to 15% below the lowest rated supply voltage. Power-up and full torque cannot be expected at mains voltage lower than 10% below the lowest rated supply voltage.*

Supply frequency	50/60 Hz +4/-6%
------------------	-----------------

*The frequency converter power supply is tested in accordance with IEC61000-4-28, 50 Hz +4/-6%.*

Max. imbalance temporary between mains phases	3.0% of rated supply voltage
True Power Factor ( $\lambda$ )	$\geq 0.9$ nominal at rated load
Displacement Power Factor ( $\cos\phi$ ) near unity	(> 0.98)
Switching on input supply L1, L2, L3 (power-ups) $\geq$ enclosure type D, E, F	maximum 1 time/2 min.
Environment according to EN60664-1	overvoltage category III/pollution degree 2

*The unit is suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100.000 RMS symmetrical Amperes, 480/600 V maximum.*

**Motor output (U, V, W)**

Output voltage	0-100 % of supply voltage
Output frequency	0-590 Hz
Switching on output	Unlimited
Ramp times	1-3600 s

**Torque characteristics**

Starting torque (Constant torque)	maximum 110% for 1 minute*
Starting torque	maximum 135% up to 0.5 s*
Overload torque (Constant torque)	maximum 110% for 1 minute*

*\*Percentage relates to nominal torque of VLT AQUA Drive.*

**Cable lengths and cross sections**

Max. motor cable length, screened/armoured	150 m
Max. motor cable length, unscreened/unarmoured	300 m
Max. cross section to motor, mains, load sharing, and brake *	
Maximum cross section to control terminals, rigid wire	1.5 mm <sup>2</sup> /16 AWG (2 x 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> )
Maximum cross section to control terminals, flexible cable	1 mm <sup>2</sup> /18AWG
Maximum cross section to control terminals, cable with enclosed core	0.5 mm <sup>2</sup> /20AWG
Minimum cross section to control terminals	0.25 mm <sup>2</sup>

\* See 3.1 General Specifications for more information!

**Control card, RS-485 serial communication**

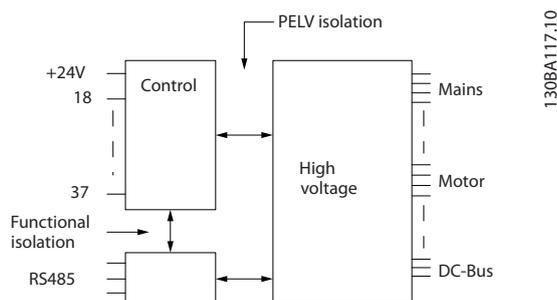
Terminal number	68 (P,TX+, RX+), 69 (N,TX-, RX-)
Terminal number 61	Common for terminals 68 and 69

The RS-485 serial communication circuit is functionally seated from other central circuits and galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV).

**Analog inputs**

Number of analog inputs	2
Terminal number	53, 54
Modes	Voltage or current
Mode select	Switch S201 and switch S202
Voltage mode	Switch S201/switch S202 = OFF (U)
Voltage level	0 to + 10 V (scaleable)
Input resistance, R <sub>i</sub>	approx. 10 kΩ
Max. voltage	± 20 V
Current mode	Switch S201/switch S202 = ON (I)
Current level	0/4 to 20 mA (scaleable)
Input resistance, R <sub>i</sub>	approx. 200 Ω
Max. current	30 mA
Resolution for analog inputs	10 bit (+ sign)
Accuracy of analog inputs	Max. error 0.5% of full scale
Bandwidth	200 Hz

The analog inputs are galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.



**Illustration 3.1 PELV Isolation of Analog Inputs**

**Analog output**

Number of programmable analog outputs	1
Terminal number	42
Current range at analog output	0/4-20 mA
Max. resistor load to common at analog output	500 Ω
Accuracy on analog output	Max. error: 0.8% of full scale
Resolution on analog output	8 bit

The analog output is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

**Digital inputs**

Programmable digital inputs	4 (6)
Terminal number	18, 19, 27 <sup>1)</sup> , 29 <sup>1)</sup> , 32, 33,
Logic	PNP or NPN
Voltage level	0–24 V DC
Voltage level, logic '0' PNP	< 5 V DC
Voltage level, logic '1' PNP	> 10 V DC
Voltage level, logic '0' NPN	> 19 V DC
Voltage level, logic '1' NPN	< 14 V DC
Maximum voltage on input	28 V DC
Input resistance, R <sub>i</sub>	approx. 4 kΩ

All digital inputs are galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

1) Terminals 27 and 29 can also be programmed as output.

**Digital output**

Programmable digital/pulse outputs	2
Terminal number	27, 29 <sup>1)</sup>
Voltage level at digital/frequency output	0–24 V
Max. output current (sink or source)	40 mA
Max. load at frequency output	1 kΩ
Max. capacitive load at frequency output	10 nF
Minimum output frequency at frequency output	0 Hz
Maximum output frequency at frequency output	32 kHz
Accuracy of frequency output	Max. error: 0.1% of full scale
Resolution of frequency outputs	12 bit

1) Terminal 27 and 29 can also be programmed as input.

The digital output is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

**Pulse inputs**

Programmable pulse inputs	2
Terminal number pulse	29, 33
Max. frequency at terminal, 29, 33	110 kHz (Push-pull driven)
Max. frequency at terminal, 29, 33	5 kHz (open collector)
Min. frequency at terminal 29, 33	4 Hz
Voltage level	see section on Digital input
Maximum voltage on input	28 V DC
Input resistance, R <sub>i</sub>	approx. 4 kΩ
Pulse input accuracy (0.1 - 1 kHz)	Max. error: 0.1% of full scale

**Control card, 24 V DC output**

Terminal number	12, 13
Max. load	200 mA

The 24V DC supply is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV), but has the same potential as the analog and digital inputs and outputs.

**Relay outputs**

Programmable relay outputs	2
<b>Relay 01 Terminal number</b>	1-3 (break), 1-2 (make)
Max. terminal load (AC-1) <sup>1)</sup> on 1-3 (NC), 1-2 (NO) (Resistive load)	240 V AC, 2 A
Max. terminal load (AC-15) <sup>1)</sup> (Inductive load @ cosφ 0.4)	240 V AC, 0.2 A
Max. terminal load (DC-1) <sup>1)</sup> on 1-2 (NO), 1-3 (NC) (Resistive load)	60 V DC, 1 A
Max. terminal load (DC-13) <sup>1)</sup> (Inductive load)	24 V DC, 0.1 A
<b>Relay 02 Terminal number</b>	4-6 (break), 4-5 (make)
Max. terminal load (AC-1) <sup>1)</sup> on 4-5 (NO) (Resistive load) <sup>2)3)</sup>	400 V AC, 2 A
Max. terminal load (AC-15) <sup>1)</sup> on 4-5 (NO) (Inductive load @ cosφ 0.4)	240 V AC, 0.2 A
Max. terminal load (DC-1) <sup>1)</sup> on 4-5 (NO) (Resistive load)	80 V DC, 2 A

Max. terminal load (DC-13) <sup>1)</sup> on 4-5 (NO) (Inductive load)	24 V DC, 0.1 A
Max. terminal load (AC-1) <sup>1)</sup> on 4-6 (NC) (Resistive load)	240V AC, 2 A
Max. terminal load (AC-15) <sup>1)</sup> on 4-6 (NC) (Inductive load @ cosφ 0.4)	240V AC, 0.2 A
Max. terminal load (DC-1) <sup>1)</sup> on 4-6 (NC) (Resistive load)	50 V DC, 2 A
Max. terminal load (DC-13) <sup>1)</sup> on 4-6 (NC) (Inductive load)	24 V DC, 0.1 A
Min. terminal load on 1-3 (NC), 1-2 (NO), 4-6 (NC), 4-5 (NO)	24 V DC 10 mA, 24 V AC 20 mA
Environment according to EN 60664-1	overvoltage category III/pollution degree 2

1) IEC 60947 parts 4 and 5

The relay contacts are galvanically isolated from the rest of the circuit by reinforced isolation (PELV).

2) Overvoltage Category II

3) UL applications 300 V AC 2A

Control card, 10 V DC output

Terminal number	50
Output voltage	10.5 V ±0.5V
Max. load	25 mA

The 10 V DC supply is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

Control characteristics

Resolution of output frequency at 0-590 Hz	±0.003Hz
System response time (terminals 18, 19, 27, 29, 32, 33)	≤ 2 ms
Speed control range (open loop)	1:100 of synchronous speed
Speed accuracy (open loop)	30–4000 rpm: Maximum error of ±8 rpm

All control characteristics are based on a 4-pole asynchronous motor

Surroundings

Enclosure type D1h/D2h/E1/E2	IP00/chassis
Enclosure type D3h/D4h	IP20/chassis
Enclosure type D1h/D2h, E1, F1-F4, F8-F13	IP21/Type 1, IP54/Type 12
Vibration test enclosure D/E/F	1 g
Maximum relative humidity	5% - 95% (IEC 721-3-3; Class 3K3 (non-condensing) during operation
Aggressive environment (IEC 721-3-3), coated	class 3C3
Test method according to IEC 60068-2-43 H2S (10 days)	
Ambient temperature (at 60 AVM switching mode)	Max. 45 °C
Maximum ambient temperature with reduced load	55 °C

Derating for high ambient temperature, see 3.5 Special Conditions

Minimum ambient temperature during full-scale operation	0 °C
Minimum ambient temperature at reduced performance	- 10 °C
Temperature during storage/transport	-25 - +65/70 °C
Maximum altitude above sea level without derating	1000 m
Maximum altitude above sea level with derating	3000 m

Derating for high altitude, see 3.5 Special Conditions

EMC standards, Emission	EN 61800-3, EN 61000-6-3/4, EN 55011, IEC 61800-3 EN 61800-3, EN 61000-6-1/2,
EMC standards, Immunity	EN 61000-4-2, EN 61000-4-3, EN 61000-4-4, EN 61000-4-5, EN 61000-4-6

See 3.5 Special Conditions for more information.

Control card performance

Scan interval	5 ms
---------------	------

Control card, USB serial communication

USB standard	1.1 (Full speed)
USB plug	USB type B "device" plug

**CAUTION**

Connection to PC is carried out via a standard host/device USB cable.

The USB connection is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals. The USB connection is not galvanically isolated from protection earth. Use only isolated laptop/PC as connection to the USB connector on the frequency converter or an isolated USB cable/converter.

3.2 Efficiency

**Efficiency of the frequency converter ( $\eta_{VLT}$ )**

The load on the frequency converter has little effect on its efficiency. In general, the efficiency is the same at the rated motor frequency  $f_{M,N}$ , even if the motor supplies 100% of the rated shaft torque or only 75%, in case of part loads.

The efficiency of the frequency converter does not change even if other U/f characteristics are chosen. However, the U/f characteristics influence the efficiency of the motor.

The efficiency declines slightly when the switching frequency is set to a value of above 5 kHz. The efficiency is slightly reduced when the mains voltage is 480 V, or if the motor cable is longer than 30 m.

**Frequency converter efficiency calculation**

Calculate the efficiency of the frequency converter at different speeds and loads based on *Illustration 3.2*. The factor in this graph must be multiplied with the specific efficiency factor listed in the specification tables in 3.1.1 Mains Supply 3x380-480 V AC and 3.1.2 Mains Supply 3x525-690 V AC.

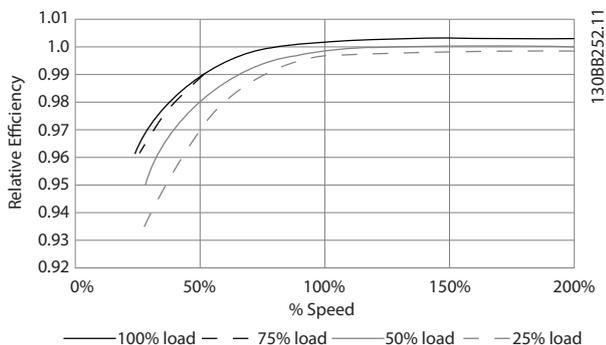


Illustration 3.2 Typical Efficiency Curves

Example: Assume a 160 kW, 380–480 V AC frequency converter at 25% load at 50% speed. *Illustration 3.2* shows 0.97 - rated efficiency for a 160 kW frequency converter is 0.98. The actual efficiency is then:  $0.97 \times 0.98 = 0.95$ .

**Efficiency of the motor ( $\eta_{MOTOR}$ )**

The efficiency of a motor connected to the frequency converter depends on magnetizing level. In general, the efficiency is as good as with mains operation. The efficiency of the motor depends on the type of motor.

In the range of 75–100% of the rated torque, the efficiency of the motor is practically constant, both when the frequency converter controls it and when it runs directly on mains.

In small motors, the influence from the U/f characteristic on efficiency is marginal. However, in motors from 11 kW and up, the advantages are significant.

In general, the switching frequency does not affect the efficiency of small motors. Motors from 11 kW and up have their efficiency improved (1–2%) because the shape of the motor current sine wave is almost perfect at high switching frequency.

**Efficiency of the system ( $\eta_{SYSTEM}$ )**

To calculate the system efficiency, the efficiency of the frequency converter ( $\eta_{VLT}$ ) is multiplied by the efficiency of the motor ( $\eta_{MOTOR}$ ):

$$\eta_{SYSTEM} = \eta_{VLT} \times \eta_{MOTOR}$$

3.3 Acoustic Noise

The acoustic noise from the frequency converter comes from three sources:

1. DC intermediate circuit coils.
2. Integral fan.
3. RFI filter choke.

The typical values measured at a distance of 1 m from the unit:

Enclosure	Full fan speed [dBA]
N110	71
N132	71
N160	72
N200	74
N250	75
N315	73
E1/E2 *	74
E1/E2 **	83
F1/F2/F3/F4	80
F8/F9/F10/F11/F12/F13	84.5

\* 315 kW, 380–480 VAC. 450 kW and 500 kW, 525–690 V AC only.  
 \*\* Remaining E1+E2 power sizes.

Table 3.9 Acoustic Noise Levels

### 3.4 Peak Voltage on Motor

When a transistor in the inverter bridge switches, the voltage across the motor increases by a  $dU/dt$  ratio depending on:

- the motor cable (type, cross-section, length screened or unscreened)
- inductance

The natural induction causes an overshoot  $U_{PEAK}$  in the motor voltage before it stabilises itself at a level depending on the voltage in the intermediate circuit. The rise time and the peak voltage  $U_{PEAK}$  affect the service life of the motor. If the peak voltage is too high, especially motors without phase coil insulation are affected. If the motor cable is short (a few metres), the rise time and peak voltage are lower.

If the motor cable is long (100 m), the rise time and peak voltage increases.

In motors without phase insulation paper or other insulation reinforcement suitable for operation with voltage supply (such as a frequency converter), fit a sine-wave filter on the output of the frequency converter.

To obtain approximate values for cable lengths and voltages not mentioned here, use the following rules of thumb:

1. Rise time increases/decreases proportionally with cable length.
2.  $U_{PEAK} = \text{DC link voltage} \times 1.9$   
(DC link voltage = Mains voltage  $\times$  1.35).
3. 
$$dU \Big| dt = \frac{0.8 \times U_{PEAK}}{\text{Risetime}}$$

Data are measured according to IEC 60034-17.

Cable lengths are in metres.

#### Cable Length Specifications:

Frequency converter N110 - N315, T4/380-500 V				
Cable length [m]	Mains voltage [V]	Rise time [ $\mu$ sec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/ $\mu$ sec]
30	400	0.26	1.180	2.109

Table 3.10 N110 - N315, T4/380-500 V

Frequency converter P400 - P1M0, T4/380-500 V				
Cable length [m]	Mains voltage [V]	Rise time [ $\mu$ sec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/ $\mu$ sec]
30	500	0.71	1.165	1.389
30	400	0.61	0.942	1.233
30	500 <sup>1)</sup>	0.80	0.906	0.904
30	400 <sup>1)</sup>	0.82	0.760	0.743

Table 3.11 P400 - P1M0, T4/380-500 V

<sup>1)</sup> With Danfoss  $dU/dt$  filter.

N110-N160, T7 (525-690 V)				
Cable length [m]	Mains voltage [V]	Rise time [ $\mu$ sec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/ $\mu$ sec]
150	690	0.36	2135	2.197

Table 3.12 N110-N160, T7 (525-690 V)

N200-N400, T7 (525-690 V)				
Cable length [m]	Mains voltage [V]	Rise time [ $\mu$ sec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/ $\mu$ sec]
150	690	0.46	2210	1.744

Table 3.13 N200-N400, T7 (525-690 V)

Frequency converter P450 - P1M4, T7/525-690 V				
Cable length [m]	Mains voltage [V]	Rise time [ $\mu$ sec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/ $\mu$ sec]
30	690	0.57	1.611	2.261
30	575	0.25		2.510
30	690 <sup>1)</sup>	1.13	1.629	1.150

Table 3.14 P450 - P1M4, T7/525-690 V

<sup>1)</sup> With Danfoss  $dU/dt$  filter.

## 3.5 Special Conditions

### 3.5.1 Purpose of Derating

Consider derating when using the frequency converter at low air pressure (heights), at low speeds, with long motor cables, cables with a large cross section or at high ambient temperature. The required action is described in this section.

### 3.5.2 Derating for Low Air Pressure

The cooling capability of air is decreased at lower air pressure.

Below 1000 m altitude no derating is necessary but above 1000 m the ambient temperature ( $T_{AMB}$ ) or max. output current ( $I_{out}$ ) derate in accordance with

An alternative is to lower the ambient temperature at high altitudes and ensure 100% output current at high altitudes. As an example of how to read the graph, the situation at 2 km is elaborated. At a temperature of 45 °C ( $T_{AMB, MAX} - 3.3$  K), 91% of the rated output current is available. At a temperature of 41.7 °C, 100% of the rated output current is available.

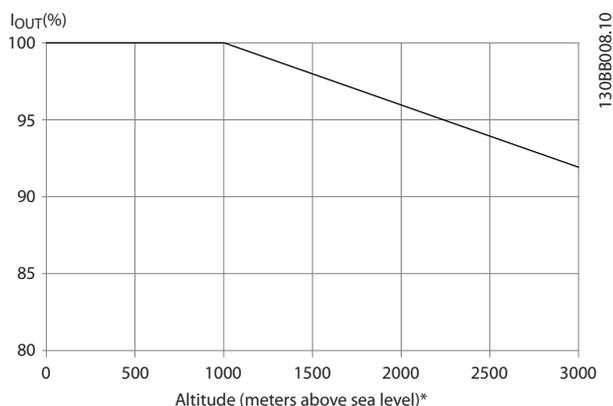


Illustration 3.3 Derating of Output Current Versus Altitude at  $T_{AMB, MAX}$

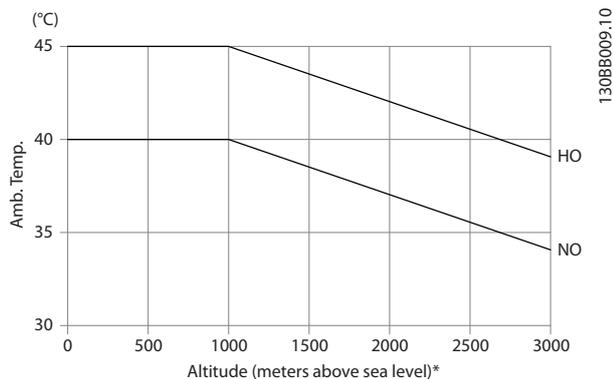


Illustration 3.4 Derating of Output Current Versus Altitude at  $T_{AMB, MAX}$

### 3.5.3 Derating for Running at Low Speed

When a motor is connected to a frequency converter, it is necessary to check that the cooling of the motor is adequate. The level of heating depends on the load on the motor, as well as the operating speed and time.

#### Constant torque applications (CT mode)

In constant torque applications, it is possible for a motor to draw full current while operating at low speeds. In such cases, the cooling fins do not adequately cool the motor, causing it to overheat. When the motor is operating

continuously at less than half its rated speed, apply more cooling.

Alternately, an oversized motor can be used to reduce the load level. However, the size of the motor is limited to one size larger than that specified by the frequency converter.

An alternative is to reduce the load level of the motor by choosing a larger motor. However, the design of the frequency converter puts a limit to the motor size.

#### Variable (Quadratic) torque applications (VT)

In VT applications such as centrifugal pumps and fans, where the torque is proportional to the square of the speed and the power is proportional to the cube of the speed, there is no need for more cooling or de-rating of the motor.

In the graphs shown below, the typical VT curve is below the maximum torque with de-rating and maximum torque with forced cooling at all speeds.

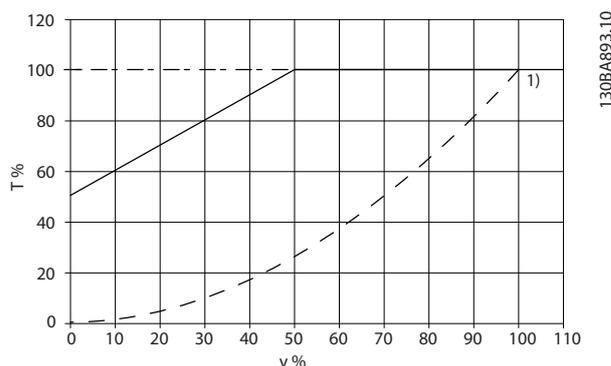


Illustration 3.5 Maximum Load for a Standard Motor at 40 °C

-----	Typical torque at VT load
-•••••	Max torque with forced cooling
————	Max torque

Table 3.15 Legend to Illustration 3.5

#### NOTE

Over-synchronous speed operation results in the available motor torque decreasing inversely proportional with the increase in speed. Consider this decrease during the design phase to avoid overloading the motor.

### 3.5.4 Automatic Adaptations to Ensure Performance

The frequency converter constantly checks for critical levels of internal temperature, load current, high voltage on the intermediate circuit and low motor speeds. As a response to a critical level, the frequency converter can adjust the switching frequency and/or change the switching pattern in order to ensure the performance of the frequency converter. The capability to reduce the output current automatically extends the acceptable operating conditions even further.

3

### 3.5.5 Derating for Ambient Temperature

Frame model	Normal overload NO, 110% 60 AVM	Normal overload NO, 110% SFAVM
D-Frame N110 to N315 380-500 V		
E & F-Frame P355 to P1M0 380-500 V		

Table 3.16 Derating Tables for Frequency Converters Rated 380–500 V (T5)

Frame model	Normal overload NO, 110% 60 AVM	Normal overload NO, 110% SFAVM
D-Frame N110 to N315 525-690 V		

Frame model	Normal overload NO, 110% 60 AVM	Normal overload NO, 110% SFAVM
<b>D-Frame</b> <b>N400</b> <b>525-690 V</b>		
<b>E &amp; F-Frame</b> <b>P450 to P1M0</b> <b>525-690 V</b>		

3

Table 3.17 Derating Tables for Frequency Converters Rated 525–690 V (T7)



### 3.6.2 Digital Inputs - Terminal X30/1-4

Parameters for set-up: 5-16, 5-17 and 5-18				
Number of digital inputs	Voltage level	Voltage levels	Tolerance	Max. Input impedance
3	0-24V DC	PNP type: Common = 0V Logic "0": Input < 5 V DC Logic "0": Input > 10 V DC NPN type: Common = 24 V Logic "0": Input > 19 V DC Logic "0": Input < 14 V DC	± 28 V continuous ± 37 V in minimum 10 sec.	Approx. 5 kΩ

Table 3.18 Digital Inputs - Terminal X30/1-4

### 3.6.3 Analog Voltage Inputs - Terminal X30/10-12

Parameters for set-up: 6-3*, 6-4* and 16-76				
Number of analog voltage inputs	Standardised input signal	Tolerance	Resolution	Max. Input impedance
2	0-10V DC	± 20 V continuously	10 bits	Approx. 5 KΩ

Table 3.19 Analog Voltage Inputs - Terminal X30/10-12

### 3.6.4 Digital Outputs - Terminal X30/5-7

Parameters for set-up: 5-32 and 5-33			
Number of digital outputs	Output level	Tolerance	Max. impedance
2	0 V or 2 V DC	± 4 V	≥ 600Ω

Table 3.20 Digital Outputs - Terminal X30/5-7

### 3.6.5 Analog Outputs - Terminal X30/5+8

Parameters for set-up: 6-6* and 16-77			
Number of analog outputs	Output signal level	Tolerance	Max. impedance
1	0/4 - 20 mA	± 0.1 mA	< 500Ω

Table 3.21 Analog Outputs - Terminal X30/5+8

### 3.6.6 Relay Option MCB 105

The MCB 105 option includes 3 pieces of SPDT contacts and must be fitted into option slot B.

3

Maximum terminal load (AC-1) <sup>1)</sup> (Resistive load)	240 V AC 2 A
Maximum terminal load (AC-15) <sup>1)</sup> (Inductive load @ cosφ 0.4)	240 V AC 0.2 A
Maximum terminal load (DC-1) <sup>1)</sup> (Resistive load)	24 V DC 1 A
Maximum terminal load (DC-13) <sup>1)</sup> (Inductive load)	24 V DC 0.1 A
Minimum terminal load (DC)	5 V 10 mA
Max switching rate at rated load/min load	6 min <sup>-1</sup> /20 s <sup>-1</sup>

Table 3.22 Electrical Data

<sup>1)</sup> IEC 947 part 4 and 5

When the relay option kit is ordered separately the kit includes:

- Relay Module MCB 105
- Extended LCP frame and enlarged terminal cover
- Label for covering access to switches S201, S202, and S801
- Cable strips for fastening cables to relay module

How to add the MCB 105 option:

- See mounting instructions in the beginning of section *Options and Accessories*
- The power to the live part connections on relay terminals must be disconnected.
- Do not mix live parts with control signals (PELV).
- Select the relay functions in *5-40 Function Relay* [6–8], *5-41 On Delay, Relay* [6–8] and *5-42 Off Delay, Relay* [6–8].

(Index [6] is relay 7, index [7] is relay 8, and index [8] is relay 9)

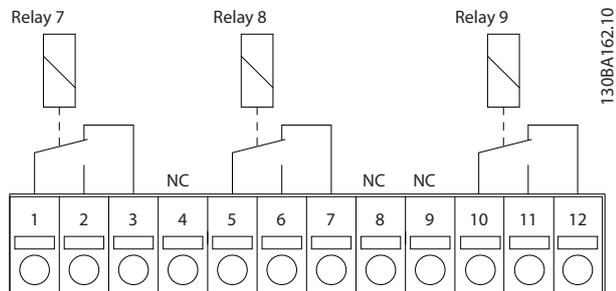


Illustration 3.8 Wiring the Terminals

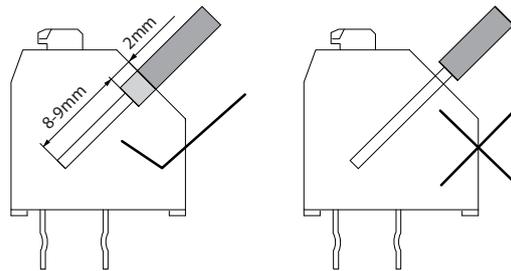


Illustration 3.9 Wiring the Terminals

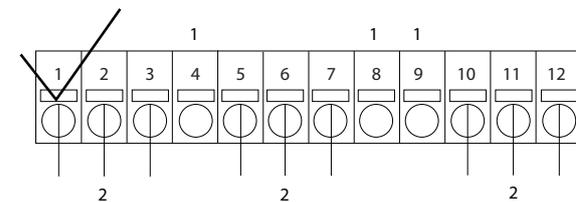
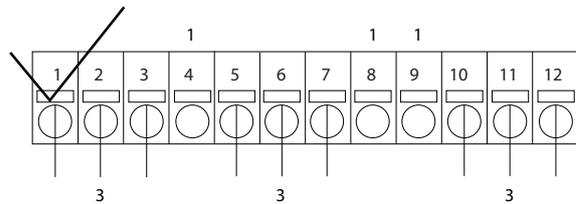
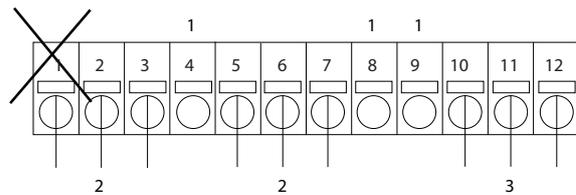


Illustration 3.10 1) NC  
2) Live part  
3) PELV

## WARNING

Do not combine low voltage parts and PELV systems. At a single fault, the whole system can become dangerous to touch and it could result in death or serious injury.

### 3.6.7 24 V Back-Up Option MCB 107 (Option D)

#### External 24 V DC Supply

An external 24 V DC supply can be installed for low-voltage supply to the control card and any option card installed. The external power supply enables full operation of the LCP (including the parameter setting) and fieldbuses without mains supplied to the power section.

Input voltage range	24 V DC ±15% (max. 37 V in 10 s)
Max. input current	2.2 A
Average input current	0.9 A
Max cable length	75 m
Input capacitance load	< 10 uF
Power-up delay	< 0.6 s

**Table 3.23 External 24 V DC Supply Specifications**

The inputs are protected.

Terminal numbers:

Terminal 35: - external 24 V DC supply.

Terminal 36: + external 24 V DC supply.

Follow these steps:

1. Remove the LCP blind cover
2. Remove the terminal cover
3. Remove the cable de-coupling plate and the plastic cover underneath
4. Insert the 24 V DC backup external supply option in the option slot
5. Mount the cable de-coupling plate
6. Attach the terminal cover and the LCP or blind cover.

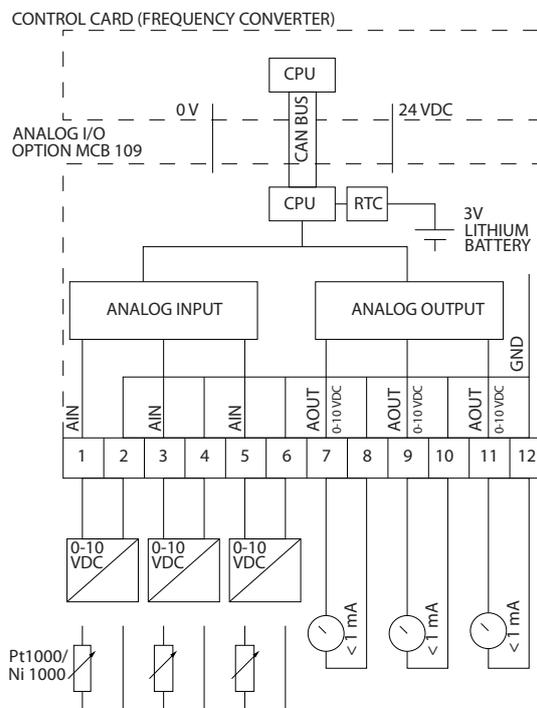
When MCB 107, 24 V backup option is supplying the control circuit, the internal 24 V supply is automatically disconnected.

### 3.6.8 Analog I/O option MCB 109

The Analog I/O card is supposed to be used in the following cases:

- Providing battery back-up of clock function on control card
- As general extension of analog I/O selection available on control card, for example, for multi-zone control with three pressure transmitters
- Turning frequency converter into de-central I/O block supporting Building Management System with inputs for sensors and outputs for operating dampers and valve actuators

- Support Extended PID controllers with I/Os for set point inputs, transmitter/sensor inputs, and outputs for actuators.transmitter/sensor inputs



**Illustration 3.11 Principle Diagram for Analog I/O Mounted in the Frequency Converter**

#### Analog I/O configuration

3 x Analog Inputs, capable of handling following:

- 0 - 10 V DC
- OR
- 0-20 mA (voltage input 0-10 V) by mounting a 510Ω resistor across terminals (see NOTE)
  - 4-20 mA (voltage input 2-10 V) by mounting a 510Ω resistor across terminals (see NOTE)
  - Ni1000 temperature sensor of 1,000 Ω at 0 ° C. Specifications according to DIN43760
  - Pt1000 temperature sensor of 1,000Ω at 0 ° C. Specifications according to IEC 60751

3 x Analog Outputs supplying 0-10 V DC.

## NOTE

Note the values available within the different standard groups of resistors:

E12: Closest standard value is 470 Ω, creating an input of 449.9 Ω and 8.997 V.

E24: Closest standard value is 510 Ω, creating an input of 486.4 Ω and 9.728 V.

E48: Closest standard value is 511 Ω, creating an input of 487.3 Ω and 9.746 V.

E96: Closest standard value is 523 Ω, creating an input of 498.2 Ω and 9.964 V.

### Analog inputs - terminal X42/1-6

Parameter group for read out: 18-3\* *Analog Readouts*. For more information, consult the Programming Guide.

Parameter groups for set-up: 26-0\* *Analog I/O Mode*, 26-1\* *Analog Input X42/1*, 26-2\* *Analog Input X42/3* and 26-3\* *Analog Input X42/5*. For more information, consult the Programming Guide.

3 x Analog inputs	Operating range	Resolution	Accuracy	Sampling	Max load	Impedance
Used as temperature sensor input	-50°C to +150°C	11 bits	-50 °C ±1 °K +150 °C ±2 °K	3 Hz	-	-
Used as voltage input	0 - 10 V DC	10 bits	0.2% of full scale at cal. temperature	2.4 Hz	+/- 20 V continuously	Approximately 5 kΩ

Table 3.24 Analog Inputs

When used for voltage, analog inputs are scalable by parameters for each input.

When used for temperature sensor, analog inputs scaling is preset to necessary signal level for specified temperature span.

When analog inputs are used for temperature sensors, it is possible to read out feedback value in both °C and °F.

When operating with temperature sensors, maximum cable length to connect sensors is 80 m non-screened/non-twisted wires.

### Analog outputs - terminal X42/7-12

Parameter group for read out and write: 18-3\*. For more information, consult the Programming Guide.

Parameter groups for set-up: 26-4\* *Analog Out X42/7*, 26-5\* *Analog Out X42/9* and 26-6\* *Analog Out X42/11*. For more information, consult the Programming Guide.

3 x Analog outputs	Output signal level	Resolution	Linearity	Max load
Volt	0-10V DC	11 bits	1% of full scale	1 mA

Table 3.25 Analog Outputs

Analog outputs are scalable by parameters for each output.

The function assigned is selectable via a parameter and have same options as for analog outputs on control card.

For a more detailed description of parameters, refer to the Programming Guide.

### Real-time clock (RTC) with back-up

The data format of RTC includes year, month, date, hour, minutes, and weekday.

Accuracy of clock is better than ± 20 ppm at 25 °C.

The built-in lithium back-up battery lasts on average for minimum 10 years, when the frequency converter is operating at 40 °C ambient temperature. If battery pack back-up fails, analog I/O option must be exchanged.

Cascade control is a common control system used to control parallel pumps or fans in an energy efficient way.

The cascade controller option provides the capability to control multiple pumps configured in parallel in a way that makes them appear as a single larger pump.

To satisfy the required system output for flow or pressure when using cascade controllers, the individual pumps are automatically turned on (staged) and turned off (de-staged) as needed. The speed of pumps connected to VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202 is also controlled to provide a continuous range of system output.

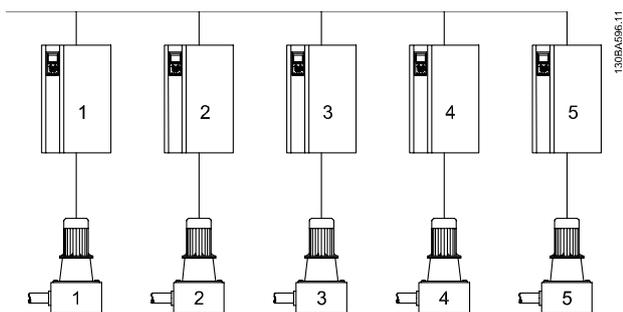


Illustration 3.12 Cascade Control of Multiple Pumps

The cascade controllers are optional hardware and software components that can be added to the VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202. It consists of an option board containing three relays that is installed in the B option location on the drive. Once options are installed, the parameters to support the cascade controller functions are available through the control panel in parameter group 27-\*\* *Extended Cascade Control*. The extended cascade controller offers more functionality than the basic cascade controller. It can be used to extend the basic cascade with three relays and even to eight relays with the advanced cascade control card installed.

While the cascade controller is designed for pumping applications and this document describes the cascade controller for this application, it is also possible to use the cascade controllers for any application requiring multiple motors configured in parallel.

**Master/follower operation**

The cascade controller software runs from a single VLT AQUA Drive with the cascade controller option card installed. This frequency converter is referred to as the master drive. It controls a set of pumps each controlled by a frequency converter or connected directly to mains through a contactor or through a soft starter.

Each additional frequency converter in the system is referred to as a follower drive. These frequency converters do not need the cascade controller option card installed. They are operated in open loop mode and receive their speed reference from the master drive. The pumps connected to these frequency converters are referred to as variable speed pumps.

Each additional pump connected to mains through a contactor or through a soft starter is referred to as a fixed speed pump.

Each pump, variable speed or fixed speed, responds to a relay in the master drive. The frequency converter with the cascade controller option card installed has five relays available for controlling pumps. Two relays are standard in

the frequency converter and an additional 3 relays are found on the option card MCO 101 or 8 relays and 7 digital inputs on option card MCO 102.

The difference between MCO 101 and MCO 102 is mainly the number of optional relays being made available for the frequency converter. When MCO 102 is installed, the relays option card MCB 105 can be mounted in the B-slot.

The cascade controller can control a mix of variable speed and fixed speed pumps. Possible configurations are described in more detail in 3.6.9 *General Description*. For simplicity of description within this manual, pressure and flow are used to describe the variable output of the set of pumps controlled by the cascade controller.

**3.6.9 General Description**

The cascade controller software runs from a single VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202 with the cascade controller option card installed. This frequency converter is referred to as the master drive. It controls a set of pumps each controlled by a frequency converter or connected directly to mains through a contactor or through a soft starter.

Each additional frequency converter in the system is referred to as a follower drive. These frequency converters do not need the cascade controller option card installed. They are operated in open loop mode and receive their speed reference from the master drive. The pumps connected to these frequency converters are referred to as variable speed pumps

Each additional pump connected to mains through a contactor or through a soft starter is referred to as a fixed speed pump.

Each pump, variable speed or fixed speed, responds to a relay in the Master Drive. The frequency converter with the Cascade Controller option card installed has five relays available for controlling pumps. Two relays are standard in the frequency converter and an additional 3 relays are found on the option card MCO 101 or 8 relays and 7 digital inputs on option card MCO 102.

The difference between MCO 101 and MCO 102 is mainly the number of optional relays being made available for the frequency converter. When MCO 102 is installed, the relays option card MCB 105 can be mounted in the B-slot.

The cascade controller can control a mix of variable speed and fixed speed pumps. Possible configurations are described in more detail in the next section. For simplicity of description within this manual, pressure and flow are used to describe the variable output of the set of pumps controlled by the cascade controller.

### 3.6.10 Extended Cascade Controller MCO 101

The MCO 101 option includes 3 pieces of change-over contacts and can be fitted into option slot B.

Maximum terminal load (AC)	240 V AC 2 A
Maximum terminal load (DC)	24 V DC 1 A
Minimum terminal load (DC)	5 V 10 mA
Maximum switching rate at rated load/min load	6 min <sup>-1</sup> /20 s <sup>-1</sup>

Table 3.26 Electrical Data



Warning Dual supply

#### NOTE

Place the label on the LCP frame as shown (UL approved).

How to add the MCO 101 option:

- The power to the frequency converter must be disconnected.
- The power to the live part connections on relay terminals must be disconnected.
- Remove the LCP, the terminal cover, and the cradle from the FC 202.
- Fit the MCO 101 option in slot B.
- Connect the control cables and relief the cables by the enclosed cable strips.
- Various systems must not be mixed.
- Fit the extended cradle and terminal cover.
- Replace the LCP
- Connect power to the frequency converter.

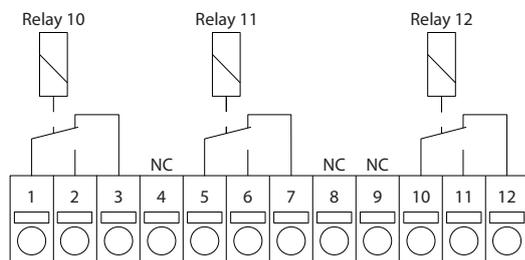


Illustration 3.13 Wiring the Terminals

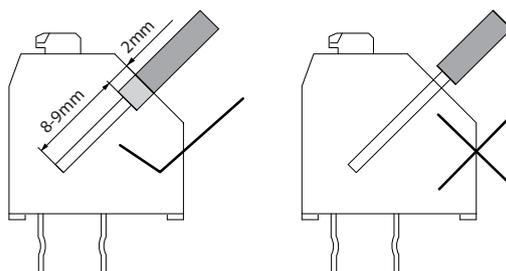


Illustration 3.14 Wiring the Terminals

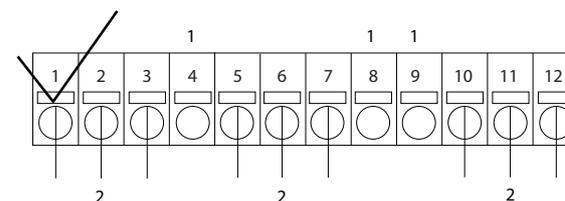
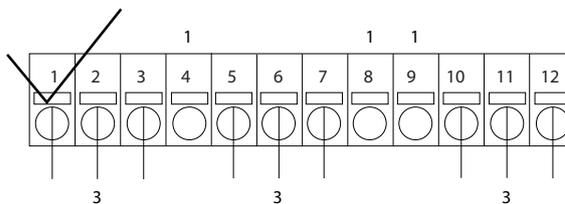
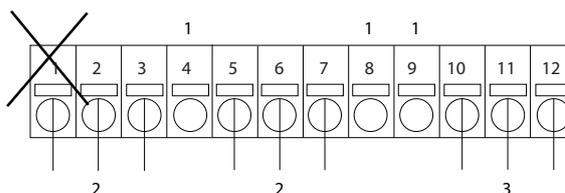


Illustration 3.15 Terminals

1	NC
2	Live part
3	PELV

Table 3.27 Legend to Illustration 3.15



Do not combine low voltage parts and PELV systems.

### 3.6.11 Brake Resistors

In applications where the motor is used as a brake, energy is generated in the motor and send back into the frequency converter. If the energy cannot be transported back to the motor, it increases the voltage in the converter DC-line. In applications with frequent braking and/or high inertia loads, this increase leads to an over voltage trip in the converter and finally a shutdown. Brake resistors are used to dissipate the excess energy resulting from the regenerative braking. The resistor is selected in respect to its ohmic value, its power dissipation rate, and its physical

size. Danfoss offers a wide variety of different resistors that are specially designed to our frequency converters. See 2.13 *Control with Brake Function* for the dimensioning of brake resistors. Code numbers can be found in 4 *How to Order*.

### 3.6.12 Remote Mounting Kit for LCP

The LCP can be moved to the front of a cabinet by using the remote built-in kit. The enclosure is IP66. The fastening screws must be tightened with a torque of max. 1 Nm.

Enclosure	IP66 front
Max. cable length between and unit	3 m
Communication std	RS-485

Table 3.28 Technical Data

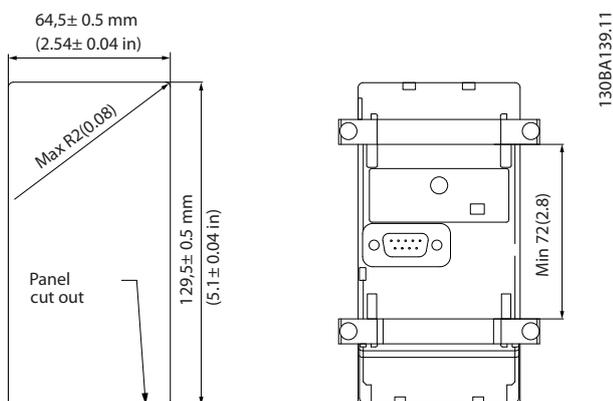


Illustration 3.16

#### LCP Kits

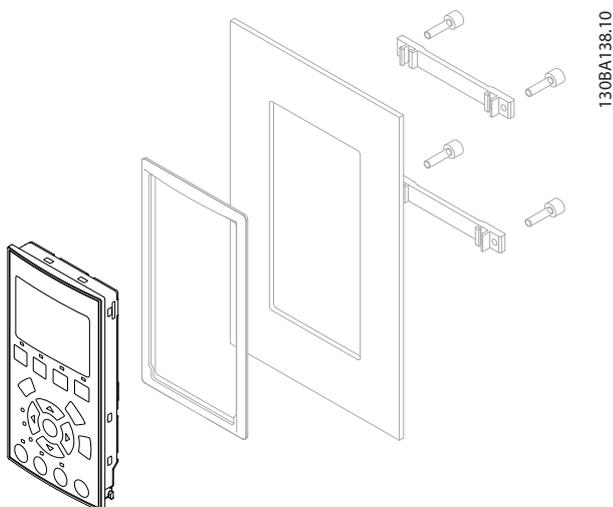


Illustration 3.17 LCP Kit with Graphical LCP, Fasteners, 3 m Cable, and Gasket.

Ordering No. 130B1113

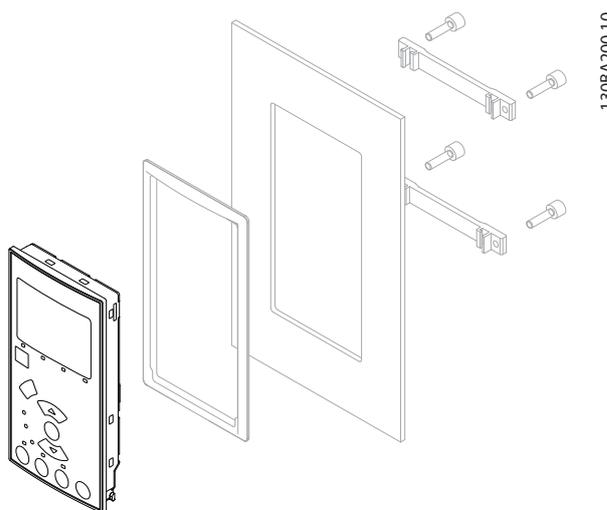


Illustration 3.18 LCP Kit with Numerical LCP, Fasteners, and Gasket.

Ordering No. 130B1114

### 3.6.13 Input Filters

The 6-pulse diode rectifier causes the harmonic current distortion. The harmonic currents affect the installed serial equipment identical to reactive currents. Consequently, harmonic current distortion can result in overheating of the supply transformer, cables and so on. Depending on the impedance of the power grid, harmonic current distortion can lead to voltage distortion also affecting other equipment powered by the same transformer. Voltage distortion is increasing losses, causes premature aging and worst of all erratic operation. The built-in DC coil reduces most harmonics, but if more reduction is needed, Danfoss offers two types of passive filters.

The Danfoss AHF 005 and AHF 010 are advanced harmonic filters, not to be compared with traditional harmonic trap filters. The Danfoss harmonic filters have been specially designed to match the Danfoss frequency converters.

AHF 010 is reducing the harmonic currents to less than 10% and the AHF 005 is reducing harmonic currents to less than 5% at 2% background distortion and 2% imbalance.

### 3.6.14 Output Filters

The high-speed switching of the frequency converter produces some secondary effects, which influence the motor and the enclosed environment. Two different filter types, the dU/dt and the Sine-wave filters, are in place to address these side effects.

**dU/dt filters**

The combination of rapid voltage and current increase cause motor insulation stresses. The rapid energy changes can also be reflected back to the DC-line in the inverter and cause shut down. The dU/dt filter is designed to reduce the voltage rise time/the rapid energy change in the motor and by that intervention avoid premature aging and flashover in the motor insulation. dU/dt filters have a positive influence on the radiation of magnetic noise in the cable that connects the frequency converter to the motor. The voltage wave form is still pulse shaped, but the dU/dt ratio is reduced in comparison with the installation without filter.

**Sine-wave filters**

Sine-wave filters are designed to let only low frequencies pass. High frequencies are shunted away which results in a sinusoidal phase to phase voltage waveform and sinusoidal current waveforms.

With the sinusoidal waveforms, the use of special frequency converter motors with reinforced insulation is no longer needed. The acoustic noise from the motor is also damped as a consequence of the wave condition.

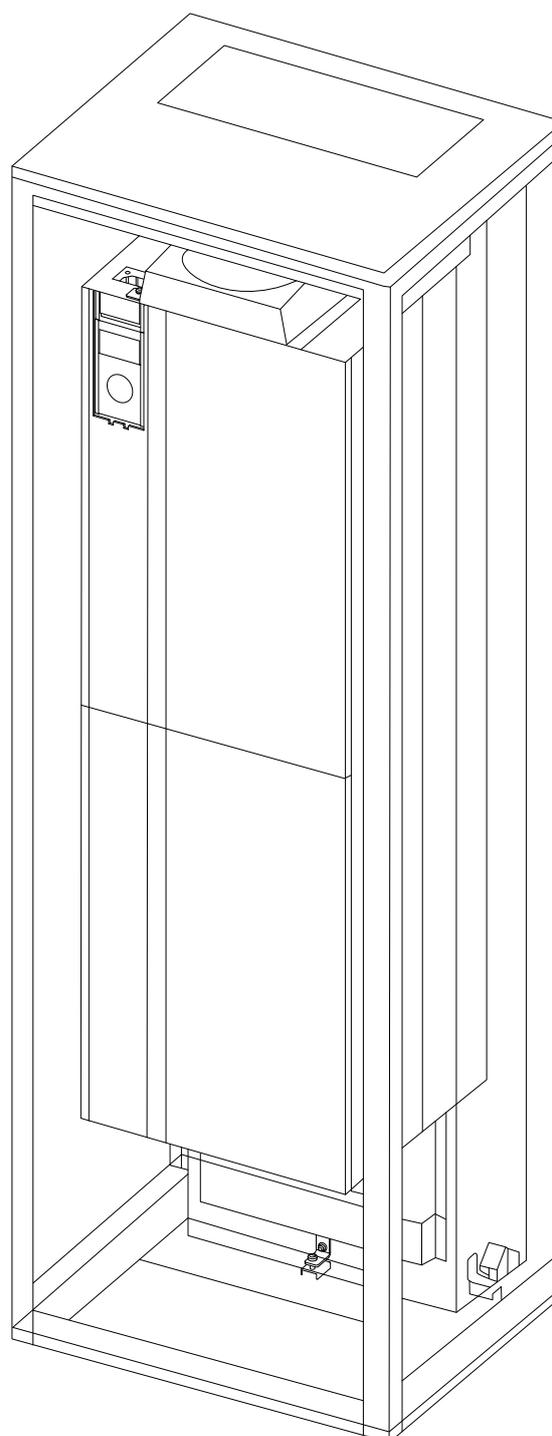
Besides the features of the dU/dt filter, the sine-wave filter also reduces insulation stress and bearing currents in the motor thus leading to prolonged motor lifetime and longer periods between services. Sine-wave filters enable use of longer motor cables in applications where the motor is installed far from the frequency converter. The length is unfortunately limited because the filter does not reduce leakage currents in the cables.

**3.7 High Power Options****CAUTION**

A door fan is required on the enclosure to remove the heat losses not contained in the back channel of the frequency converter and any additional losses generated from other components installed inside the enclosure. The total required air flow must be calculated so that the appropriate fans can be selected. Some enclosure manufacturers offer software for performing the calculations (that is, Rittal Therm software). If the frequency converter is the only heat generating component in the enclosure, the minimum airflow required at an ambient temperature of 45°C for the D3h and D4h frequency converter is 391 m<sup>3</sup>/h (230 cfm). The minimum airflow required at an ambient temperature of 45°C for the E2 frequency converter is 782 m<sup>3</sup>/h (460 cfm).

**3.7.1 Installation of Back Channel Cooling Kit in Rittal Enclosures**

This section describes the installation of IP00/IP20/chassis frequency converters with back channel cooling kits in Rittal enclosures. In addition to the enclosure, a floor mounting pedestal is required.



176FA252.10

Illustration 3.19 Installation of IP00/IP20/Chassis in Rittal TS8 Enclosure.

**The minimum enclosure dimension is:**

- D3h frame: Depth 500 mm and width 400 mm
- D4h frame: Depth 500 mm and width 600 mm.
- E2 frame: Depth 600 mm and width 800 mm.

The maximum depth and width must comply with the installation requirements. When using multiple frequency converters in one enclosure, mount each on its own back panel and support each along the mid-section of the panel. The back channel cooling kits do not support the “in frame” mounting of the panel (see Rittal TS8 catalogue

for details). The cooling kits listed in *Table 3.29* are suitable for use only with IP00/IP20 chassis frequency converters in Rittal TS8 IP 20 and UL and NEMA 1 and IP 54 and UL and NEMA 12 enclosures.

**CAUTION**

For the E2 frames, it is important to mount the plate at the absolute rear of the Rittal enclosure due to the weight of the frequency converter.

3

Rittal TS-8 Enclosure	Frame D3h Kit Part No.	Frame D4hKit Part No.	Frame E2 Part No.
1,800 mm	176F3625	176F3628	Not possible
2,000 mm	176F3629	176F3630	176F1850
2,200 mm			176F0299

**Table 3.29 Ordering Information**

See the *Duct Kit Instruction Manual, 175R5640*, for further information regarding the E-frame kit.

**External ducts**

If more duct work is added externally to the Rittal cabinet the pressure drop in the ducting must be calculated. See *5.2.7 Cooling and Airflow* for further information.

### 3.7.2 Outside Installation/NEMA 3R Kit for Rittal Enclosures

3

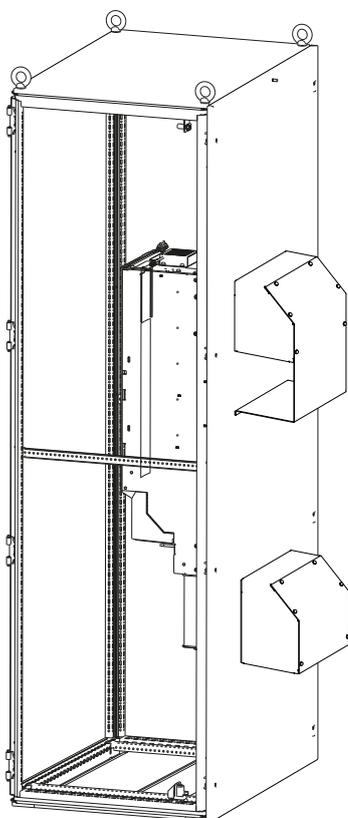


Illustration 3.20 Cutaway Side View of Cabinet

This section is for the installation of NEMA 3R kits available for the frequency converter frames D3h, D4h and E2. These kits are designed and tested to be used with IP00/IP20/ Chassis versions of these frames in Rittal TS8 NEMA 3R or NEMA 4 enclosures. The NEMA-3R enclosure is an outdoor enclosure that provides a degree of protection against rain and ice. The NEMA-4 enclosure is an outdoor enclosure that provides a greater degree of protection against weather and hosed water.

The minimum enclosure depth is 500 mm (600 mm for E2 frame) and the kit is designed for a 600 mm (800 mm for E2 frame) wide enclosure. Other enclosure widths are possible, however more Rittal hardware is required. Consult the installation requirements for the maximum depth and width.

#### NOTE

The current rating of frequency converters in D3h and D4h frames are de-rated by 3%, when adding the NEMA 3R kit. Frequency converters in E2 frames require no derating.

Frame Size	Part Number	Instruction Number
D3h	176F3633	177R0460
D4h	176F3634	177R0461
E2	176F1852	176R5922

Table 3.30 NEMA-3R Kit Ordering Information

### 3.7.3 Installation on Pedestal

This section describes the installation of a pedestal unit available for the frequency converters frames D1h, D2h, D5h, and D6h. The pedestal allows these frequency converters to be floor mounted. The front of the pedestal has openings for input air to the power components.

The frequency converter gland plate must be installed to provide adequate cooling air to the control components of the frequency converter and to maintain the IP21 (NEMA 1) or IP54 (NEMA 12) enclosure ratings.

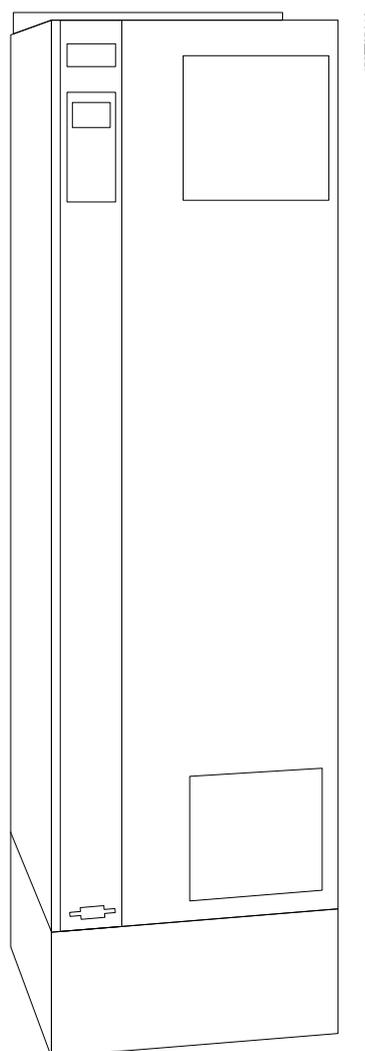
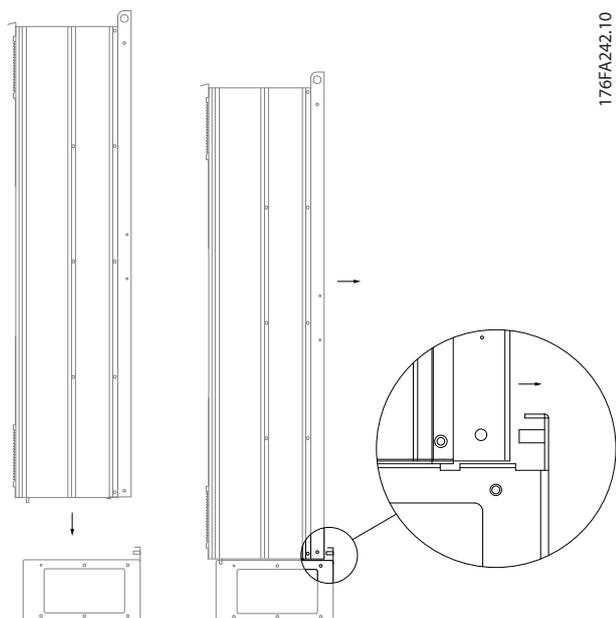


Illustration 3.21 Frequency Converter Mounted on a Pedestal

The ordering numbers and heights for the pedestals are shown in *Table 3.31*

Frame Size	Part Number	Instruction Number	Height [mm]
D1h	176F3631	177R0452	400
D2h	176F3632	177R0453	400
D5h/D6h	176F3452	177R0500	200
D7h/D8h	Included with unit	Included with unit	200
E1	Included with unit	Included with unit	200

**Table 3.31 Pedestal Ordering Information**



**Illustration 3.22 Mounting of the Frequency Converter to the Pedestal**

### 3.7.4 Installation of Input Plate Options

This section is for the field installation of input option kits for E-frame frequency converters. Do not attempt to remove RFI filters from input plates. Removal of RFI filters from the input plates can cause damage.

3

#### NOTE

Where RFI filters are available, there are two different types of RFI filters depending on the input plate combination and the RFI filters interchangeable. Field installable kits in certain cases are the same for all voltages.

	380-480 V [kW] 380-500 V [kW]	Fuses	Disconnect Fuses	RFI	RFI Fuses	RFI Disconnect Fuses
E1	FC102/FC202: 315 FC302: 250	176F0253	176F0255	176F0257	176F0258	176F0260
	FC102/FC202: 355-450 FC302: 315-400	176F0254	176F0256	176F0257	176F0259	176F0262

Table 3.32 Input Options

	525-690 V [kW]	Fuses	Disconnect Fuses	RFI	RFI Fuses	RFI Disconnect Fuses
E1	FC102/FC202: 450-500 FC302: 355-400	176F0253	176F0255	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	Not Applicable
	FC102/FC202: 560-630 FC302: 500-560	176F0254	176F0258	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	Not Applicable

Table 3.33 Input Options

#### NOTE

For further information, see the Instruction Sheet, 175R5795

### 3.7.5 Installation of Mains Shield for Frequency Converters

This section is for the installation of a mains shield for the frequency converter. It is not possible to install in the IP00/Chassis versions as these enclosures include a standard a metal cover. These shields satisfy VBG-4 requirements.

#### Ordering numbers:

Frame E1: 176F1851

#### NOTE

For further information, see the Instruction Sheet, 175R5923

### 3.7.6 D-frame Options

#### 3.7.6.1 Load Share Terminals

Load share terminals enable the connection of the DC circuits of several frequency converters. Load share terminals are available in IP20 frequency converters and extend out the top of the frequency converter. A terminal cover, supplied with the frequency converter, must be

installed to maintain the IP20 rating of the enclosure. *Illustration 3.23* shows both the covered and uncovered terminals.

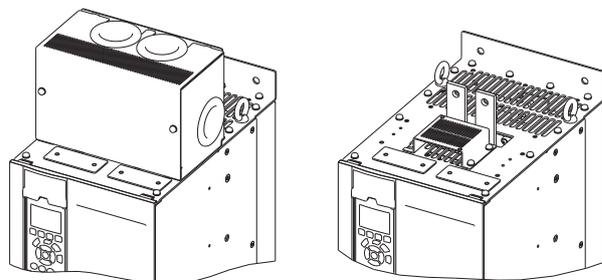


Illustration 3.23 Load Share or Regeneration Terminal with Cover (L) and without Cover (R)

#### 3.7.6.2 Regeneration Terminals

Regen (regeneration) terminals can be supplied for applications that have a regenerative load. A regenerative unit, supplied by a third party, connects to the regen terminals so that power can be regenerated back onto the mains, resulting in energy savings. Regen terminals are available in IP20 frequency converters and extend out the top of the frequency converter. A terminal cover, supplied with the frequency converter, must be installed to maintain the IP20 rating of the enclosure. *Illustration 3.23* shows both the covered and uncovered terminals.

### 3.7.6.3 Anti-Condensation Heater

An anti-condensation heater can be installed inside the frequency converter to prevent condensation from forming inside the enclosure when the unit is turned off. Customer-supplied 230 V AC controls the heater. For best results, operate the heater only when the unit is not running and turn off the heater when the unit is running.

A 2.5 amp time-delay fuse, such as the Bussmann LPJ-21/2SP, is recommended to protect the heater.

### 3.7.6.4 Brake Chopper

A brake chopper can be supplied for applications that have a regenerative load. The brake chopper connects to a brake resistor, which consumes the braking energy, preventing an overvoltage fault on the DC bus. The braking chopper is automatically activated when the DC bus voltage exceeds a specified level, depending on the nominal voltage of the frequency converter.

### 3.7.6.5 Mains Shield

The mains shield is a Lexan cover installed inside the enclosure to provide protection according to VBG-4 accident-prevention requirements.

### 3.7.6.6 Ruggedized Printed Circuit Boards

Ruggedized boards are available for marine and other applications that experience higher than average vibration.

#### NOTE

**Ruggedized boards are required for the D-Frame frequency converters to meet marine approval requirements.**

### 3.7.6.7 Heat Sink Access Panel

An optional heat sink access panel is available to facilitate cleaning of the heat sink. Debris buildup is typical in environments prone to airborne contaminants, such as the textile industry.

### 3.7.6.8 Mains Disconnect

The disconnect option is available in both varieties of option cabinets. The position of the disconnect changes based on the size of the options cabinet and whether other options are present. *Table 3.34* provides more detail about which disconnects are used.

Voltage	Frequency converter model	Disconnect manufacturer and type
380–500 V	N110T5–N160T4	ABB OT400U03
	N200T5–N315T4	ABB OT600U03
525–690 V	N75KT7–N160T7	ABB OT400U03
	N200T7–N400T7	ABB OT600U03

Table 3.34 Mains Disconnect Information

### 3.7.6.9 Contactor

A customer-supplied 230 V AC 50/60 Hz signal powers the contactor.

Voltage	Frequency converter model	Contactor manufacturer and type	IEC utilisation category
380–500 V	N110T5–N160T4	GE CK95BE311N	AC-3
	N200T5–N250T4	GE CK11CE311N	AC-3
	N315T4	GE CK11CE311N	AC-1
525–690 V	N75KT7–N160T7	GE CK95BE311N	AC-3
	N200T7–N400T7	GE CK11CE311N	AC-3

Table 3.35 Contactor Information

#### NOTE

**In applications requiring UL listing, when the frequency converter is supplied with a contactor, the customer must provide external fusing to maintain the UL rating of the frequency converter and a short circuit current rating of 100,000 A. See 5.3.8 Fuse Specifications for fuse recommendations.**

### 3.7.6.10 Circuit Breaker

*Table 3.36* provides details on the type of circuit breaker provided as an option with the various units and power ranges.

Voltage	Frequency converter model	Circuit breaker manufacturer and type
380–500 V	N110T5–N132T5	ABB T5L400TW
	N160T5	ABB T5LQ400TW
	N200T5	ABB T6L600TW
	N250T5	ABB T6LQ600TW
	N315T5	ABB T6LQ800TW
525–690 V	N75KT7–N160T7	ABB T5L400TW
	N200T7–N315T7	ABB T6L600TW
	N400T7	ABB T6LQ600TW

Table 3.36 Circuit Breaker Information

## 3.7.7 Frame Size F Options

#### Space Heaters and Thermostat

Mounted on the cabinet interior of frame size F frequency converters, space heaters controlled via automatic thermostat help control humidity inside the enclosure,

extending the lifetime of components in damp environments. The thermostat default settings turn on the heaters at 10 °C (50 °F) and turn them off at 15.6 °C (60 °F).

**Cabinet Light with Power Outlet**

A light mounted on the cabinet interior of frame size F frequency converters increases visibility during servicing and maintenance. The housing includes a power outlet for temporarily powering tools or other devices, available in two voltages:

- 230 V, 50 Hz, 2.5A, CE/ENEC
- 120 V, 60 Hz, 5A, UL/cUL

**Transformer Tap Setup**

If the cabinet light & outlet and/or the space heaters & thermostat are installed, Transformer T1 requires that taps be set to the proper input voltage. A 380-480/500 V frequency converter is initially set to the 525 V tap and a 525-690 V frequency converter is set to the 690 V tap to ensure no over-voltage of secondary equipment occurs if the tap is not changed before power is applied. See *Table 3.37* to set the proper tap on TB3 located in the rectifier cabinet. For location in the frequency converter, see *5.4.2 Power Connections*.

Input voltage range [V]	Tap to select [V]
380-440	400
441-490	460
491-550	525
551-625	575
626-660	660
661-690	690

**Table 3.37 Transformer Tap**

**NAMUR Terminals**

NAMUR is an international association of automation technology users in the process industries, primarily chemical and pharmaceutical industries in Germany. Selection of this option provides terminals organised and labelled to the specifications of the NAMUR standard for drive input and output terminals, which requires MCB 112 PTC thermistor card and MCB 113 extended relay card.

**RCD (Residual Current Device)**

Uses the core balance method to monitor ground fault currents in grounded and high-resistance grounded systems (TN and TT systems in IEC terminology). There is a pre-warning (50% of main alarm set-point) and a main alarm set-point. Associated with each set-point is an SPDT alarm relay for external use. The RCD requires an external "window-type" current transformer (supplied and installed by the customer).

- Integrated into the safe-stop circuit of the frequency converter
- IEC 60755 Type B device monitors AC, pulsed DC, and pure DC ground fault currents

- LED bar graph indicator of the ground fault current level from 10-100% of the set-point
- Fault memory
- [Test/Reset] key

**Insulation Resistance Monitor (IRM)**

Monitors the insulation resistance in ungrounded systems (IT systems in IEC terminology) between the system phase conductors and ground. There is an ohmic pre-warning and a main alarm set-point for the insulation level. Associated with each set-point is an SPDT alarm relay for external use.

**NOTE**

**Only one insulation resistance monitor can be connected to each ungrounded (IT) system.**

- Integrated into the safe-stop circuit of the frequency converter
- LCD display of the ohmic value of the insulation resistance
- Fault Memory
- [Info], [Test] and [Reset] keys

**IEC Emergency Stop with Pilz Safety Relay**

Includes a redundant 4-wire emergency-stop push button mounted on the front of the enclosure and a Pilz relay that monitors it with the safe-stop circuit and the mains contactor located in the options cabinet.

**Safe Stop + Pilz Relay**

Provides a solution for the "Emergency Stop" option without the contactor in F-Frame frequency converters.

**Manual Motor Starters**

Provides 3-phase power for electric blowers often required for larger motors. Power for the starters is provided from the load side of any supplied contactor, circuit breaker, or disconnect switch. Power is fused before each motor starter, and is off when the incoming power to the frequency converter is off. Up to two starters are allowed (one if a 30 A, fuse-protected circuit is ordered) and are integrated into the safe-stop circuit.

Unit features include:

- Operation switch (on/off)
- Short-circuit and overload protection with test function
- Manual reset function

**30 A, Fuse-Protected Terminals**

- 3-phase power matching incoming mains voltage for powering auxiliary customer equipment
- Not available if two manual motor starters are selected
- Terminals are off when the incoming power to the frequency converter is off

- Power for the fused protected terminals is provided from the load side of any supplied contactor, circuit breaker, or disconnect switch.

#### 24 V DC Power Supply

- 5 A, 120 W, 24 V DC
- Protected against output over-current, overload, short circuits, and over-temperature
- For powering customer-supplied accessory devices such as sensors, PLC I/O, contactors, temperature probes, indicator lights, and/or other electronic hardware
- Diagnostics include a dry DC-ok contact, a green DC-ok LED, and a red overload LED

#### External Temperature Monitoring

Designed for monitoring temperatures of external system components, such as the motor windings and/or bearings. Includes five universal input modules. The modules are integrated into the safe-stop circuit (requires purchase of safe-stop) and can be monitored via a fieldbus network (requires the purchase of a separate module/bus coupler).

#### Universal inputs (5)

Signal types:

- RTD inputs (including PT100), 3-wire or 4-wire
- Thermocouple
- Analog current or analog voltage

Additional features:

- One universal output, configurable for analog voltage or analog current
- Two output relays (N.O.)
- Dual-line LC display and LED diagnostics
- Sensor lead wire break, short-circuit, and incorrect polarity detection
- Interface setup software

## 4 How to Order

### 4.1 Ordering Form

#### 4.1.1 Drive Configurator

# 4

It is possible to design a VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202 frequency converter according to the application requirements by using the ordering number system.

To order standard frequency converters and frequency converters with integral options, send a type code string describing the product to the Danfoss sales office. An example type code:

```
FC-202N132T4E21H2XGCXXXSXXXAXBKCXXXDX
```

The meaning of the characters in the string can be located in the pages containing the ordering numbers in *4.1 Ordering Form*. In the example above, a Profibus LON works option and a General purpose I/O option is included in the frequency converter.

Ordering numbers for VLT AQUA Drive standard variants can also be located in the chapter *4.2 Ordering Numbers*.

Use the web-based Drive Configurator, to configure the right frequency converter for the right application and generate the type code string. The Drive Configurator automatically generates an eight-digit sales number for the local sales office. Furthermore, it's possible to establish a project list with several products and send it to a Danfoss sales representative.

The Drive Configurator can be found on the global internet site: [www.danfoss.com/drives](http://www.danfoss.com/drives).

### NOTE

Type code information includes frame sizes A, B and C. For detailed information on these products, reference the relevant design guide.

### 4.1.2 Type Code String

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39  
 F C - 2 0 2 | | | | T | | | | H | | | | X X S X X X X X A | B | C | | | | D |

130BC529.10

Illustration 4.1 Type Code

Description	Position	Possible Choice
Product Group	1–3	FC
Drive Series	4–6	202
Generation Code	7	N
Power Rating	8–10	75–400 kW
Mains Voltage	11–12	T4: 380–480 V AC T7: 525–690 V AC
Enclosure	13–15	E20: IP20 (chassis - for installation in external enclosure) E21: IP21 (NEMA 1) E54: IP54 (NEMA 12) E2M: IP21 (NEMA 1) with mains shield E5M: IP54 (NEMA 12) with mains shield C20: IP20 (chassis - for installation in external enclosure) + stainless steel back channel H21: IP21 (NEMA 1) + heater H54: IP54 (NEMA 12) + heater
RFI filter	16–17	H2: RFI filter, class A2 (standard) H4: RFI filter class A1 <sup>1)</sup>
Brake	18	X: No brake IGBT B: Brake IGBT mounted T: Safe stop U: Brake chopper + safe stop R: Regeneration terminals S: Brake + regeneration (IP 20 only)
Display	19	G: Graphical local control panel N: Numerical local control panel X: No local control panel
Coating PCB	20	C: Coated PCB R: Ruggedized PCB
Mains Option	21	X: No mains option 3: Mains disconnect and fuse 4: Mains contactor + fuses 7: Fuse A: Fuse and load sharing (IP20 only) D: Load share terminals (IP20 only) E: Mains disconnect + contactor + fuses J: Circuit breaker + fuses
Adaptation	22	X: Standard cable entries Q: Heatsink access panel
Adaptation	23	X: No adaptation
Software release	24–27	Actual software
Software language	28	
The various options are described further in this Design Guide.		
1): Available for all D frames.		

Table 4.1 Ordering Type Code for D-frame Frequency Converters

Description	Pos	Possible choice
Product group	1-3	FC
Drive series	4-6	202
Power rating	8-10	450-630 kW
Phases	11	Three phases (T)
Mains voltage	11- 12	T 4: 380-500 VAC T 7: 525-690 VAC
Enclosure	13- 15	E00: IP00/Chassis - for installation in external enclosure C00: IP00/Chassis (for installation in external enclosure) w/ stainless steel back channel E21: IP 21/NEMA Type 1 E54: IP 54/NEMA Type 12 E2M: IP 21/NEMA Type 1 with mains shield E5M: IP 54/NEMA Type 12 with mains shield
RFI filter	16- 17	H2: RFI filter, class A2 (standard) H4: RFI filter class A1 <sup>1)</sup>
Brake	18	B: Brake IGBT mounted X: No brake IGBT R: Regeneration terminals
Display	19	G: Graphical Local Control Panel LCP N: Numerical Local Control Panel (LCP) X: No Local Control Panel (D frames IP00 and IP 21 only)
Coating PCB	20	C: Coated PCB
Mains option	21	X: No mains option 3: Mains disconnect and Fuse 5: Mains disconnect, Fuse, and Load sharing 7: Fuse A: Fuse and Load sharing D: Load sharing
Adaptation	22	Reserved
Adaptation	23	Reserved
Software release	24- 27	Actual software
Software language	28	
A options	29-30	AX: No options A0: MCA 101 Profibus DP V1 A4: MCA 104 DeviceNet AN: MCA 121 Ethernet IP
B options	31-32	BX: No option BK: MCB 101 General purpose I/O option BP: MCB 105 Relay option BO: MCB 109 Analogue I/O option BY: MCO 101 Extended Cascade Control
C <sub>0</sub> options	33-34	CX: No options
C <sub>1</sub> options	35	X: No options 5: MCO 102 Advanced Cascade Control
C option software	36-37	XX: Standard software
D options	38-39	DX: No option D0: DC backup
The various options are described further in this Design Guide.		
1): Available for all E frames 380-480/500 VAC only		
2) Consult factory for applications requiring maritime certification		

**Table 4.2 Ordering Type Code for E-Frame Frequency Converters**

Description	Pos	Possible choice
Product group	1-3	FC
Drive series	4-6	202
Power rating	8-10	500-1200 kW
Mains voltage	11- 12	T 4: 380-480 V AC T 7: 525-690 V AC
Enclosure	13- 15	E21: IP 21/NEMA Type 1 E54: IP 54/NEMA Type 12 L2X: IP21/NEMA 1 with cabinet light & IEC 230 V power outlet L5X: IP54/NEMA 12 with cabinet light & IEC 230 V power outlet L2A: IP21/NEMA 1 with cabinet light & NAM 115 V power outlet L5A: IP54/NEMA 12 with cabinet light & NAM 115 V power outlet H21: IP21 with space heater and thermostat H54: IP54 with space heater and thermostat R2X: IP21/NEMA1 with space heater, thermostat, light & IEC 230 V outlet R5X: IP54/NEMA12 with space heater, thermostat, light & IEC 230 V outlet R2A: IP21/NEMA1 with space heater, thermostat, light, & NAM 115 V outlet R5A: IP54/NEMA12 with space heater, thermostat, light, & NAM 115 V outlet
RFI filter	16- 17	B2: 12-pulse with class A2 RFI BE: 12-pulse with RCD/A2 RFI BH: 12-pulse with IRM/A1 RFI BG: 12-pulse with IRM/A2 RFI B4: 12-pulse with class A1 RFI BF: 12-pulse with RCD/A1 RFI BH: 12-pulse with IRM/A1 RFI H2: RFI filter, class A2 (standard) H4: RFI filter, class A1 <sup>2, 3)</sup> HE: RCD with Class A2 RFI filter <sup>2)</sup> HF: RCD with class A1 RFI filter <sup>2, 3)</sup> HG: IRM with Class A2 RFI filter <sup>2)</sup> HH: IRM with class A1 RFI filter <sup>2, 3)</sup> HJ: NAMUR terminals and class A2 RFI filter <sup>1)</sup> HK: NAMUR terminals with class A1 RFI filter <sup>1, 2, 3)</sup> HL: RCD with NAMUR terminals and class A2 RFI filter <sup>1, 2)</sup> HM: RCD with NAMUR terminals and class A1 RFI filter <sup>1, 2, 3)</sup> HN: IRM with NAMUR terminals and class A2 RFI filter <sup>1, 2)</sup> HP: IRM with NAMUR terminals and class A1 RFI filter <sup>1, 2, 3)</sup>
Brake	18	B: Brake IGBT-mounted C: Safe stop with Pilz safety relay D: Safe stop with Pilz safety relay and brake IGBT E: Safe stop with Pilz safety relay and regeneration terminals X: No brake IGBT R: Regeneration terminals M: IEC Emergency stop push-button (with Pilz safety relay) <sup>4)</sup> N: IEC Emergency stop push button with brake IGBT and brake terminals <sup>4)</sup> P: IEC Emergency stop push button with regeneration terminals <sup>4)</sup>
Display	19	G: Graphical Local Control Panel LCP
Coating PCB	20	C: Coated PCB

Mains option	21	X: No mains option 7: Fuse 3 <sup>2)</sup> : Mains disconnect and fuse 5 <sup>2)</sup> : Mains disconnect, fuse, and load sharing A: Fuse and Load sharing D: Load sharing E: Mains disconnect, contactor & fuses <sup>2)</sup> F: Mains circuit breaker, contactor & fuses <sup>2)</sup> G: Mains disconnect, contactor, loadsharing terminals & fuses <sup>2)</sup> H: Mains circuit breaker, contactor, loadsharing terminals & fuses <sup>2)</sup> J: Mains circuit breaker & fuses <sup>2)</sup> K: Mains circuit breaker, loadsharing terminals & fuses <sup>2)</sup>
A options	29–30	AX: No options A0: MCA 101 Profibus DP V1 A4: MCA 104 DeviceNet AN: MCA 121 Ethernet IP
B options	31–32	BX: No option BK: MCB 101 General purpose I/O option BP: MCB 105 Relay option BO: MCB 109 Analogue I/O option BY: MCO 101 Extended Cascade Control
C <sub>0</sub> options	33–34	CX: No options
C <sub>1</sub> options	35	X: No options 5: MCO 102 Advanced Cascade Control
C option software	36–37	XX: Standard software
D options	38–39	DX: No option D0: DC backup
The various options are described further in this Design Guide.		

**Table 4.3 Ordering Type Code for F-Frame Frequency Converters**

## 4.2 Ordering Numbers

### 4.2.1 Ordering Numbers: Options and Accessories

Type	Description	Ordering no.	
<b>Miscellaneous hardware</b>			
Profibus D-Sub 9	Connector kit for IP20	130B1112	
MCF 103	USB Cable 350 mm, IP55/66	130B1155	
MCF 103	USB Cable 650 mm, IP55/66	130B1156	
Terminal blocks	Screw terminal blocks for replacing spring loaded terminals 1 pc 10 pin 1 pc 6 pin and 1 pc 3 pin connectors	130B1116	
<b>LCP</b>			
LCP 101	Numerical Local Control Panel (NLCP)	130B1124	
LCP 102	Graphical Local Control Panel (GLCP)	130B1107	
LCP cable	Separate LCP cable, 3 m	175Z0929	
LCP kit	Panel mounting kit including graphical LCP, fasteners, 3 m cable and gasket	130B1113	
LCP kit	Panel mounting kit including numerical LCP, fasteners and gasket	130B1114	
LCP kit	Panel mounting kit for all LCPs including fasteners, 3 m cable and gasket	130B1117	
LCP kit	Panel mounting kit for all LCPs including fasteners and gasket - without cable	130B1170	
LCP kit	Panel mounting kit for all LCPs including fasteners, 8 m cable, glands and gasket for IP55/66 enclosures	130B1129	
<b>Options for Slot A Uncoated/Coated</b>		<b>Uncoated</b>	<b>Coated</b>
MCA 101	Profibus option DP V0/V1	130B1100	130B1200
MCA 104	DeviceNet option	130B1102	130B1202
MCA 108	LON works	130B1106	130B1206
<b>Options for Slot B</b>			
MCB 101	General purpose Input Output option	130B1125	130B1212
MCB 105	Relay option	130B1110	130B1210
MCB 109	Analog I/O option	130B1143	130B1243
MCB 114	PT 100 / PT 1000 sensor input	130B1172	10B1272
MCO 101	Extended Cascade Control	130B1118	130B1218
<b>Option for Slot C</b>			
MCO 102	Advanced Cascade Control	130B1154	130B1254
<b>Option for Slot D</b>			
MCB 107	24 V DC back-up	130B1108	130B1208

Table 4.4 Ordering Numbers: Options and Accessories

Type	Description	Ordering no.	
<b>External Options</b>			
Ethernet IP	Ethernet	130B1119	130B1219
<b>Spare Parts</b>			
Control board VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202	With Safe Stop Function		130B1167
Control board VLT® AQUA DriveFC 202	Without Safe Stop Function		130B1168
Accessory bag Control Terminals		130B0295	
1) Only IP21/> 11 kW			

**Table 4.5 Ordering Numbers: Options and Accessories**

Options can be ordered as factory built-in options, see ordering information.

For information on fieldbus and application option compatibility with older software versions, contact your Danfoss supplier.

## 4.2.2 Ordering Numbers: Advanced Harmonic Filters

Harmonic filters are used to reduce mains harmonics.

For detailed information on advanced harmonic filters, see the AHF design guide

- AHF 010: 10% current distortion
- AHF 005: 5% current distortion

Code number AHF005 IP00 IP20	Code number AHF010 IP00 IP20	Filter current rating [A]	Typical motor [kW]	VLT model and current ratings [kW] [A]		Losses		Acoustic noise [dBA]	Frame size	
						AHF005 [W]	AHF010 [W]		AHF005	AHF010
130B1446 130B1251	130B1295 130B1214	204	110	N110	204	1080	742	<75	X6	X6
130B1447 130B1258	130B1369 130B1215	251	132	N132	251	1195	864	<75	X7	X7
130B1448 130B1259	130B1370 130B1216	304	160	N160	304	1288	905	<75	X7	X7
130B3153 130B3152	130B3151 130B3136	325	Paralleling for 355 kW			1406	952	<75	X8	X7
130B1449 130B1260	130B1389 130B1217	381	200	N200	381	1510	1175	<77	X8	X7
130B1469 130B1261	130B1391 130B1228	480	250	N250	472	1852	1542	<77	X8	X8
2x130B1448 2x130B1259	2x130B1370 2x130B1216	608	315	N315	590	2576	1810	<80		

**Table 4.6 Advanced Harmonic Filters 380-415 V, 50 Hz, D-Frame**

Code number AHF005 IP00 IP20	Code number AHF010 IP00 IP20	Filter current rating [A]	Typical motor [kW]	VLT model and current ratings [kW] [A]		Losses		Acousti c noise [dBA]	Frame size	
						AHF005	AHF010			
						[W]	[W]		AHF005	AHF010
2x130B3153 2x130B3152	2x130B3151 2x130B3136	650	355	P355	647	2812	1904	<80		
130B1448+130B1449 130B1259+130B1260	130B1370+130B1389 130B1216+130B1217	685	400	P400	684	2798	2080	<80		
2x130B1449 2x130B1260	2x130B1389 2x130B1217	762	450	P450	779	3020	2350	<80		
130B1449+130B1469 130B1260+130B1261	130B1389+130B1391 130B1217+130B1228	861	500	P500	857	3362	2717	<80		
2x130B1469 2x130B1261	2x130B1391 2x130B1228	960	560	P560	964	3704	3084	<80		
3x130B1449 3x130B1260	3x130B1389 3x130B1217	1140	630	P630	1090	4530	3525	<80		
2x130B1449+130B1469 2x130B1260+130B1261	2x130B1389+130B1391 2x130B1217+130B1228	1240	710	P710	1227	4872	3892	<80		
3x130B1469 3x130B1261	3x130B1391 3x130B1228	1440	800	P800	1422	5556	4626	<80		
2x130B1449+2x130B1469 2x130B1260+2x130B1261	2x130B1389+2x130B1391 2x130B1217+2x130B1228	1720	1000	P1000	1675	6724	5434	<80		

Table 4.7 Advanced Harmonic Filters 380-415 V, 50 Hz, E- and F-Frames

Code number AHF005 IP00 IP20	Code number AHF010 IP00 IP20	Filter current rating [A]	Typical motor [kW]	VLT model and current ratings [kW] [A]		Losses		Acoustic noise [dBA]	Frame size	
						AHF005	AHF010			
						[W]	[W]		AHF005	AHF010
130B3131 130B2869	130B3090 130B2500	204	110	N110	204	1080	743	<75	X6	X6
130B3132 130B2870	130B3091 130B2700	251	132	N132	251	1194	864	<75	X7	X7
130B3133 130B2871	130B3092 130B2819	304	160	N160	304	1288	905	<75	X8	X7
130B3157 130B3156	130B3155 130B3154	325	Paralleling for 355 kW			1406	952	<75	X8	X7
130B3134 130B2872	130B3093 130B2855	381	200	N200	381	1510	1175	<77	X8	X7
130B3135 130B2873	130B3094 130B2856	480	250	N250	472	1850	1542	<77	X8	X8
2x130B3133 2x130B2871	2x130B3092 2x130B2819	608	315	N315	590	2576	1810	<80		

Table 4.8 Advanced Harmonic Filters, 380-415 V, 60 Hz, D-Frame

Code number AHF005 IP00 IP20	Code number AHF010 IP00 IP20	Filter current rating [A]	Typical motor [kW]	VLT model and current ratings [kW] [A]		Losses		Acoustic noise [dBA]	Frame size AHF005 AHF010	
						AHF005	AHF010			
						[W]	[W]			
2x130B3157 2x130B3156	2x130B3155 2x130B3154	650	315	P355	647	2812	1904	<80		
130B3133+130B3134 130B2871+130B2872	130B3092+130B3093 130B2819+130B2855	685	355	P400	684	2798	2080	<80		
2x130B3134 2x130B2872	2x130B3093 2x130B2855	762	400	P450	779	3020	2350	<80		
130B3134+130B3135 130B2872+130B3135	130B3093+130B3094 130B2855+130B2856	861	450	P500	857	3362	2717	<80		
2x130B3135 2x130B2873	2x130B3094 2x130B2856	960	500	P560	964	3704	3084	<80		
3x130B3134 3x130B2872	3x130B3093 3x130B2855	1140	560	P630	1090	4530	3525	<80		
2x130B3134+130B3135 2x130B2872+130B2873	2x130B3093+130B3094 2x130B2855+130B2856	1240	630	P710	1227	4872	3892	<80		
3x130B3135 3x130B2873	3x130B3094 3x130B2856	1440	710	P800	1422	5556	4626	<80		
2x130B3134+2x130B3135 2x130B2872+2x130B2873	2x130B3093+2x130B3094 2x130B2855+2x130B2856	1722	800	P1M0	1675	6724	5434	<80		

Table 4.9 Advanced Harmonic Filters, 380-415 V, 60 Hz, E- and F-Frames

Code number AHF005 IP00 IP20	Code number AHF010 IP00 IP20	Filter current rating [A]	Typical motor [HP]	VLT model and current ratings [HP] [A]		Losses		Acoustic noise [dBA]	Frame size AHF005 AHF010	
						AHF005	AHF010			
						[W]	[W]			
130B1799 130B1764	130B1782 130B1496	183	150	N110	183	1080	743	<75	X6	X6
130B1900 130B1765	130B1783 130B1497	231	200	N132	231	1194	864	<75	X7	X7
130B2200 130B1766	130B1784 130B1498	291	250	N160	291	1288	905	<75	X8	X7
130B2257 130B1768	130B1785 130B1499	355	300	N200	348	1406	952	<75	X8	X7
130B3168 130B3167	130B3166 130B3165	380	Used for paralleling at 355 kW			1510	1175	<77	X8	X7
130B2259 130B1769	130B1786 130B1751	436	350	N250	436	1852	1542	<77	X8	X8
130B1900+ 130B2200 130B1765+ 130B1766	130B1783+ 130B1784 130B1497+ 130B1498	522	450	N315	531	2482	1769	<80		

Table 4.10 Advanced Harmonic Filters 440-480 V, 60 Hz, D-Frame

Code number AHF005 IP00/IP20	Code number AHF010 IP00/IP20	Filter current rating	Typical motor	VLT model and current ratings		Losses		Acoust ic noise	Frame size	
						AHF00 5	AHF01 0			
		[A]	[HP]	[kW]	[A]	[W]	[W]	[dBA]	AHF00 5	AHF01 0
2x130B2200 2x130B1766	2x130B1784 2x130B1498	582	500	P355	580	2576	1810	<80		
130B2200+130B3166 130B1766+130B3167	130B1784+130B3166 130B1498+130B3165	671	550	P400	667	2798	2080	<80		
2x130B2257 2x130B1768	2x130B1785 2x130B1499	710	600	P450	711	2812	1904	<80		
2x130B3168 2x130B3167	2x130B3166 2x130B3165	760	650	P500	759	3020	2350	<80		
2x130B2259 2x130B1769	2x130B1786 2x130B1751	872	750	P560	867	3704	3084	<80		
3x130B2257 3x130B1768	3x130B1785 3x130B1499	1065	900	P630	1022	4218	2856	<80		
3x130B3168 3x130B3167	3x130B3166 3x130B3165	1140	1000	P710	1129	4530	3525	<80		
3x130B2259 3x130B1769	3x130B1786 3x130B1751	1308	1200	P800	1344	5556	4626	<80		
2x130B2257+2x130B2259 2x130B1768+2x130B1768	2x130B1785+2x130B1785 +2x130B1786 2x130B1499+2x130B1751	1582	1350	P1M0	1490	6516	5988	<80		

Table 4.11 Advanced Harmonic Filters, 440-480 V, 60 Hz, E- and F-Frames

Code number AHF005 IP00/ IP20	Code number AHF010 IP00/ IP20	Filter current rating	Typical motor	VLT model and current ratings		Losses		Acoustic noise	Frame size	
						AHF005	AHF010			
		50 Hz				[W]	[W]	[dBa]	AHF005	AHF010
130B5269 130B5254	130B5237 130B5220	87	75	N75K	85	962	692	<72	X6	X6
130B5270 130B5255	130B5238 130B5221	109	100	N90K	106	1080	743	<72	X6	X6
130B5271 130B5256	130B5239 130B5222	128	125	N110	124	1194	864	<72	X6	X6
130B5272 130B5257	130B5240 130B5223	155	150	N132	151	1288	905	<72	X7	X7
130B5273 130B5258	130B5241 130B5224	197	200	N160	189	1406	952	<72	X7	X7
130B5274 130B5259	130B5242 130B5225	240	250	N200	234	1510	1175	<75	X8	X8
130B5275 130B5260	130B5243 130B5226	296	300	N250	286	1852	1288	<75	X8	X8
2x130B5273 2x130B5258	130B5244 130B5227	366	350	N315	339	2812	1542	<75		X8
2x130B5273 2x130B5258	130B5245 130B5228	395	400	N400	395	2812	1852	<75		X8

Table 4.12 Advanced Harmonic Filters, 600 V, 60 Hz

Code number AHF005 IP00/ IP20	Code number AHF010 IP00/ IP20	Filter current rating	Typical motor	VLT model and Current Ratings		Losses		Acoustic noise	Frame size	
		50 Hz				AHF005	AHF010		AHF005	AHF010
		[A]	[HP]	[kW]	[A]	[W]	[W]	[dBa]		
2x130B5274 2x130B5259	2x130B5242 2x130B5225	480	500	P500	482	3020	2350			
2x130B5275 2x130B5260	2x130B5243 2x130B5226	592	600	P560	549	3704	2576			
3x130B5274 3x130B5259	2x130B5244 2x130B5227	732	650	P630	613	4530	3084			
3x130B5274 3x130B5259	2x130B5244 2x130B5227	732	750	P710	711	4530	3084			
3x130B5275 3x130B5260	3x130B5243 3x139B5226	888	950	P800	828	5556	3864			
4x130B5274 4x130B5259	3x130B5244 3x130B5227	960	1050	P900	920	6040	4626			
4x130B5275 4x130B5260	3x130B5244 3x130B5227	1098	1150	P1M0	1032	7408	4626			
	4x130B5244 4x130B5227	1580	1350	P1M2	1227		6168			

Table 4.13 Advanced Harmonic Filters, 600 V, 60 Hz

Code number AHF005 IP00/ IP20	Code number AHF010 IP00/ IP20	Filter current rating	VLT model and current ratings					Losses		Acoustic noise	Frame size		
		50 Hz	Typical motor size	500-550 V		Typical motor size	551-690 V		AHF005		AHF010	AHF005	AHF010
		[A]	[kW]	[kW]	[A]	[kW]	[kW]	[A]	[W]		[W]	[dBa]	
130B5024	130B5325	77	45	N55K	71	75	N75K	76	841	488	<72	X6	X6
130B5169	130B5287												
130B5025	130B5326	87	55	N75K	89				962	692	<72	X6	X6
130B5170	130B5288												
130B5026	130B5327	109	75	N90K	110	90	N90K	104	1080	743	<72	X6	X6
130B5172	130B5289												
130B5028	130B5328	128	90	N110	130	110	N110	126	1194	864	<72	X6	X6
130B5195	130B5290												
130B5029	130B5329	155	110	N132	158	132	N132	150	1288	905	<72	X7	X7
130B5196	130B5291												
130B5042	130B5330	197	132	N160	198	160	N160	186	1406	952	<72	X7	X7
130B5197	130B5292												
130B5066	130B5331	240	160	N200	245	200	N200	234	1510	1175	<75	X8	X7
130B5198	130B5293												
130B5076	130B5332	296	200	N250	299	250	N250	280	1852	1288	<75	X8	X8
130B5199	130B5294												
2x130B5042	130B5333	366	250	N315	355	315	N315	333	2812	1542			X8
2x130B5197	130B5295												
2x130B5042	130B5334	395	315	N355	381	400			2812	1852			X8
130B5042 +130B5066	130B5330 +130B5331	437	355	N400	413	500	N400	395	2916	2127			
130B5197 +130B5198	130B5292 +130B5293												

Table 4.14 Advanced Harmonic Filters, 500-690 V, 50 Hz

Code number AHF005 IP00/ IP20	Code number AHF010 IP00/ IP20	Filter current rating	VLT model and current ratings						Losses		Acoustic noise	Frame size	
		50 Hz	Typical motor size	500-550 V		Typical motor size	551-690 V		AHF005	AHF010			
		[A]	[kW]	[kW]	[A]	[kW]	[kW]	[A]	[W]	[W]		[dBa]	AHF005
130B5066 +130B5076	130B5331 +130B5332	536	400	P450	504	560	P500	482	3362	2463			
130B5198 +130B5199	130B5292 +130B5294												
2 x130B5076	2x130B5332	592	450	P500	574	630	P560	549	3704	2576			
2 x130B5199	2x130B5294												
130B5076 +2x130B5042	130B5332 +130B5333	662	500	P560	642	710	P630	613	4664	2830			
130B5199 +2x130B5197	130B5294 +130B5295												
4x130B5042	2x130B5333	732	560	P630	743	800	P710	711	5624	3084			
4x130B5197	2x130B5295												
3x130B5076	3x130B5332	888	670	P710	866	900	P800	828	5556	3864			
3x130B5199	3x130B5294												
2x130B5076 +2x130B5042	2x130B5332 +130B5333	958	750	P800	962	1000	P900	920	6516	4118			
2x130B5199 +2x130B5197	2x130B5294 +130B5295												
6x130B5042	3x130B5333	1098	850	P1M0	1079		P1M0	1032	8436	4626			
6x130B5197	3x130B5295												

Table 4.15 Advanced Harmonic Filters, 500-690 V, 50 Hz

### 4.2.3 Ordering Numbers: Sine-Wave Filter Modules, 380-690 V AC

400 V, 50 Hz		460 V, 60 Hz		500 V, 50 Hz		Frame Size	Filter Ordering Number	
[kW]	[A]	[HP]	[A]	[kW]	[A]		IP00	IP23
90	177	125	160	110	160	D1h/D3h	130B3182	130B3183
110	212	150	190	132	190	D1h/D3h	130B3184	130B3185
132	260	200	240	160	240	D1h/D3h, D2h/D4h, D13		
160	315	250	302	200	302	D2h/D4h, D13	130B3186	130B3187
200	395	300	361	250	361	D2h/D4h, D13		
250	480	350	443	315	443	D2h/D4h, D13, E1/E2, E9, F8/F9	130B3188	130B3189
315	600	450	540	355	540	E1/E2, E9, F8/F9	130B3191	130B3192
355	658	500	590	400	590	E1/E2, E9, F8/F9		
400	745	600	678	500	678	E1/E2, E9, F8/F9	130B3193	130B3194
450	800	600	730	530	730	E1/E2, E9, F8/F9		
450	800	600	730	530	730	F1/F3, F10/F11, F18	2X130B3186	2X130B3187
500	880	650	780	560	780	F1/F3, F10/F11, F18	2X130B3188	2X130B3189
560	990	750	890	630	890	F1/F3, F10/F11, F18		
630	1120	900	1050	710	1050	F1/F3, F10/F11, F18	2X130B3191	2X130B3192
710	1260	1000	1160	800	1160	F1/F3, F10/F11, F18		
710	1260	1000	1160	800	1160	F2/F4, F12/F13	3X130B3188	3X130B3189
800	1460					F2/F4, F12/F13		
		1200	1380	1000	1380	F2/F4, F12/F13	3X130B3191	3X130B3192
1000	1720	1350	1530	1100	1530	F2/F4, F12/F13		

Table 4.16 Sine Wave Filter Modules, 380-500 V

525 V, 50 Hz		575 V, 60 Hz		690 V, 50 Hz		Frame Size	Filter Ordering Number	
[kW]	[A]	[HP]	[A]	[kW]	[A]		IP00	IP23
75	113	100	108	90	108	D1h/D3h	130B4118	130B4119
90	137	125	131	110	131	D1h/D3h	130B4121	130B4124
110	162	150	155	132	155	D1h/D3h		
132	201	200	192	160	192	D1h/D3h, D2h/D4h	130B4125	130B4126
160	253	250	242	200	242	D2h/D4h		
200	303	300	290	250	290	D2h/D4h	130B4129	130B4151
250	360			315	344	D2h/D4h, F8/F9		
		350	344	355	380	D2h/D4h, F8/F9	130B4152	130B4153
315	429	400	400	400	410	D2h/D4h, F8/F9		
		400	410			E1/E2, F8/F9	130B4154	130B4155
355	470	450	450	450	450	E1/E2, F8/F9		
400	523	500	500	500	500	E1/E2, F8/F9		
450	596	600	570	560	570	E1/E2, F8/F9		
500	630	650	630	630	630	E1/E2, F8/F9	130B4156	130B4157
500	659			630	630	F1/F3, F10/F11		
		650	630			F1/F3, F10/F11	2X130B4129	2X130B4151
560	763	750	730	710	730	F1/F3, F10/F11		
670	889	950	850	800	850	F1/F3, F10/F11	2X130B4152	2X130B4153
750	988	1050	945	900	945	F1/F3, F10/F11		
750	988	1050	945	900	945	F1/F3, F10/F11	2X130B4154	2X130B4155
750	988	1050	945	900	945	F2/F4, F12/F13		
850	1108	1150	1060	1000	1060	F2/F4, F12/F13	3X130B4152	3X130B4153
1000	1317	1350	1260	1200	1260	F2/F4, F12/F13		

Table 4.17 Sine Wave Filter Modules 525-690 V

## NOTE

When using Sine-wave filters, the switching frequency should comply with filter specifications in *14-01 Switching Frequency*.

## NOTE

See also *Output Filter Design Guide*

4.2.4 Ordering Numbers: dU/dt Filters

Typical application ratings										Frame Size	Filter ordering number	
380-480 V [T4]				525-690 V [T7]							IP00	IP23
400 V, 50 Hz		460 V, 60 Hz		525 V, 50 Hz		575 V, 60 Hz		690 V, 50 Hz				
[kW]	[A]	[HP]	[A]	[kW]	[A]	[HP]	[A]	[kW]	[A]			
90	177	125	160	90	137	125	131			D1h/D3h	130B2847	130B2848
110	212	150	190	110	162	150	155	110	131	D1h/D3h		
132	260	200	240	132	201	200	192	132	155	D1h/D3h, D2h/D4h, D13		
160	315	250	302	160	253	250	242	160	192	D2h/D4h, D13	130B2849	130B3850
200	395	300	361	200	303	300	290	200	242	D2h/D4h, D13		
250	480	350	443	250	360	350	344	250	290	D2h/D4h, D11 E1/E2, E9, F8/F9	130B2851	130B2852
315	588	450	535	315	429	400	410	315	344	D2h/D4h, E9, F8/F9		
355	658	500	590	355	470	450	450	355	380	E1/E2, E9, F8/F9		
								400	410	E1/E2, F8/F9	130B2853	130B2854
								450	450	E1/E2, F8/F9		
400	745	600	678	400	523	500	500	500	500	E1/E2, E9, F8/F9		
450	800	600	730	450	596	600	570	560	570	E1/E2, E9, F8/F9	2x130B28492	2x130B28502
				500	630	650	630	630	630	E1/E2, F8/F9		
450	800	600	730							F1/F3, F10/F11, F18		
500	880	650	780	500	659	650	630			F1/F3, F10/F11, F18	2x130B2851	2x130B2852
								630 <sup>2</sup>	630 <sup>2</sup>	F1/F3, F10/F11		
560	990	750	890	560	763	750	730	710	730	F1/F3, F10/F11, F18		
630	1120	900	1050	670	889	950	850	800	850	F1/F3, F10/F11, F18	2x130B2851	2x130B2852
710	1260	1000	1160	750	988	1050	945			F1/F3, F10/F11, F18		
								900	945	F1/F3, F10/F11		
710	1260	1000	1160	750	988	1050	945			F2/F4, F12/F13	3x130B2849	3x130B2850
								900	945	F2/F4, F12/F13		
800	1460	1200	1380	850	1108	1150	1060	1000	1060	F2/F4, F12/F13		
1000	1720	1350	1530	1000	1317	1350	1260	1200	1260	F2/F4, F12/F13	3x130B2851	3x130B2852
				1100	1479	1550	1415	1400	1415	F2/F4, F12/F13		

Table 4.18 dU/dt Filter Ordering Numbers

**NOTE**

See also *Output Filter Design Guide*

## 4.2.5 Ordering Numbers: Brake Resistors

For brake resistor selection information, refer to the *Brake Resistor Design Guide*

Use this table to determine the minimum resistance applicable to each frequency converter size.

380-480 V AC			
Drive data			
Aqua FC202 [T4]	Pm (NO) [kW]	Number of brake choppers <sup>1)</sup>	R <sub>min</sub>
N110	110	1	3.6
N132	132	1	3
N160	160	1	2.5
N200	200	1	2
N250	250	1	1.6
N315	315	1	1.2
P355	355	1	1.2
P400	400	1	1.2
P500	500	2	0.9
P560	560	2	0.9
P630	630	2	0.8
P710	710	2	0.7
P800	800	3	0.6
P1M0	1000	3	0.5

Table 4.19 Brake Chopper Data, 380-480 V

525-690 V AC			
Drive data			
Aqua FC202 [T7]	Pm (NO) [kW]	Number of brake choppers <sup>1)</sup>	R <sub>min</sub>
N75K	75	1	13.5
N90K	90	1	8.8
N110	110	1	8.2
N132	132	1	6.6
N160	160	1	4.2
N200	200	1	4.2
N250	250	1	3.4
N315	315	1	2.3
N400	400	1	2.3
P450	450	1	2.3
P500	500	1	2.1
P560	560	1	2
P630	630	1	2
P710	710	2	1.3
P800	800	2	1.1
P900	900	2	1.1
P1M0	1000	3	1
P1M2	1200	3	0.8
P1M4	1400	3	0.7

Table 4.20 Brake Chopper Data 525-690 V

$R_{min}$ =Minimum brake resistance that can be used with this frequency converter. If the frequency converter includes multiple brake choppers, the resistance value is the sum of all resistors in parallel

$R_{br, nom}$ =Nominal resistance required to achieve 150% braking torque.

<sup>1)</sup> Larger frequency converters include multiple inverter modules with a brake chopper in each inverter. Connect equal resistors to each brake chopper.

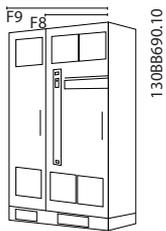
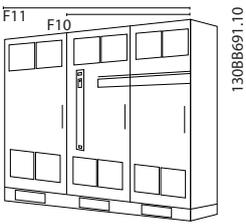
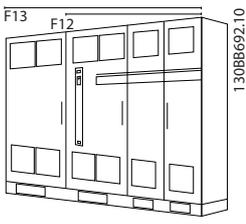


Mechanical dimensions													
Enclosure size [kW]	D1h	D2h	D3h*	D4h*	E1	E2*	F1	F2	F3	F4			
380-480 V AC	110-160	200-315	110-160	200-315	315-450	315-450	500-710	800-1000	500-710	800-1000			
525-690 V AC	45-160	200-400	45-160	200-400	450-630	450-630	710-900	1000-1400	710-900	1000-1400			
IP	21/54	21/54	20	20	21/54	00	21/54	21/54	21/54	21/54			
NEMA	Type 1/12	Type 1/12	Chassis	Chassis	Type 1/12	Chassis	Type 1/12	Type 1/12	Type 1/12	Type 1/12			
<b>Shipping dimensions [mm]</b>													
Width	997	1,170	997	1,170	2,197	1,705	2,324	2,324	2,324	2,324			
Height	587	587	587	587	840	831	1,569	1,962	2,159	2,559			
Depth	460	535	460	535	736	736	927	927	927	927			
<b>Frequency Converter dimensions [mm]</b>													
<b>Height</b>													
A	901	1107	909	1122	2000	1547	2281	2281	2281	2281			
<b>Width</b>													
B	325	420	250	350	600	585	1400	1800	2000	2400			
<b>Depth</b>													
C	380	380	375	375	494	494	607	607	607	607			
<b>Dimensions brackets [mm/inch]</b>													
Centre hole to back edge	a	Not Applicable											
Centre hole to top edge	b	Not Applicable											
Hole diameter	c	Not Applicable											
Top of mounting slot to bottom edge	d	Not Applicable											
Width of mounting slot	e	Not Applicable											
Bottom mounting hole from side edge	f	63/2.5	75/3.0	Not Applicable									
Bottom mounting hole from bottom edge	g	20/0.8	20/0.8	Not Applicable									
Width of mounting slot	h	11/0.4	11/0.4	Not Applicable									
Bottom mounting hole from side edge	k	Not Applicable		25/1.0	40/1.6	Not Applicable							
Bottom mounting hole from bottom edge	l	Not Applicable		20/0.8	20/0.8	Not Applicable							
Width of mounting slot	m	Not Applicable		11/0.4	11/0.4	Not Applicable							
<b>Max weight [kg]</b>		98	164	164	313	277	1017	1260	1318	1561			

Contact Danfoss for more detailed information and CAD drawings for your own planning purposes.

\*Chassis drives are intended for installation in external enclosures

Table 5.2 Legend to Table 5.1

Frame size		F8	F9	F10	F11	F12	F13
							
Enclosure protection	IP	21/54	21/54	21/54	21/54	21/54	21/54
	NEMA	Type 1/Type 12	Type 1/Type 12	Type 1/Type 12	Type 1/Type 12	Type 1/Type 12	Type 1/Type 12
High overload rated power -160% overload torque		315-450 kW (380-480 V)	315-350 kW (380-480 V)	500-710 kW (380-480 V)	500-710 kW (380-480 V)	800-1000 kW (380-480 V)	800-1000 kW (380-480V)
		450-630 kW (525-690 V)	450-630 kW (525-690 V)	710-900 kW (525-690 V)	710-900 kW (525-690 V)	1000-1400 kW (525-690 V)	1000-1400 kW (525-690 V)
Shipping dimensions [mm]	Height	2324	2324	2324	2324	2324	2324
	Width	970	1568	1760	2559	2160	2960
	Depth	1130	1130	1130	1130	1130	1130
Drive dimensions [mm]	Height	2204	2204	2204	2204	2204	2204
	Width	800	1400	1600	2200	2000	2600
	Depth	606	606	606	606	606	606
Max weight [kg]		447	669	893	1116	1037	1259

5

Table 5.3 Product Overview, 12-pulse Frequency Converters

**NOTE**

The F-Frames are available with or without options cabinet. The F8, F10 and F12 consist of an inverter cabinet on the right and rectifier cabinet on the left. The F9, F11 and F13 have an additional options cabinet left of the rectifier cabinet. The F9 is an F8 with an additional options cabinet. The F11 is an F10 with an additional options cabinet. The F13 is an F12 with an additional options cabinet.

### 5.1.1 Mechanical Mounting

1. Drill holes in accordance with the measurements given.
2. Provide screws suitable for the mounting surface. Retighten all four screws.

The frequency converter allows side-by-side installation. The back wall must always be solid.

Enclosure	Air space [mm]
D1h/D2h/D3h/D4h/D5h/D6h/D7h/D8h	225
E1/E2	225
F1/F2/F3/F4	225
F8/F9/F10/F11/F12/F13	225

Table 5.4 Required Free Air Space Above and Below Frequency Converter

#### NOTE

If using a kit to direct the heatsink cooling air out the back of the frequency converter, the required top clearance is 100 mm.

### 5.1.2 Pedestal Installation of D-Frames

The D7h and D8h frequency converters are shipped with a pedestal and a wall spacer. Before securing the enclosure to the wall, install the pedestal behind the mounting flange as shown in *Illustration 5.1*.

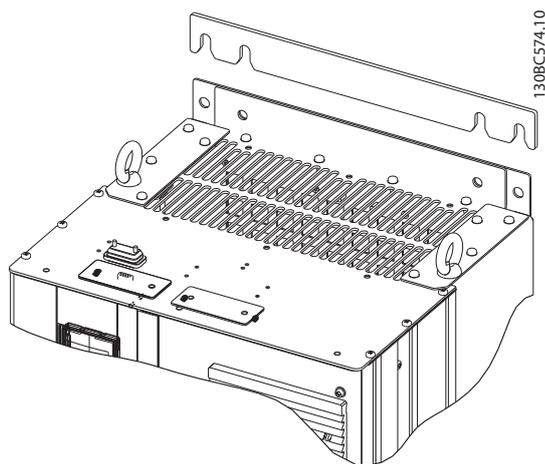


Illustration 5.1 Wall Mounting Spacer

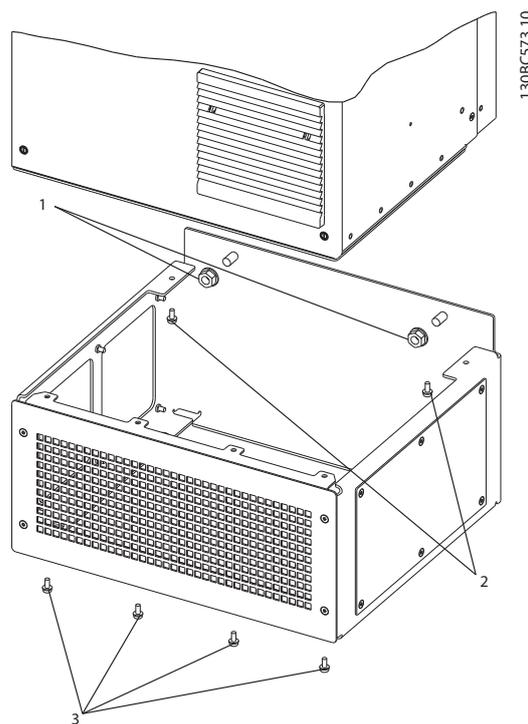


Illustration 5.2 Pedestal Hardware Installation

1	Attach the pedestal to the back channel using 2 M10 nuts
2	Fasten 2 M5 screws through the back pedestal flange into the pedestal drive mounting bracket
3	Fasten 4 M5 screws through the front pedestal flange into the front gland plate mounting holes

Table 5.5 Legend to *Illustration 5.2*

### 5.1.3 Pedestal Installation on F-Frame Drives

Pedestals on F-Frame frequency converters use eight bolts instead of four.

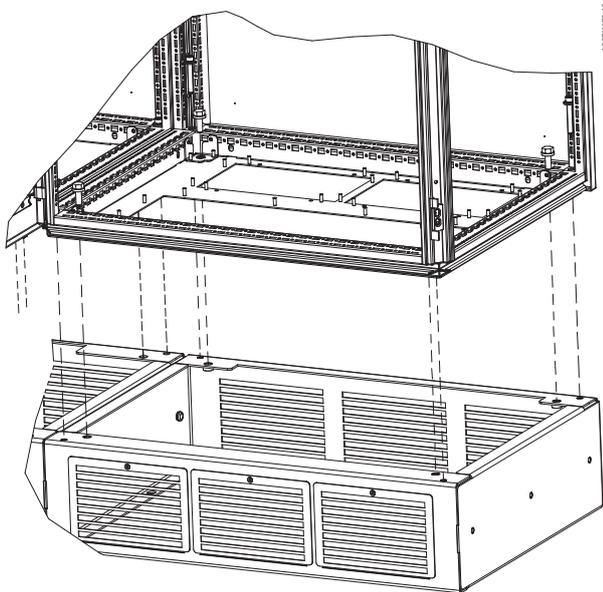


Illustration 5.3 Pedestal Bolt Installation

1	Install each M8x60 mm bolt with lock washer and flat washer through the frame into the threaded hole in the base. Install four bolts per cabinet
2	Install each M10x30 mm bolt with captive lock washer and flat washer through the base plate and into the threaded hole in the base. Install four bolts per cabinet

Table 5.6 Legend to Illustration 5.4

### 5.1.4 Safety Requirements of Mechanical Installation

#### ⚠ WARNING

Pay attention to the requirements that apply to integration and field mounting kit. To avoid serious injury or equipment damage, observe the information in the list, especially when installing large units.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

The frequency converter is cooled with air circulation. To protect the unit from overheating, ensure that the ambient temperature *does not exceed the maximum rated temperature*. If the ambient temperature is in the range of 45 °C - 55 °C, derating of the frequency converter is relevant, see 3.5.5 *Derating for Ambient Temperature*. If derating for ambient temperature is not taken into account, the service life of the frequency converter is reduced.

5

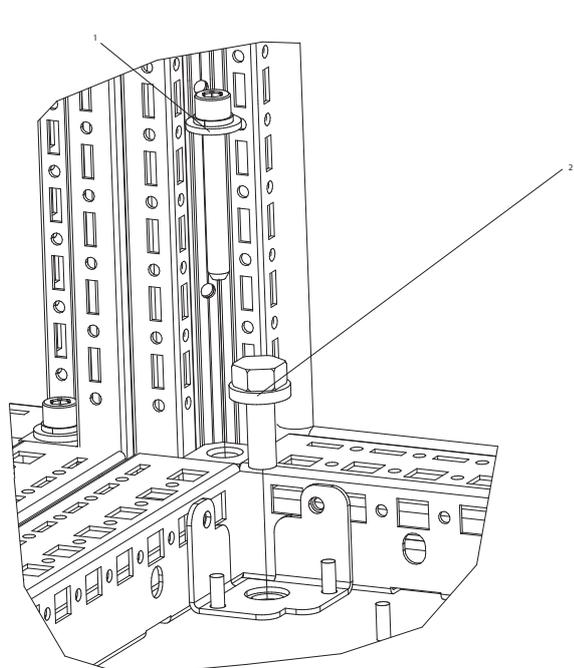


Illustration 5.4 Close-up Detail

## 5.2 Pre-installation

### 5.2.1 Planning the Installation Site

#### NOTE

To avoid extra work during and after installation, it is important to plan the installation of the frequency converter in advance.

Select the best possible operation site by considering the following:

- Ambient operating temperature
- Installation method
- How to cool the unit
- Position of the frequency converter
- Cable routing
- Ensure the power source supplies the correct voltage and necessary current
- Ensure that the motor current rating is within the maximum current from the frequency converter
- If the frequency converter is without built-in fuses, ensure that the external fuses are rated correctly.

### 5.2.2 Receiving the Frequency Converter

When receiving the frequency converter, make sure that the packaging is intact, and be aware of any potential damage to the unit during transport. If damage has occurred, contact the shipping company immediately to claim the damage.

<b>VLT®</b> AQUA Drive www.danfoss.com	
T/C: FC-202N160T4E21H2XGC7XXSXXXXAXBXXXXDX P/N: 134F9717      S/N: 123456H123	
160 kW / 250 HP	
IN: 3x380-480V 50/60Hz 304/291A OUT: 3x0-Vin 0-590Hz 315/302A	
Type 1/ IP21 Tamb. 40° C/104° F Max Tamb. 55° C/131° F w/Output Current Derating	
SCCR 100 kA at UL Voltage range 380-480V ASSEMBLED IN USA	
Listed 36U0 E70524 Ind. contr. Eq. UL Voltage range 380-480 V	
<b>CAUTION:</b> See manual for special condition / prefuses Voir manuel de conditions speciales / fusibles	
<b>WARNING:</b> Stored charge, wait 20 min. Charge residuelle, attendez 20 min.	

Illustration 5.5 Nameplate Label

### 5.2.3 Transportation and Unpacking

Before unpacking the frequency converter, position it as close as possible to the final installation site. Remove the box and leave the frequency converter on the pallet as long as possible.

### 5.2.4 Lifting

Always lift the frequency converter in the dedicated lifting eyes. For all E2 (IP00) enclosures, use a bar to avoid bending the lifting holes of the frequency converter.

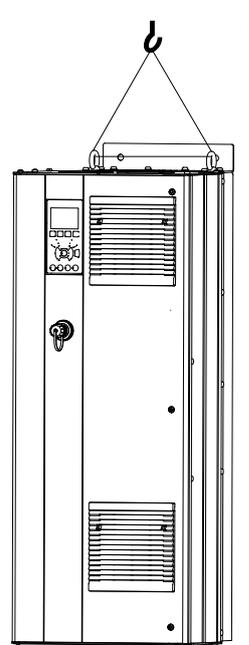


Illustration 5.6 Recommended Lifting Method, D-Frame Size

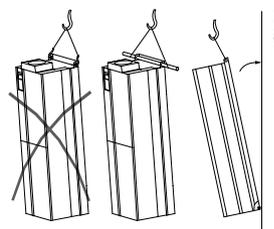


Illustration 5.7 Recommended Lifting Method, E-Frame Size

## WARNING

The lifting bar must be able to handle the weight of the frequency converter. See *Table 5.2* for the weight of the different frame sizes. Maximum diameter for the bar is 2.5 cm (1 inch). The angle from the top of the drive to the lifting cable should be 60° or greater.

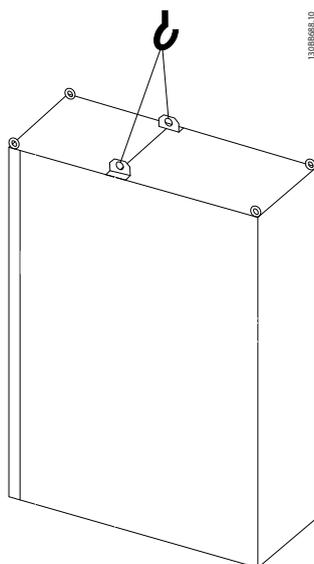


Illustration 5.8 Recommended Lifting Method, Frame Sizes F1, F2, F9 and F10

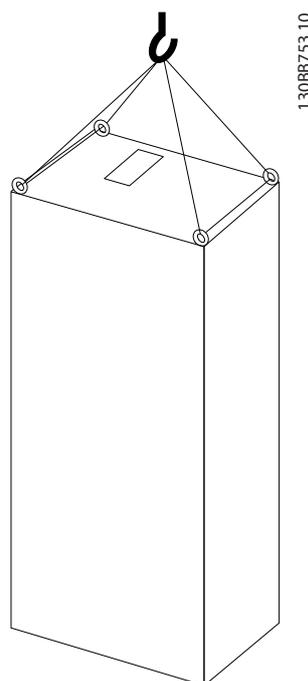


Illustration 5.10 Recommended Lifting Method, Frame Sizes F8

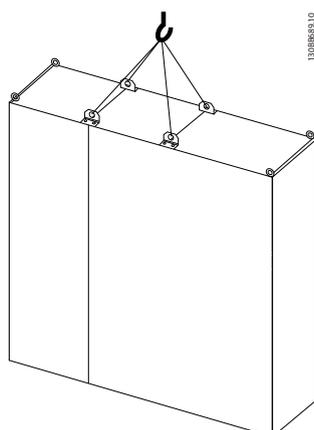


Illustration 5.9 Recommended Lifting Method, Frame Sizes F3, F4, F11, F12 and F13

### NOTE

The plinth is provided in the same packaging as the frequency converter but is not attached to frame sizes F1-F4 during shipment. The plinth is required to allow airflow to the frequency converter to provide proper cooling. Position F-Frames on top of the plinth in the final installation location. The angle from the top of the frequency converter to the lifting cable should be 60° or greater. In addition to the drawings above, a spreader bar is an acceptable way to lift the F-Frame.

### 5.2.5 Tools Needed

To perform the mechanical installation, the following tools are needed:

- Drill with 10 mm or 12 mm drill
- Tape measure
- Wrench with relevant metric sockets (7–17 mm)
- Extensions to wrench
- Sheet metal punch for conduits or cable glands in IP21 (NEMA 1) and IP54 (NEMA 12) units.
- Lifting bar to lift the unit (rod or tube max. Ø 25 mm (1 inch), able to lift minimum 400 kg (880 lbs)).
- Crane or other lifting aid to place the frequency converter in position.
- Use a Torx T50 tool to install the E1 in IP21 and IP54 enclosure types.

### 5.2.6 General Considerations

#### Wire access

Ensure that proper cable access is present including necessary bending allowance. As the IP00 enclosure is open to the bottom, cables must be fixed to the back panel of the enclosure where the frequency converter is mounted.

#### NOTE

All cable lugs/shoes must mount within the width of the terminal bus bar.

#### Space

Ensure proper space above and below the frequency converter to allow airflow and cable access. In addition, space in front of the unit must be considered to enable opening of the door of the panel.

5

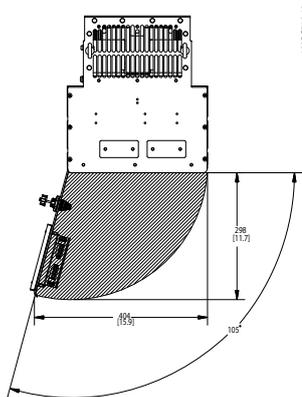


Illustration 5.11 Front Clearance of IP21/IP54 Enclosure Type, Frame Size D1h, D5h, and D6h.

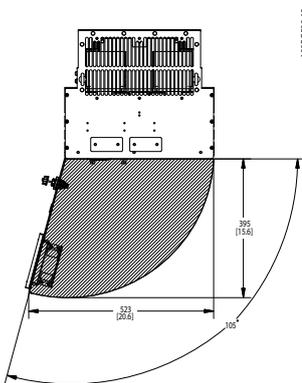


Illustration 5.12 Front Clearance of IP21/IP54 Enclosure Type, Frame Size D2h, D7h, and D8h.

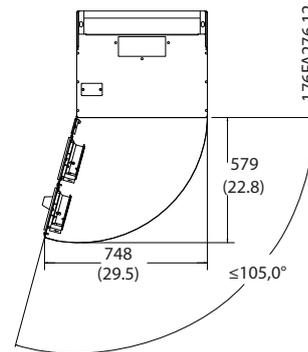


Illustration 5.13 Front Clearance of IP21/IP54 Enclosure Type, Frame Size E1.

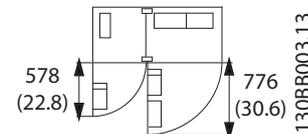


Illustration 5.14 Front Clearance of IP21/IP54 Enclosure Type, Frame Size F1

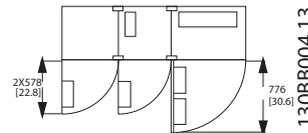


Illustration 5.15 Front Clearance of IP21/IP54 Enclosure Type, Frame Size F3

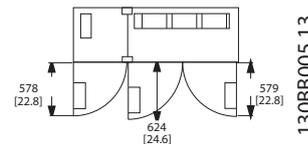


Illustration 5.16 Front Clearance of IP21/IP54 Enclosure Type, Frame Size F2

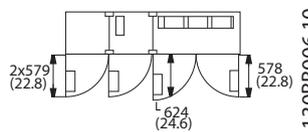


Illustration 5.17 Front Clearance of IP21/IP54 Enclosure Type, Frame Size F4

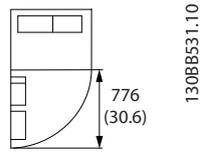


Illustration 5.18 Front Clearance of IP21/IP54 Enclosure Type, Frame Size F8

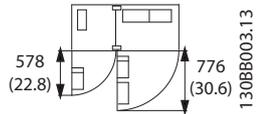


Illustration 5.19 Front Clearance of IP21/IP54 Enclosure Type, Frame Size F9

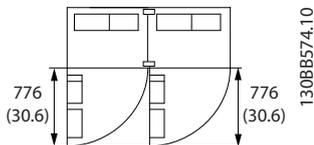


Illustration 5.20 Front Clearance of IP21/IP54 Enclosure Type, Frame Size F10

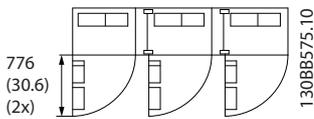


Illustration 5.21 Front Clearance of IP21/IP54 Enclosure Type, Frame Size F11

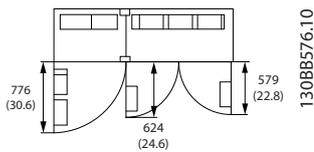


Illustration 5.22 Front Clearance of IP21/IP54 Enclosure Type, Frame Size F12

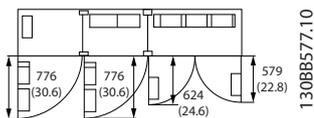


Illustration 5.23 Front Clearance of IP21/IP54 Enclosure Type, Frame Size F13

### 5.2.7 Cooling and Airflow

#### Cooling

Cooling can be achieved either by using the cooling ducts in the bottom and the top of the unit, by taking air in and out the back of the unit, or by combining the cooling possibilities.

#### Duct cooling

A dedicated option has been developed to optimise installation of IP00/chassis frequency converters in Rittal TS8 enclosures utilising the fan of the frequency converter for forced air cooling of the back channel. The air out the top of the enclosure could be ducted outside a facility so the heat losses from the back channel are not dissipated within the control room, reducing air conditioning requirements of the facility.

#### Back cooling

The back channel air can also be ventilated in and out the back of a Rittal TS8 enclosure. Using this method, the back channel could take air from outside the facility and return the heat losses outside the facility, thus reducing air conditioning requirements.

### NOTE

A door fan is required on the enclosure to remove the heat losses not contained in the back channel of the frequency converter and any additional losses generated from other components installed inside the enclosure. The total required air flow must be calculated so that the appropriate fans can be selected. Some enclosure manufacturers offer software for performing the calculations.

#### Airflow

The necessary airflow over the heat sink must be secured. The flow rate is shown in *Table 5.7*.

Drive Type	Drive size		Frame Size	Enclosure protection	Airflow m3/h (cfm)			
	380-480 V (T5)	525-690 V (T7)			Door fan(s)/Top fan	Heatsink fan(s)		
6-Pulse	N110 to N160	N75 to N160	D1h, D5h, D6h	IP21/NEMA 1 or IP54/NEMA 12	102 (60)	420 (250)		
			D3h	IP20/chassis				
	N200 to N315	N200 to N400	D2h, D7h, D8h	IP21/NEMA 1 or IP54/NEMA 12	204 (120)	840 (500)		
			D4h	IP20/chassis				
	-	P450 to P500	E1	IP21/NEMA 1 or IP54/NEMA 12	340 (200)	1105 (650)		
				E2	IP00/chassis		255 (150)	
			P355 to P450	P560 to P630	E1	IP21/NEMA 1 or IP54/NEMA 12	340 (200)	1445 (850)
					E2	IP00/chassis	255 (150)	
	P500 to P1M0	P710 to P1M4	F1/F3, F2/F4	IP21/NEMA 1	700 (412)	985 (580)		
				IP54/NEMA 12	525 (309)			
12-Pulse	P315 to P1M0	P450 to P1M4	F8/F9, F10/F11, F12/F13	IP21/NEMA 1	700 (412)	985 (580)		
				IP54/NEMA 12	525 (309)			

**Table 5.7 Heatsink and Front Channel Air Flow**

\* Airflow per fan. F-Frames contain multiple fans.

#### D-Frame Cooling fans

All frequency converters in this size range are equipped with cooling fans to provide airflow along the heatsink. Units in IP21 (NEMA 1) and IP54 (NEMA 12) enclosures have a fan mounted in the enclosure door to provide more airflow to the unit. IP20 enclosures have a fan mounted to the top of the unit for more cooling. There is a small 24 V DC mixing fan mounted under the input plate. This fan operates anytime the frequency converter is powered on.

DC voltage from the power card powers the fans. The mixing fan is powered by 24 V DC from the main switch mode power supply. The heatsink fan and the door/top fan are powered by 48 V DC from a dedicated switch mode power supply on the power card. Each fan has tachometer feedback to the control card to confirm that the fan is operating correctly. On/off and speed control of the fans is provided to reduce overall acoustical noise and extend the life of the fans.

The following conditions activate fans on the D-Frame:

- Output current greater than 60% of nominal
- IGBT over temperature
- IGBT low temperature
- Control card over temperature
- DC hold active
- DC brake active
- Dynamic brake circuit active
- During pre-magnetization of the motor
- AMA in progress

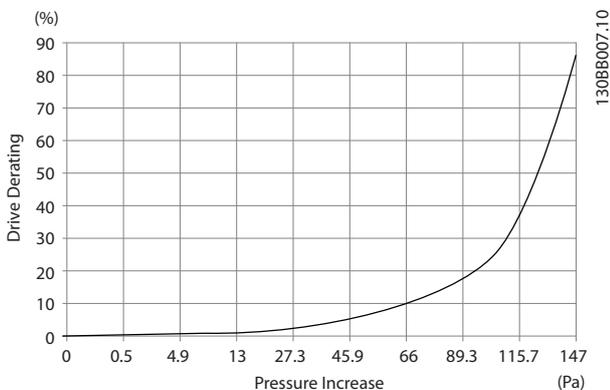
In addition to these conditions, the fans are always started shortly after mains input power is applied to the frequency converter. Once fans are started, they run for a minimum of one minute.

The following conditions activate fans on the E- and F-frames:

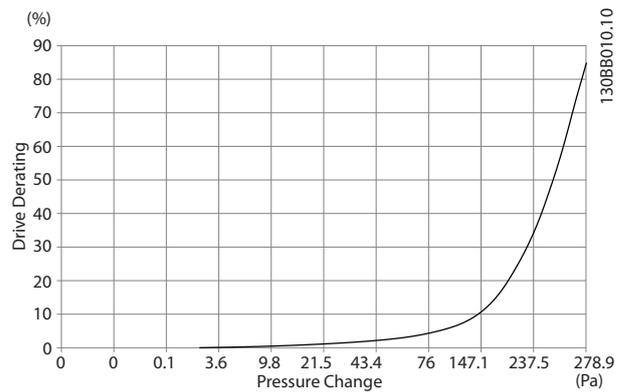
1. AMA
2. DC Hold
3. Pre-Mag
4. DC Brake
5. 60% of nominal current is exceeded
6. Specific heatsink temperature exceeded (power size dependent).
7. Specific power card ambient temperature exceeded (power-size dependent)
8. Specific control card ambient temperature exceeded

**External ducts**

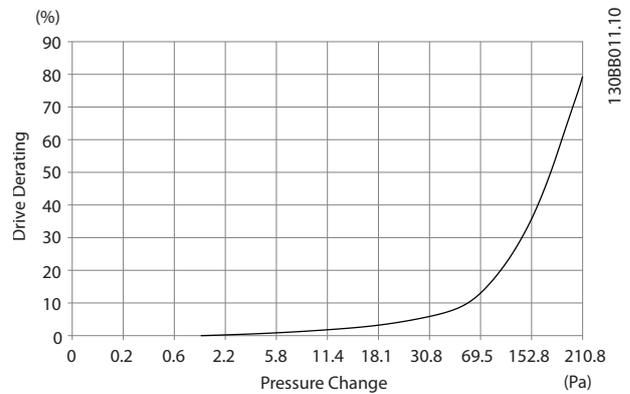
If more duct work is added externally to the Rittal cabinet the pressure drop in the ducting must be calculated. Use the derating charts to derate the frequency converter according to the pressure drop.



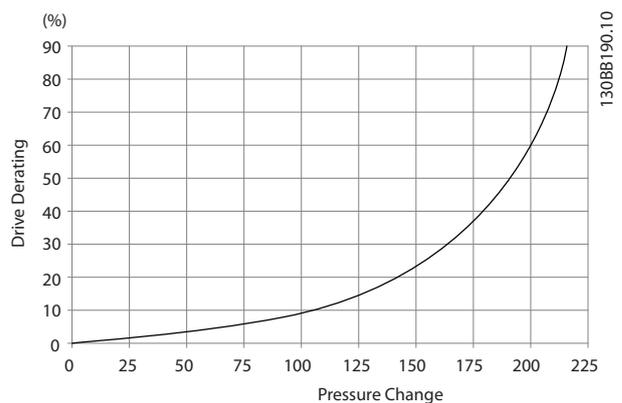
**Illustration 5.24 D-Frame Derating vs. Pressure Change**  
 Frequency Converter Air Flow: 450 cfm (765 m<sup>3</sup>/h)



**Illustration 5.25 E-Frame Derating vs. Pressure Change (Small Fan), P250T5 and P355T7-P400T7**  
 Frequency Converter Air Flow: 650 cfm (1,105 m<sup>3</sup>/h)



**Illustration 5.26 E-Frame Derating vs. Pressure Change (Large Fan), P315T5-P400T5 and P500T7-P560T7**  
 Frequency Converter Air Flow: 850 cfm (1,445 m<sup>3</sup>/h)



**Illustration 5.27 F1, F2, F3, F4 Frame Derating vs. Pressure Change**  
 Frequency Converter Air Flow: 580 cfm (985 m<sup>3</sup>/h)

### 5.2.8 Gland/Conduit Entry - IP21 (NEMA 1) and IP54 (NEMA12)

Cables are connected through the gland plate from the bottom. Remove the plate and plan where to place the entry for the glands or conduits.

#### NOTE

The gland plate must be fitted to the frequency converter to ensure the specified protection degree.

5

Cable entries viewed from the bottom of the frequency converter - 1) Mains side 2) Motor side

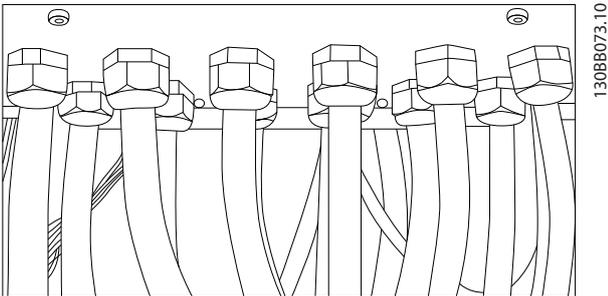


Illustration 5.28 Example of Proper Installation of Gland Plate

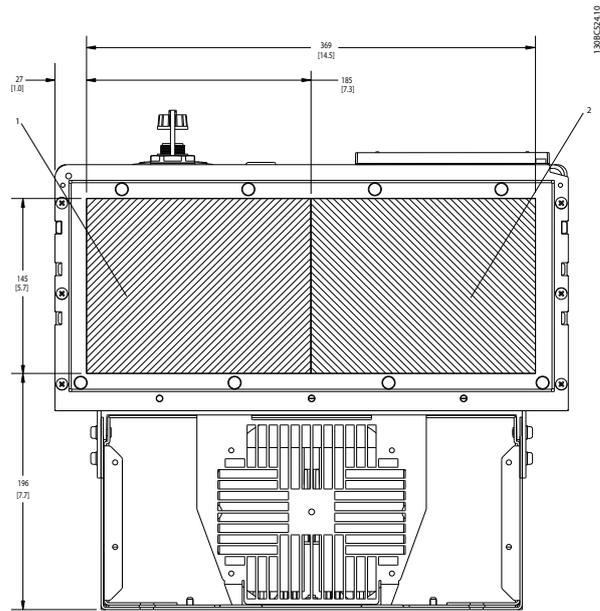


Illustration 5.30 D2h, Bottom View

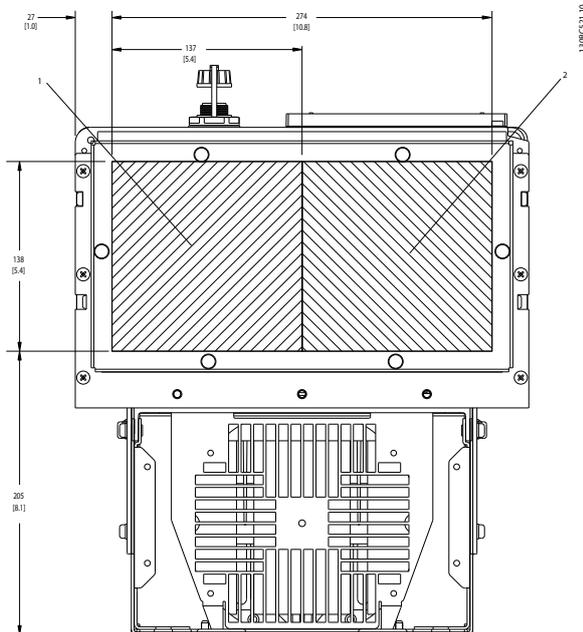


Illustration 5.29 D1h, Bottom View

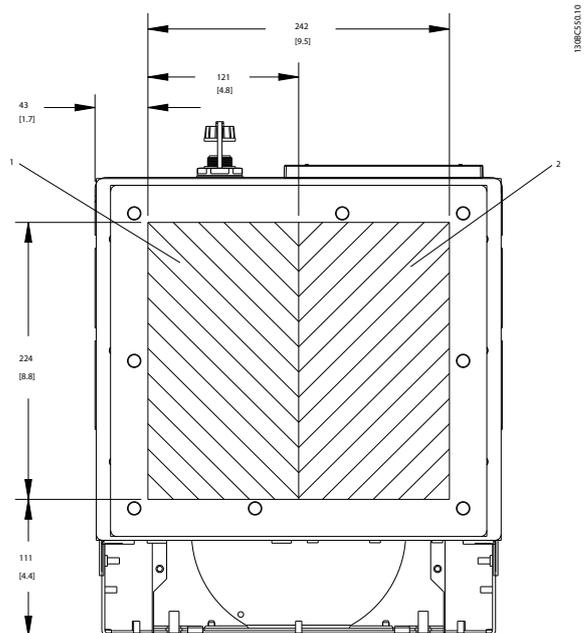


Illustration 5.31 D5h & D6h, Bottom View

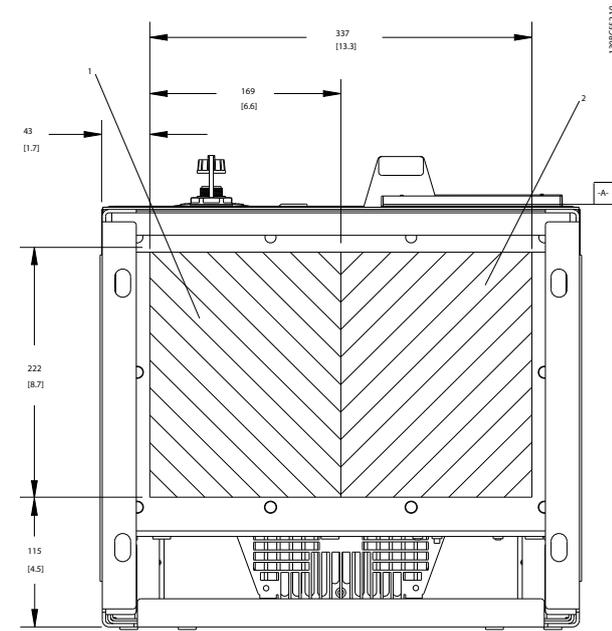


Illustration 5.32 D7h & D8h, Bottom View

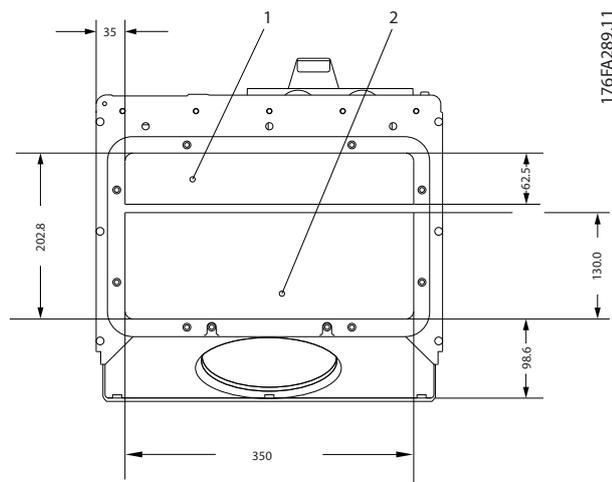


Illustration 5.33 E1, Bottom View

F1-F4: Cable entries viewed from the bottom of the frequency converter - 1) Place conduits in marked areas

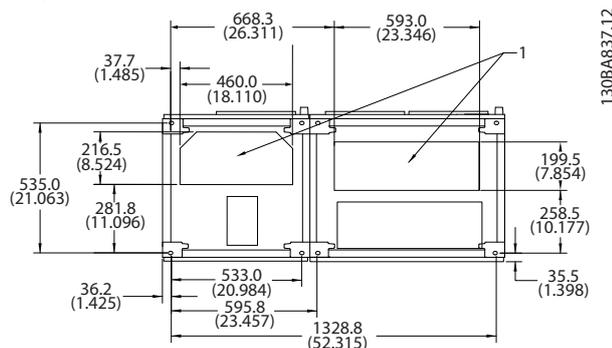


Illustration 5.34 F1, Bottom View

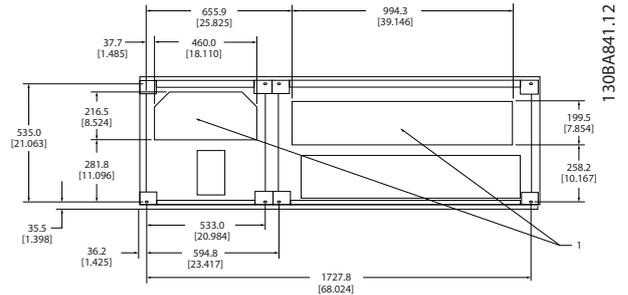


Illustration 5.35 F2, Bottom View

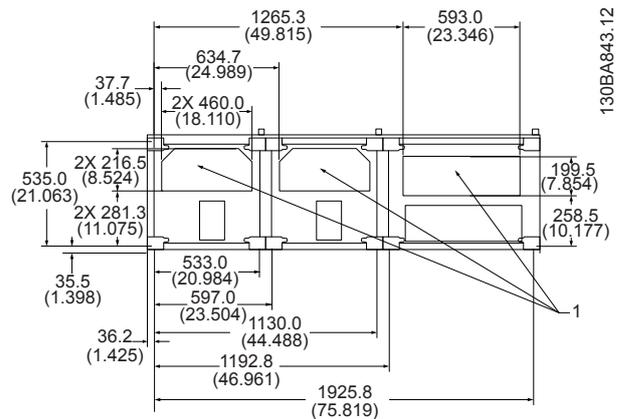


Illustration 5.36 F3, Bottom View

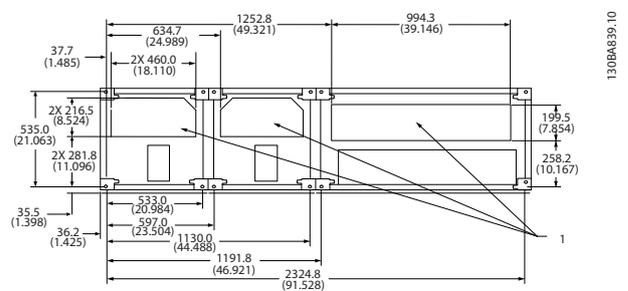


Illustration 5.37 F4, Bottom View

### 5.2.9 Gland/Conduit Entry, 12-Pulse - IP21 (NEMA 1) and IP54 (NEMA12)

#### NOTE

Cable entries viewed from the bottom of the frequency converter

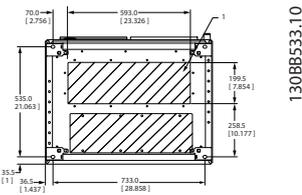


Illustration 5.38 Frame Size F8

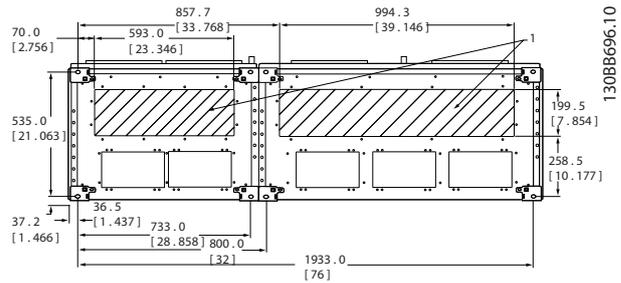


Illustration 5.42 Frame Size F12

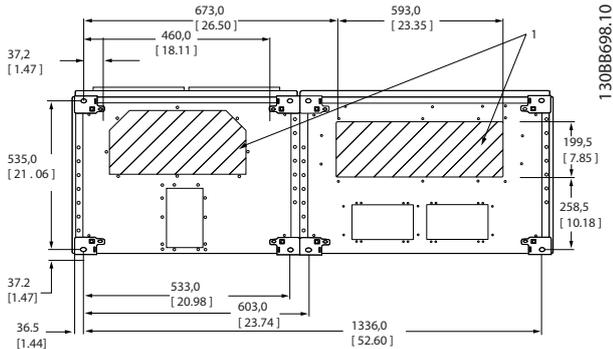


Illustration 5.39 Frame Size F9

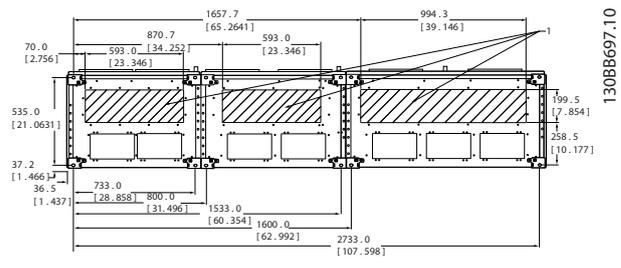


Illustration 5.43 Frame Size F13

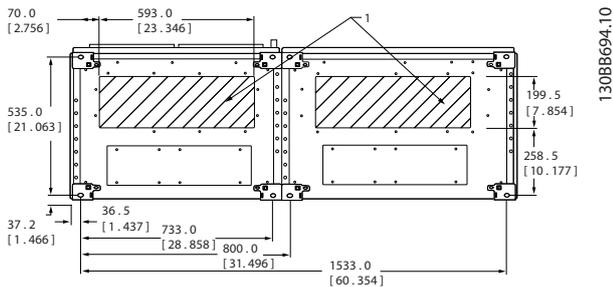


Illustration 5.40 Frame Size F10

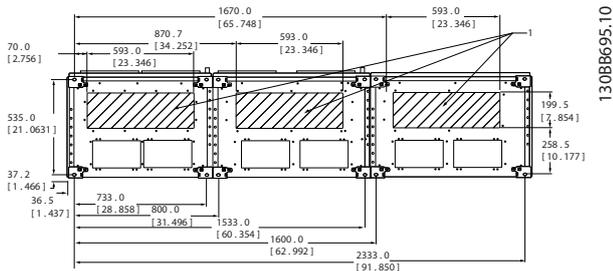


Illustration 5.41 Frame Size F11

1 Place conduits in marked areas

Table 5.8 Legend to Illustration 5.38-Illustration 5.43

## 5.3 Electrical Installation

### 5.3.1 Cables General

#### NOTE

Always comply with national and local regulations on cable cross-sections.

For more information on the correct torques, see Table 5.12.

### 5.3.2 Preparing Gland Plates for Cables

1. Remove gland plate from the frequency converter. (Avoiding foreign parts falling into the frequency converter when removing knockouts).
2. Provide support for the gland plate around the hole being punched or drilled.
3. Remove debris from the hole.
4. Mount the cable entry on the frequency converter.

### 5.3.3 Connection to Mains and Earthing

#### NOTE

The plug connector for power can be removed.

1. Make sure that the frequency converter is properly earthed. Connect to earth connection (terminal 95). Use screw from the accessory bag.
2. Place plug connector 91, 92, 93 from the accessory bag onto the terminals labelled MAINS at the bottom of the frequency converter.
3. Connect mains wires to the mains plug connector.

#### CAUTION

The earth connection cable cross section must be at least 10 mm<sup>2</sup> or 2 rated mains wires terminated separately according to EN 50178.

The mains connection is fitted to the main switch if included.

#### NOTE

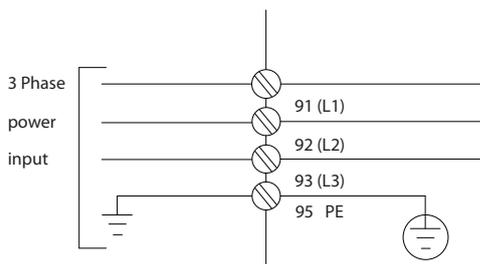
Check that mains voltage corresponds to the mains voltage of the frequency converter name plate.

#### CAUTION

##### IT Mains

Do not connect 400 V frequency converters with RFI-filters to mains supplies with a voltage between phase and earth of more than 440 V.

For IT mains and delta earth (grounded leg), mains voltage can exceed 440 V between phase and earth.



130BA026.10

Illustration 5.44 Terminals for Mains and Earthing

### 5.3.4 Motor Cable Connection

#### NOTE

Screened motor cable is recommended. If an unshielded cable is used, some EMC requirements are not complied with. For more information, see 5.10 EMC-correct Installation.

1. Fasten de-coupling plate to the bottom of the frequency converter with screws and washers from the accessory bag.
2. Attach motor cable to terminals 96 (U), 97 (V), 98 (W).
3. Connect to earth connection (terminal 99) on de-coupling plate with screws from the accessory bag.
4. Insert terminals 96 (U), 97 (V), 98 (W) and motor cable to terminals labelled MOTOR.
5. Fasten screened cable to de-coupling plate with screws and washers from the accessory bag.

All types of three-phase asynchronous standard motors can be connected to the frequency converter. Normally, small motors are star-connected (230/400 V, D/Y). Large motors are delta-connected (400/690 V, D/Y). Refer to the motor name plate for correct connection mode and voltage.

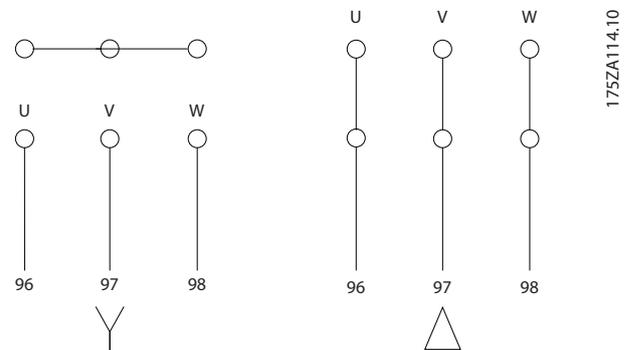


Illustration 5.45 Motor Cable Connection

#### NOTE

If motors are not inverter-duty rated, fit a Sine-wave filter on the output of the frequency converter.

Term. no.	96	97	98	99	
	U	V	W	PE <sup>1)</sup>	Motor voltage 0–100% of mains voltage. 3 wires out of motor
	U1	V1	W1	PE <sup>1)</sup>	Delta-connected 6 wires out of motor
	W2	U2	V2		
	U1	V1	W1	PE <sup>1)</sup>	Star-connected U2, V2, W2 U2, V2, and W2 to be interconnected separately.

Table 5.9 Motor Cable Connection

<sup>1)</sup>Protected Earth Connection

### 5.3.5 Motor Cables

See 3.1 *General Specifications* for maximum dimensioning of motor cable cross-section and length.

- To comply with EMC emission specifications, use a screened/armoured motor cable.
- Keep the motor cable as short as possible to reduce the noise level and leakage currents.
- Connect the motor cable screen to both the decoupling plate of the frequency converter and to the metal cabinet of the motor.
- Make the screen connections with the largest possible surface area (cable clamp), by using the supplied installation devices in the frequency converter.
- Avoid mounting with twisted screen ends (pigtailed), which spoils high frequency screening effects.
- If it is necessary to split the screen to install a motor isolator or motor relay, the screen must be continued with the lowest possible HF impedance.

#### F-frame requirements

##### F1/F3 requirements:

Motor phase cable quantities must be multiples of 2, resulting in 2, 4, 6, or 8 (one cable is not allowed) to obtain equal numbers of wires attached to both inverter module terminals. The cables are required to be equal length within 10% between the inverter module terminals and the first common point of a phase. The recommended common point is the motor terminals.

##### F2/F4 requirements:

Motor phase cable quantities must be multiples of 3, resulting in 3, 6, 9, or 12 (1 or 2 cables are not allowed) to obtain equal numbers of wires attached to each inverter module terminal. The wires are required to be equal length within 10% between the inverter module terminals and the first common point of a phase. The recommended common point is the motor terminals.

#### Output junction box requirements:

The length, minimum 2.5 meters, and quantity of cables must be equal from each inverter module to the common terminal in the junction box.

### NOTE

If a retrofit application requires unequal numbers of wires per phase, consult the factory for requirements and documentation or use the top/bottom entry side cabinet busbar option.

### 5.3.6 Electrical Installation of Motor Cables

#### Screening of cables

Avoid installation with twisted screen ends (pigtailed). They spoil the screening effect at higher frequencies. If it is necessary to break the screen to install a motor isolator or motor contactor, the screen must be continued at the lowest possible HF impedance.

#### Cable length and cross-section

The frequency converter has been tested with a given length of cable and a given cross-section of that cable. If the cross-section is increased, the cable capacitance - and thus the leakage current - increase, and the cable length must be reduced correspondingly.

#### Switching frequency

When frequency converters are used together with Sine-wave filters to reduce the acoustic noise from a motor, the switching frequency must be set according to the Sine-wave filter instruction in *14-01 Switching Frequency*.

#### Aluminum conductors

Aluminum conductors are not recommended. Terminals can accept aluminum conductors but the conductor surface has to be clean, free of oxidation and sealed with neutral acid free Vaseline grease before the conductor is connected.

Furthermore, the terminal screw must be retightened after two days due to the softness of the aluminum. It is crucial to keep the connection a gas tight joint, otherwise the aluminum surface oxidizes again.

### 5.3.7 Fuses

#### NOTE

All fuses mentioned are maximum fuse sizes.

#### Branch circuit protection:

To protect the installation against electrical and fire hazard, all branch circuits in an installation, switch gear or machine, must be short-circuit and overcurrent protected according to the national/international regulations.

#### Short circuit protection:

The frequency converter must be protected against short-circuit to avoid electrical or fire hazard. Danfoss recommends using the fuses mentioned in *Table 5.10* and *Table 5.11* to protect service personnel or other equipment in case of an internal failure in the unit. The frequency converter provides full short circuit protection in a short-circuit on the motor output.

#### Over-current protection:

To avoid fire hazard due to overheating of the cables in the installation, provide overload protection. Over current protection must always be carried out according to national regulations. The frequency converter is equipped with an internal over current protection that can be used for upstream overload protection (UL-applications excluded). See *4-18 Current Limit*. Fuses must be designed for protection in a circuit capable of supplying a maximum of 100,000 A<sub>rms</sub> (symmetrical), 500 V/600 V maximum.

### 5.3.8 Fuse Specifications

Enclosure size	Power [kW]	Recommended fuse size	Recommended Max. fuse
D	N110T4	aR-315	aR-315
	N132T4	aR-350	aR-350
	N165	aR-400	aR-400
	N200T4	aR-550	aR-550
	N250T4	aR-630	aR-630
	N315T4	aR-800	aR-700
E	P355-P450	aR-900	aR-900
F	P500-P560	aR-1600	aR-1600
	P630-P710	aR-2000	aR-2000
	P800-P1M0	aR-2500	aR-2500

Table 5.10 380-480 V, Fuse Recommendations, Frame Sizes D, E and F

5

Enclosure size	Power [kW]	Recommended fuse size	Recommended Max. fuse
D	N75K	aR-160	aR-160
	N90K-N160	aR-160	aR-160
	N200-N400	aR-550	aR-550
E	P450-P500T7	aR-700	aR-700
	P560-P630T7	aR-900 (500-560)	aR-900 (500-560)
F	P710-P1M0T7	aR-1600	aR-1600
	P1M2T7	aR-2000	aR-2000
	P1M4T7	aR-2500	aR-2500

Table 5.11 525-690 V, Fuse Recommendations, Frame Sizes D, E and F

### 5.3.9 Access to Control Terminals

All terminals to the control cables are located underneath the terminal cover on the front of the frequency converter. Remove the terminal cover with a screw driver.

### 5.3.10 Control Terminals

**Drawing reference numbers:**

1. 10 pole plug digital I/O
2. 3 pole plug RS-485 Bus
3. 6 pole analog I/O
4. USB Connection

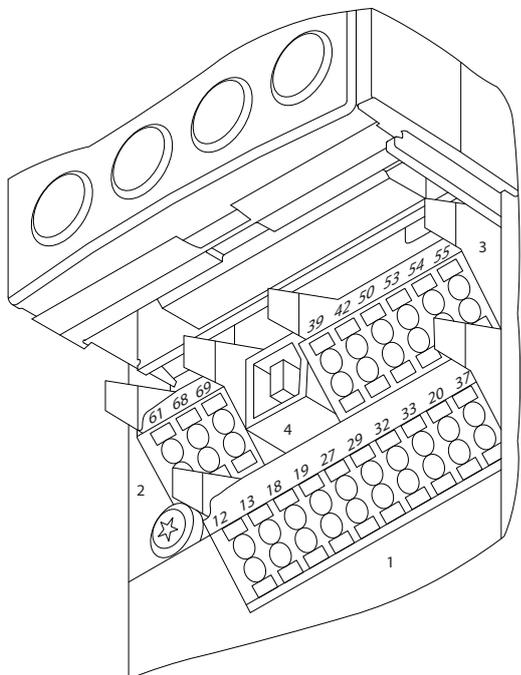


Illustration 5.46 Control Terminals (all Frame Sizes)

### 5.3.11 Control Cable Terminals

To mount the cable to the terminal:

1. Strip isolation of 9-10 mm
2. Insert a screw driver<sup>1)</sup> in the rectangular hole.
3. Insert the cable in the adjacent circular hole.
4. Remove the screw driver. The cable is now mounted to the terminal.

To remove the cable from the terminal:

1. Insert a screw driver<sup>1)</sup> in the square hole.
2. Pull out the cable.

<sup>1)</sup> Max. 0.4 x 2.5 mm

### Wiring to Control Terminals

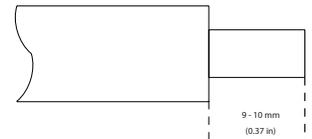


Illustration 5.47

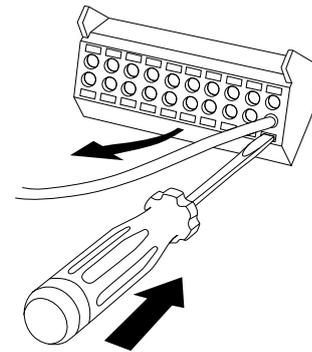


Illustration 5.48

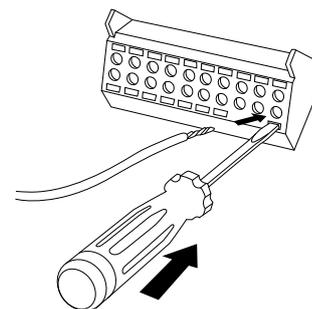


Illustration 5.49

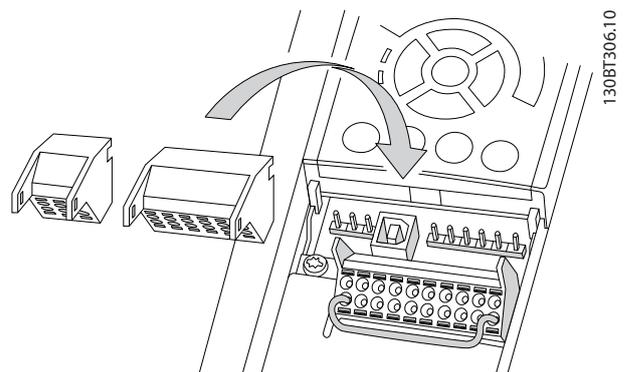


Illustration 5.50 Control Cable Terminals

### 5.3.12 Basic Wiring Example

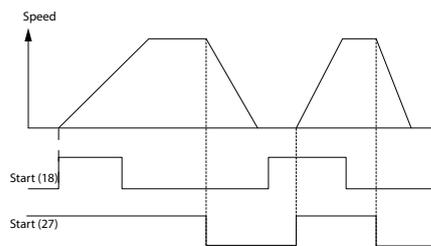
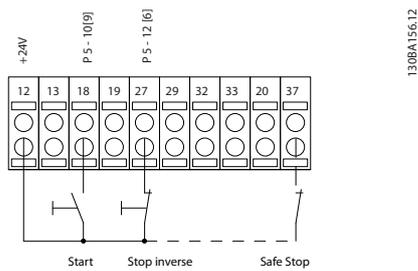
1. Mount terminals from the accessory bag to the front of the frequency converter.
2. Connect terminals 18 and 27 to +24 V (terminal 12/13)

Default settings:

18 = Start

27 = stop inverse

5



**Illustration 5.51 Terminal 37 available with Safe Stop Function only!**

### 5.3.13 Control Cable Length

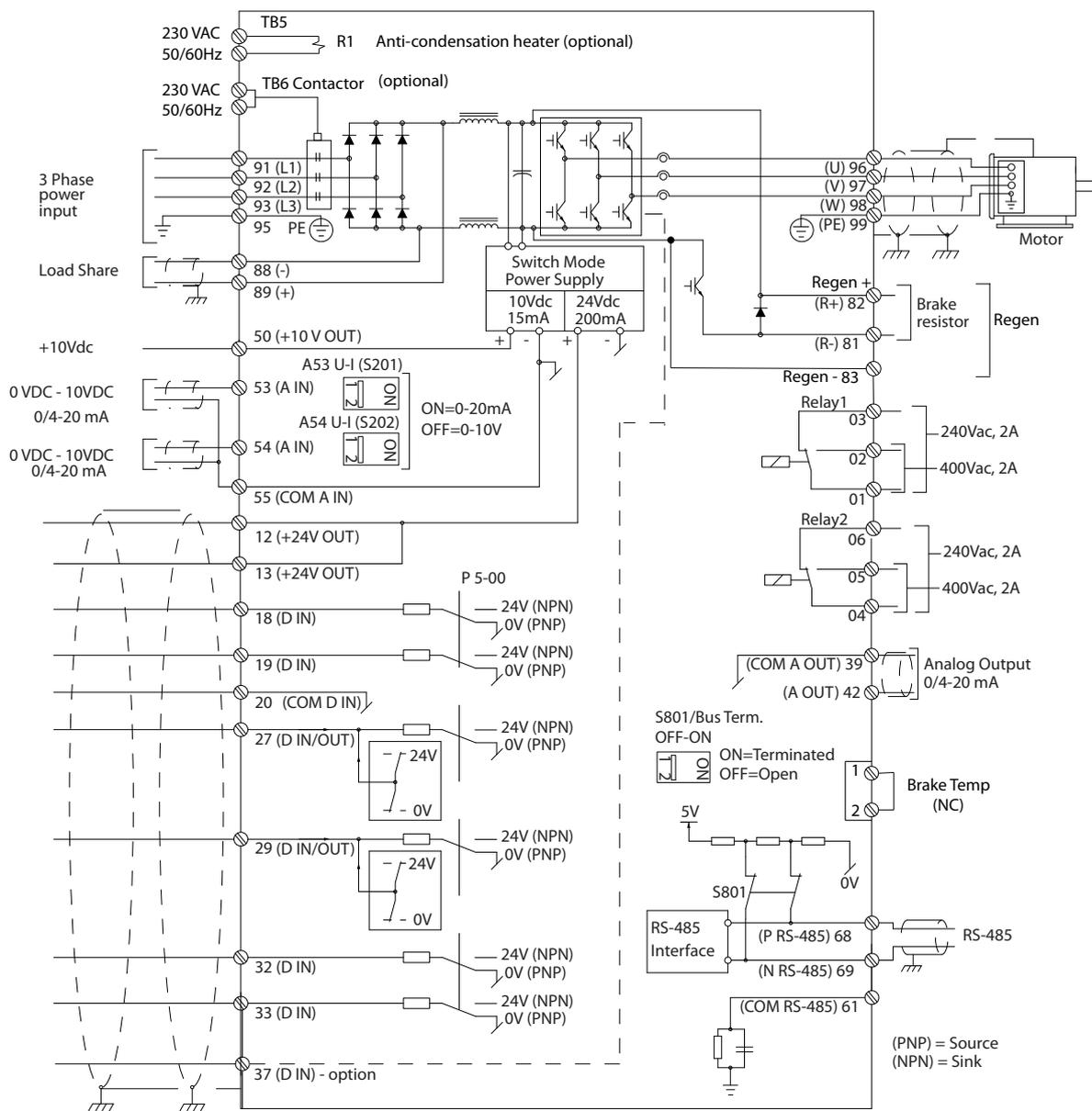
#### Digital in/digital out

Dependent on what electronics are being used, it is possible to calculate the maximum cable impedance based on the 4 kΩ frequency converter input impedance.

#### Analog in/analog out

Again the electronics used puts a limitation on the cable length.

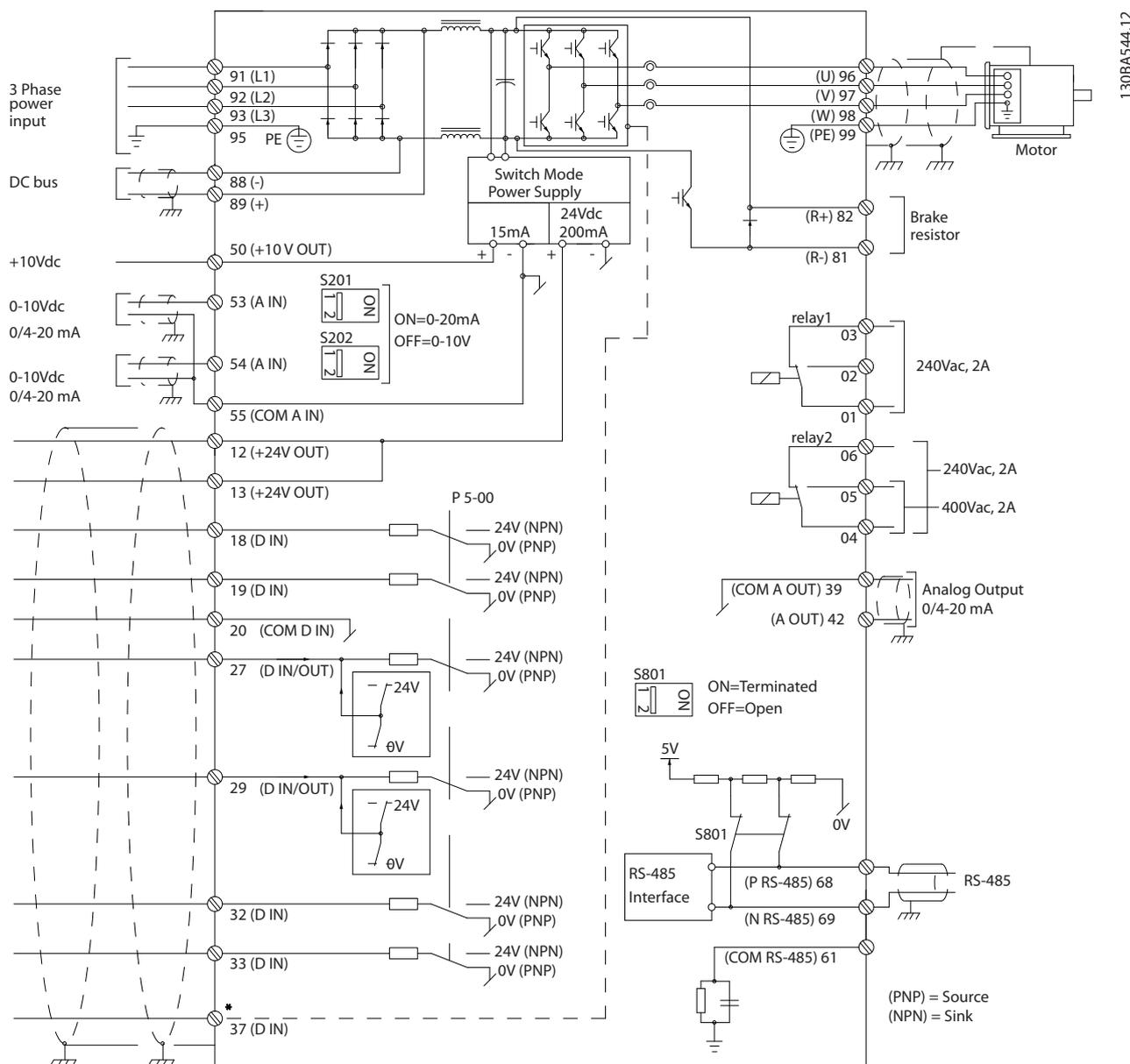
### 5.3.14 Electrical Installation, Control Cables



1-309C-54R 1.1

Illustration 5.52 Interconnect Diagram for D frames

5



130BA544.12

Illustration 5.53 Interconnect Diagram E-frames and F-frame (6-pulse)

\*Safe Stop input available with Safe Stop Function only

Very long control cables and analog signals, in rare cases, and depending on installation, result in 50/60 Hz earth loops due to noise from mains supply cables.

In this case, Break the screen or insert a 100 nF capacitor between screen and chassis.

The digital and analog in- and outputs must be connected separately to the common inputs (terminal 20, 55, 39) to avoid ground currents from both groups to affect other groups. For example, switching on the digital input disturbs the analog input signal.

**NOTE**

**Control cables must be screened.**

Use a clamp from the accessory bag to connect the screen to the frequency converter de-coupling plate for control cables.

See 5.10.3 Earthing of Screened/Armoured Control Cables for the correct termination of control cables.

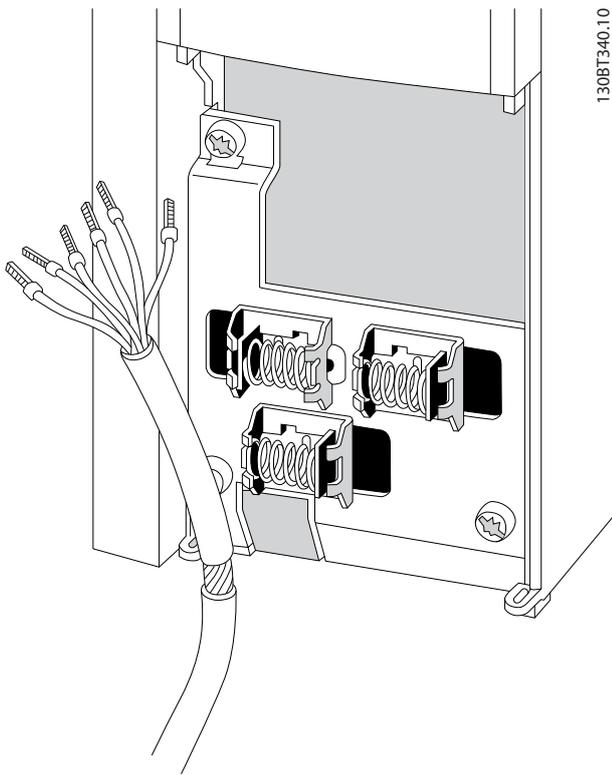


Illustration 5.54 Screened Control Cable

5.3.15 12-Pulse Control Cables

5

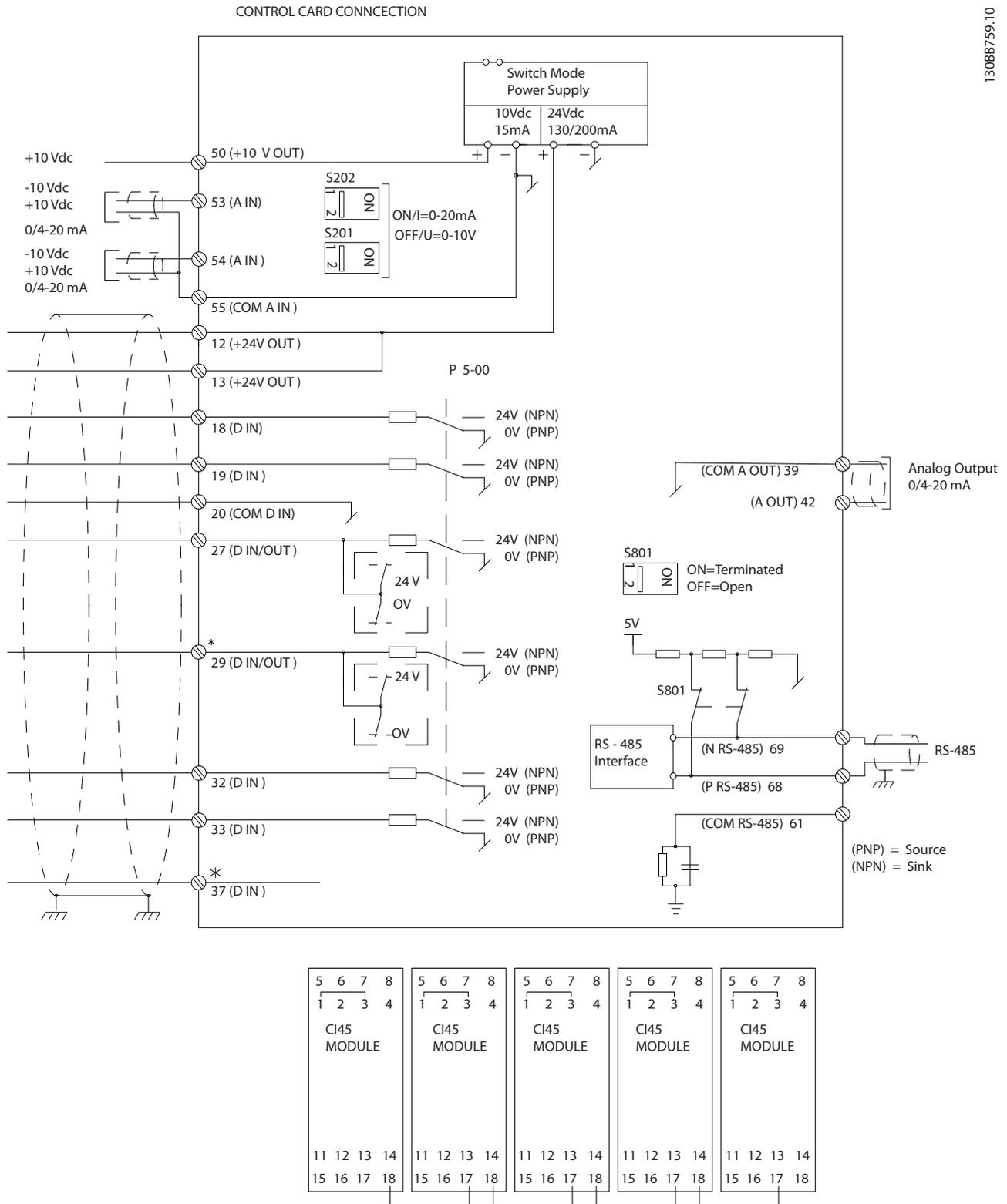
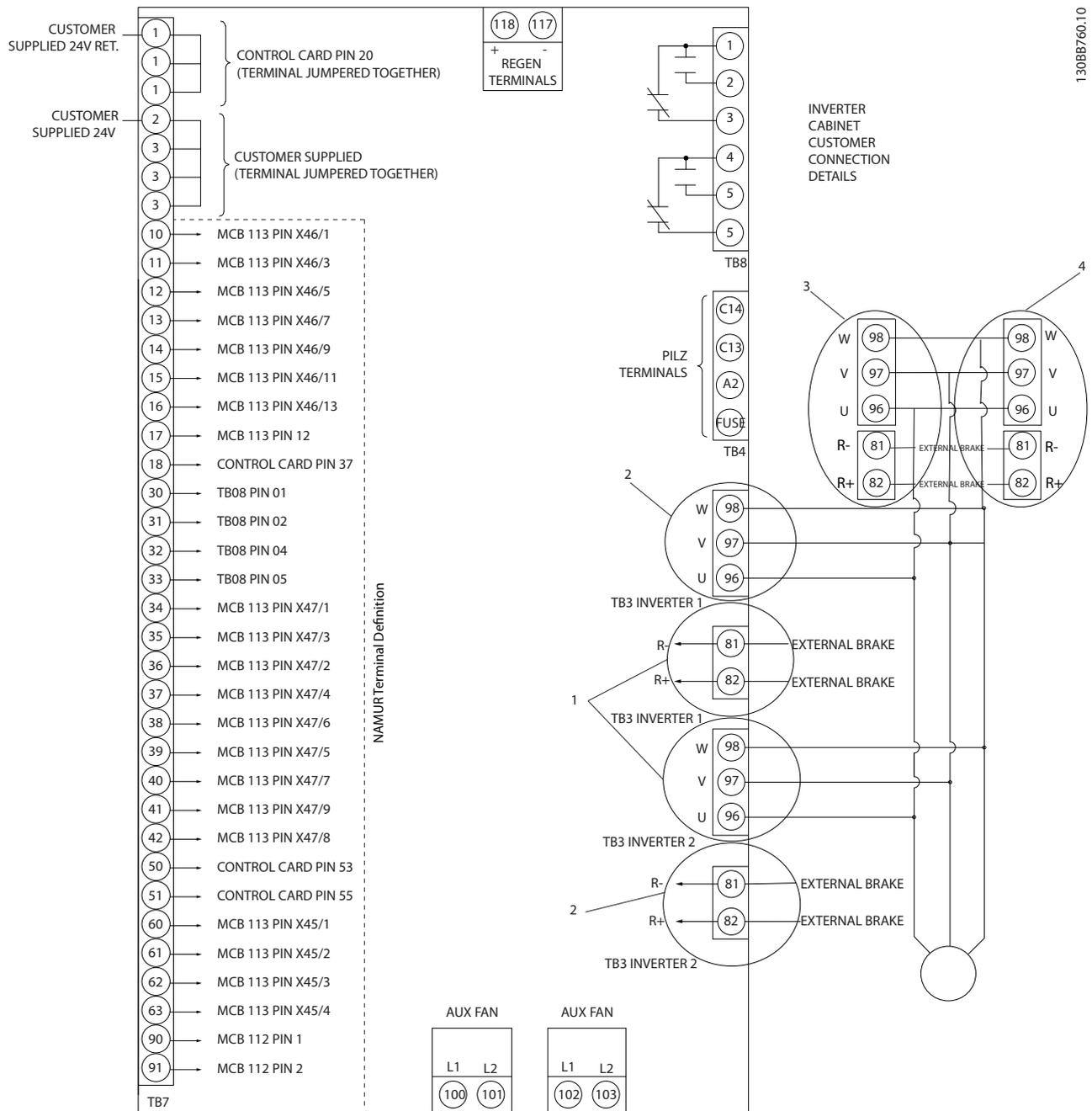


Illustration 5.55 Control Cable Diagram



5

Illustration 5.56 Diagram Showing all Electrical Terminals without Options

Terminal 37 is the input to be used for Safe Stop. For instructions on Safe Stop installation, refer to 5.7 Safe Stop Installation.

- 1) F8/F9 = (1) set of terminals.
- 2) F10/F11 = (2) sets of terminals.
- 3) F12/F13 = (3) sets of terminals.

Long control cables and analog signals, in rare cases, and depending on installation, result in 50/60 Hz earth loops due to noise from mains supply cables.

In such cases, break the screen or insert a 100 nF capacitor between screen and chassis if needed.

The digital and analog inputs and outputs must be connected separately to the frequency converter common inputs (terminal 20, 55, 39) to avoid earth currents from both groups to affect other groups. For example, switching on the digital input disturbs the analog input signal.

**Input polarity of control terminals**

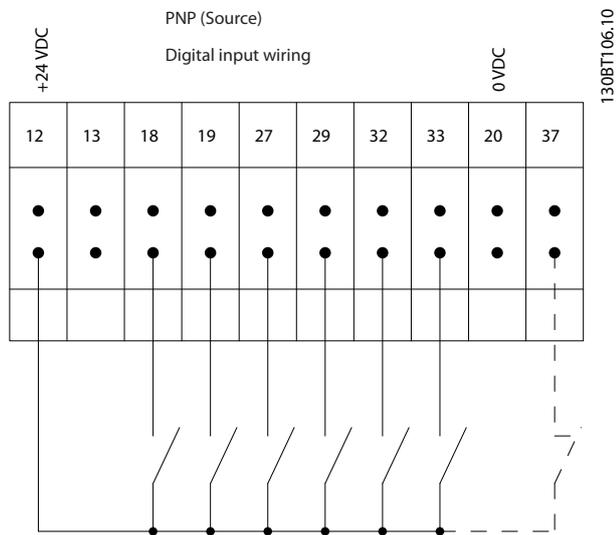


Illustration 5.57 Input Polarity of Control Terminals

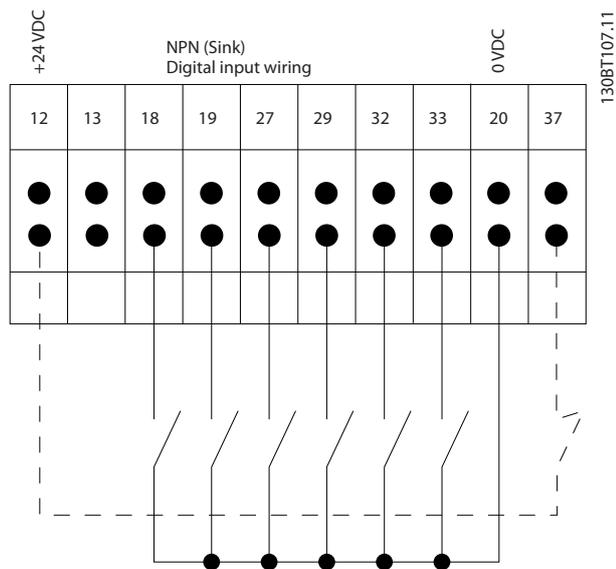


Illustration 5.58 Input Polarity of Control Terminals

**NOTE**

**Control cables must be screened/armoured.**

Connect the wires as described in the Operating Instruction for the frequency converter. Remember to connect the shields in a proper way to ensure optimum electrical immunity.

**5.3.16 Switches S201, S202 and S801**

Switches S201 (A53) and S202 (A54) are used to select a current (0–20 mA) or a voltage (0–10 V) configuration of the analog input terminals 53 and 54 respectively.

Switch S801 (BUS TER.) can be used to enable termination on the RS-485 port (terminals 68 and 69).

See *Illustration 5.52* and *Illustration 5.53*.

Default setting:

- S201 (A53) = OFF (voltage input)
- S202 (A54) = OFF (voltage input)
- S801 (Bus termination) = OFF

**NOTE**

**Change switch position at power off only.**

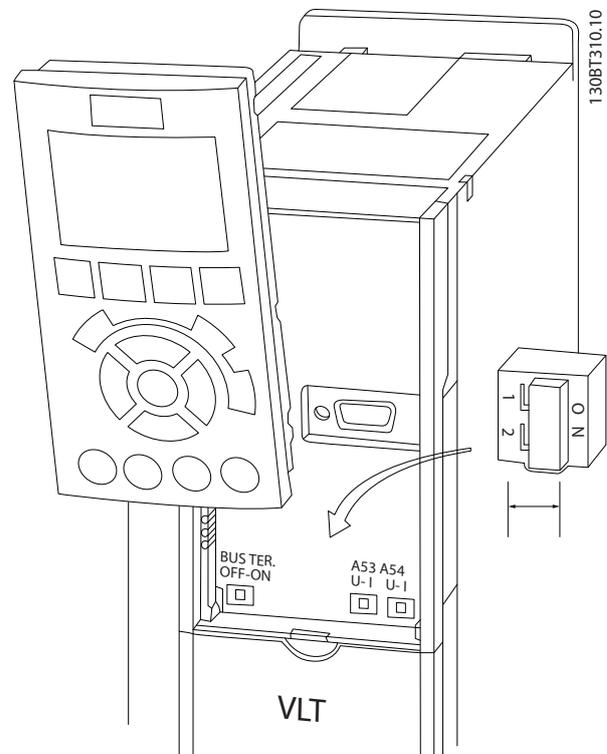


Illustration 5.59 Switch Locations

## 5.4 Connections - Frame Sizes D, E and F

### 5.4.1 Torque

When tightening electrical connections, it is important to tighten with the correct torque. Torque that is too low or too high results in a bad electrical connection. Use a torque wrench for correct torque.

#### NOTE

Always use a torque wrench to tighten the bolts.

Frame size	Terminal	Size	Torque nominal [Nm (in-lbs)]	Torque range [Nm (in-lbs)]	
D1h/D3h	Mains Motor Load sharing Regeneration	M10	29.5 (261)	19-40 (168-354)	
	Earth (ground) Brake	M8	14.5 (128)	8.5-20.5 (75-181)	
D2h/D4h	Mains Motor Regeneration Load Sharing Earth (ground)	M10	29.5 (261)	19-40 (168-354)	
	Brake	M8		8.5-20.5 (75-181)	
E	Mains	M10	19.1 (169)	17.7-20.5 (156-182)	
	Motor				
	Load Sharing				
	Earth				
	Regen Brake	M8	9.5 (85)	8.8-10.3 (78.2-90.8 in-lbs.)	
F	Mains	M10	19.1 (169)	17.7-20.5 (156-182 in-lbs.)	
	Motor				
	Load Sharing				
	Regen:	DC-	M8	9.5 (85)	8.8-10.3 (78.2-90.8)
		DC+	M10	19.1 (169)	17.7-20.5 (156-182)
	F8-F9 Regen	M10	19.1 (169)	17.7-20.5 (156-182.)	
	Earth	M8	9.5 (85)	8.8-10.3 (78.2-90.8)	
	Brake				

5

Table 5.12 Terminal Tightening Torques

### 5.4.2 Power Connections

#### Cabling and fusing

#### NOTE

##### Cables general

All cabling must comply with national and local regulations on cable cross-sections and ambient temperature. UL applications require 75 °C copper conductors. 75 and 90 °C copper conductors are thermally acceptable for the frequency converter to use in non-UL applications.

The power cable connections are situated as shown in *Illustration 5.60*. Dimensioning of cable cross section must be done in accordance with the current ratings and local legislation. See 3.1 *General Specifications* for details.

For protection of the frequency converter, the recommended fuses must be used or the unit must be with built-in fuses. Recommended fuses are listed in the Operating Instructions. Always ensure that proper fusing is made according to local regulation.

The mains connection is fitted to the mains switch if included.

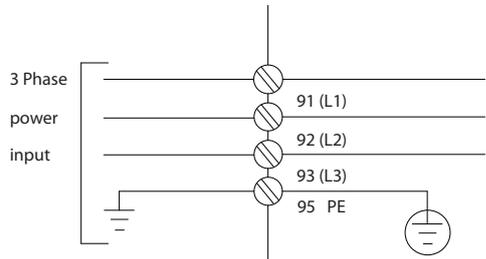


Illustration 5.60 Power Cable Connections

#### NOTE

The motor cable must be screened/armoured. If an unscreened/unarmoured cable is used, some EMC requirements are not complied with. Use a screened/armoured motor cable to comply with EMC emission specifications. For more information, see 5.10 *EMC-correct Installation*.

See 3.1 *General Specifications* for correct dimensioning of motor cable cross-section and length.

#### Screening of cables

Avoid installation with twisted screen ends (pigtailed). They spoil the screening effect at higher frequencies. If it is necessary to break the screen to install a motor isolator or motor contactor, the screen must be continued at the lowest possible HF impedance.

Connect the motor cable screen to both the de-coupling plate of the frequency converter and to the metal housing of the motor.

Make the screen connections with the largest possible surface area (cable clamp) by using the supplied installation devices within the frequency converter.

#### Cable-length and cross-section

The frequency converter has been EMC tested with a given length of cable. Keep the motor cable as short as possible to reduce the noise level and leakage currents.

#### Switching frequency

When frequency converters are used together with Sine-wave filters to reduce the acoustic noise from a motor, the switching frequency must be set according to the instructions in 14-01 *Switching Frequency*.

Term. no.	96	97	98	99	
	U	V	W	PE <sup>1)</sup>	Motor voltage 0-100% of mains voltage. 3 wires out of motor
	U1	V1	W1	PE <sup>1)</sup>	Delta-connected
	W2	U2	V2		6 wires out of motor
	U1	V1	W1	PE <sup>1)</sup>	Star-connected U2, V2, W2 U2, V2, and W2 to be interconnected separately.

Table 5.13 Motor Cable Connection

<sup>1)</sup>Protected Earth Connection

#### NOTE

In motors without phase insulation paper or other insulation reinforcement suitable for operation with voltage supply (such as a frequency converter), fit a Sine-wave filter on the output of the frequency converter.

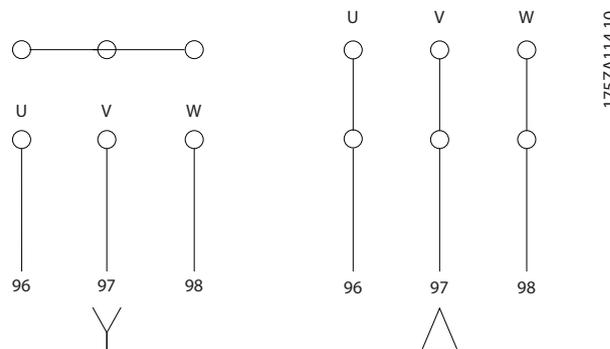


Illustration 5.61 Motor Cable Connection

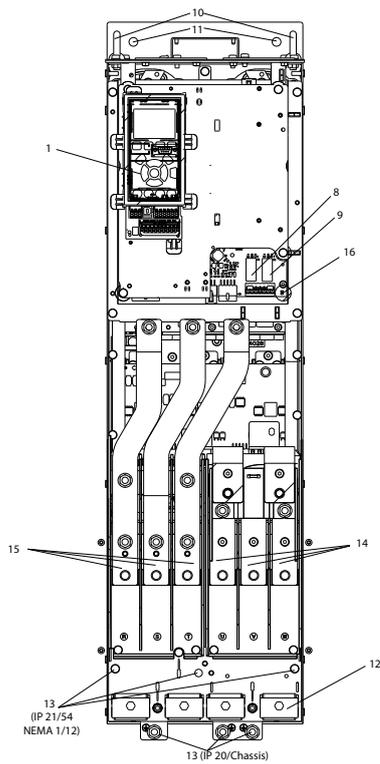


Illustration 5.62 D-Frame Interior Components

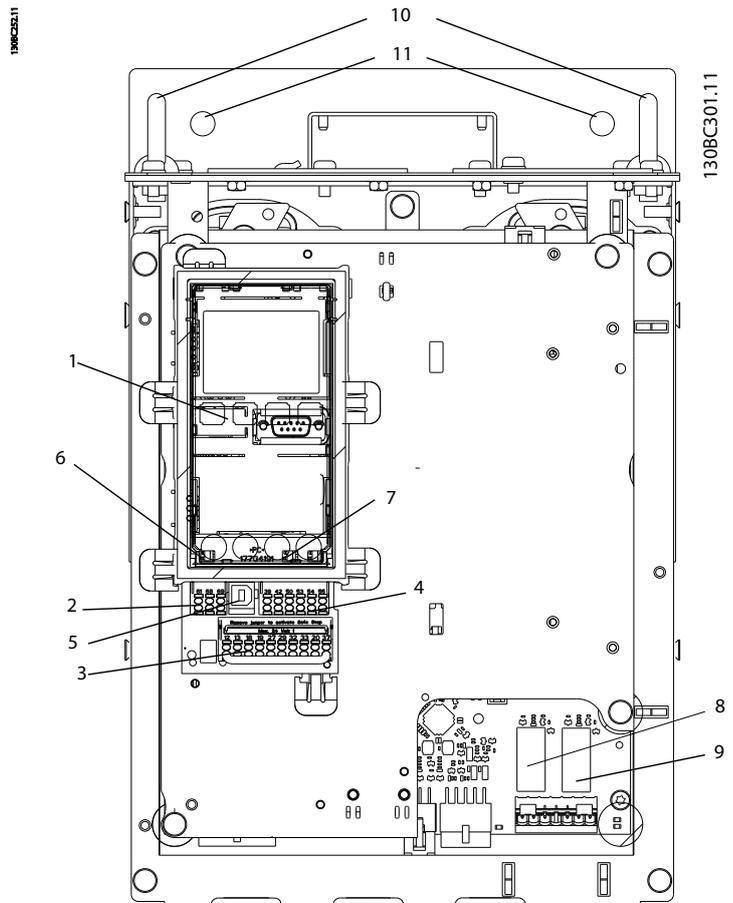


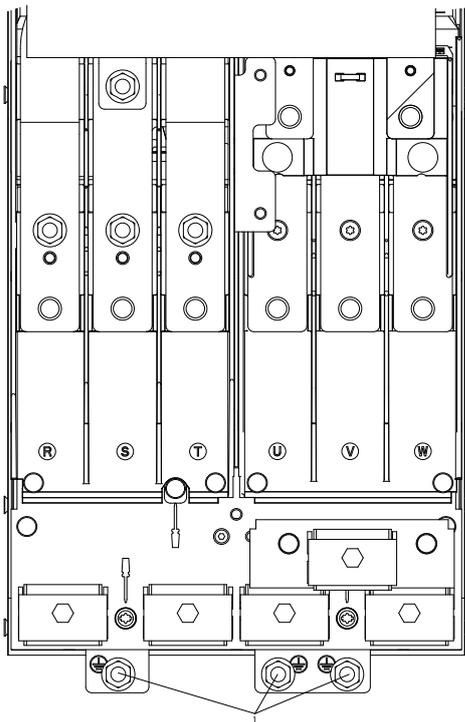
Illustration 5.63 Close-up View: LCP and Control Functions

5

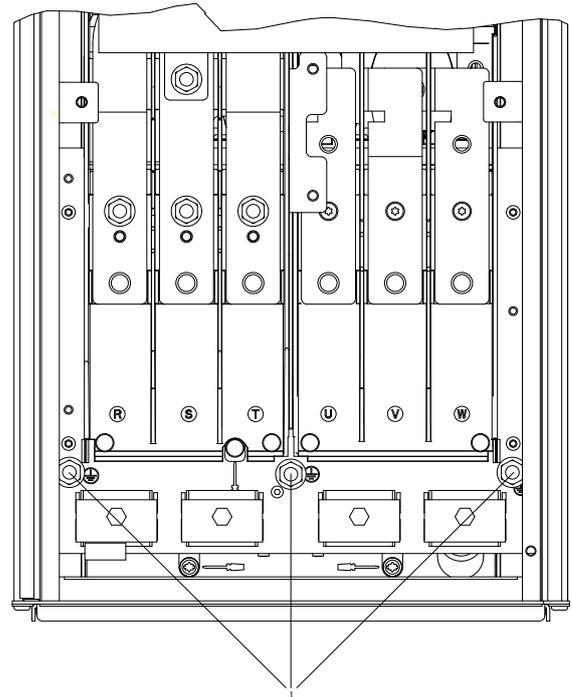
1	LCP (Local Control Panel)	9	Relay 2 (04, 05, 06)
2	RS-485 serial bus connector	10	Lifting ring
3	Digital I/O and 24 V power supply	11	Mounting slot
4	analog I/O connector	12	Cable clamp (PE)
5	USB connector	13	Earth (ground)
6	Serial bus terminal switch	14	Motor output terminals 96 (U), 97 (V), 98 (W)
7	analog switches (A53), (A54)	15	Mains input terminals 91 (L1), 92 (L2), 93 (L3)
8	Relay 1 (01, 02, 03)		

Table 5.14 Legend to Illustration 5.62 and Illustration 5.63.

5



130BC523.10



130BC523.10

Illustration 5.64 1) Position of Earth Terminals IP20 (chassis), D-Frame Sizes

Illustration 5.65 1) Position of Earth Terminals IP21 (NEMA type 1) and IP54 (NEMA type 12), D-Frame Sizes

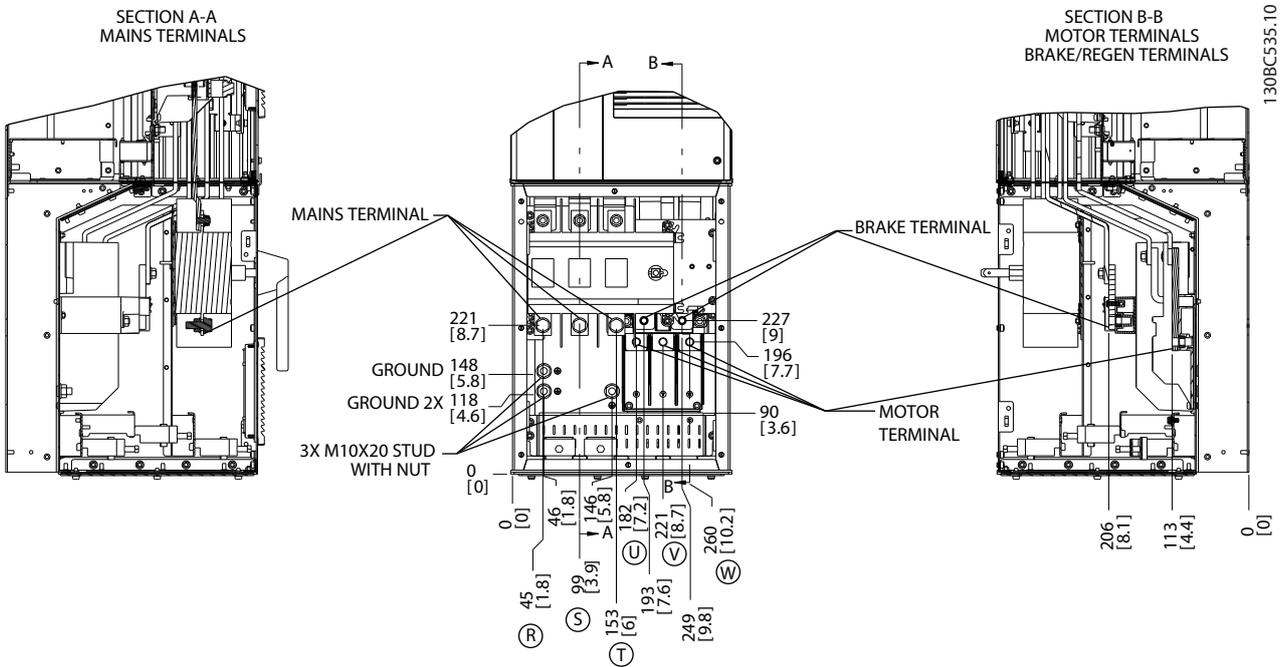


Illustration 5.66 Terminal Locations, D5h with Disconnect Option

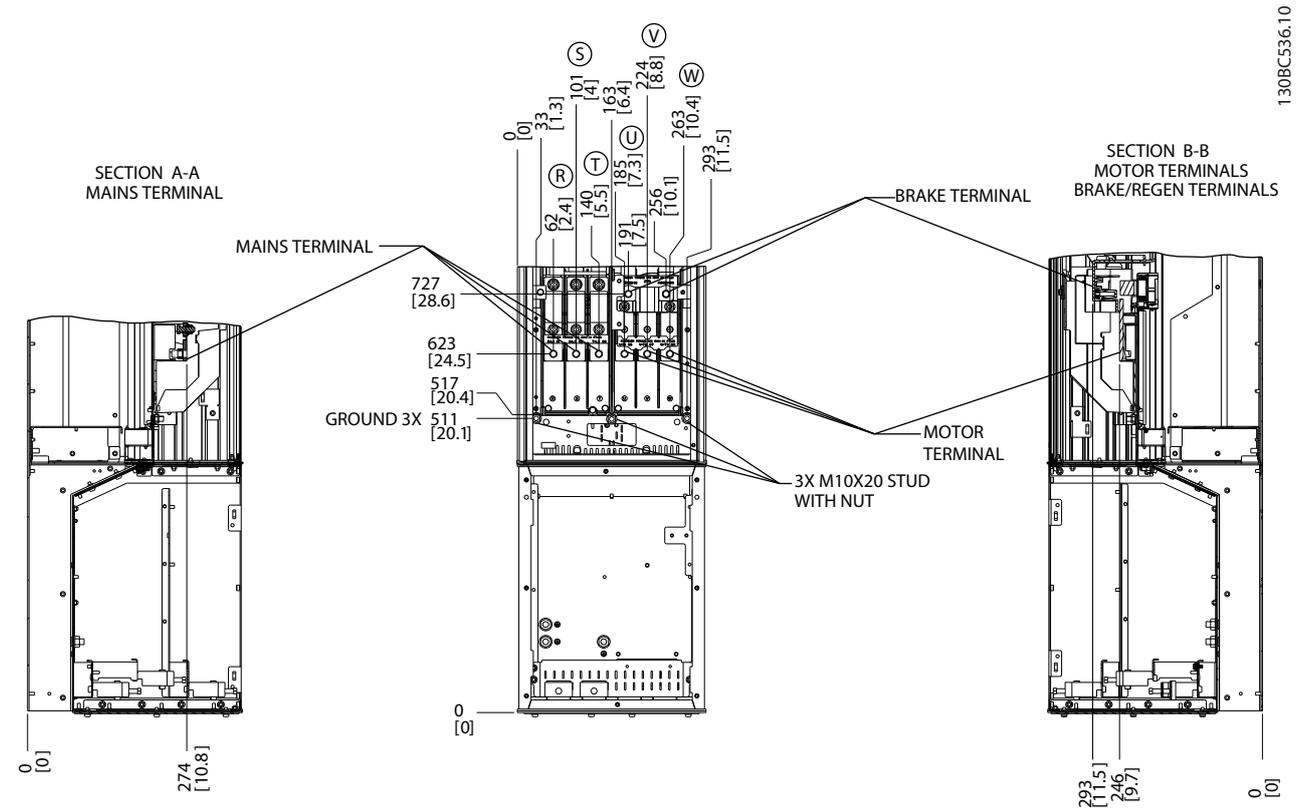


Illustration 5.67 Terminal Locations, D5h with Brake Option

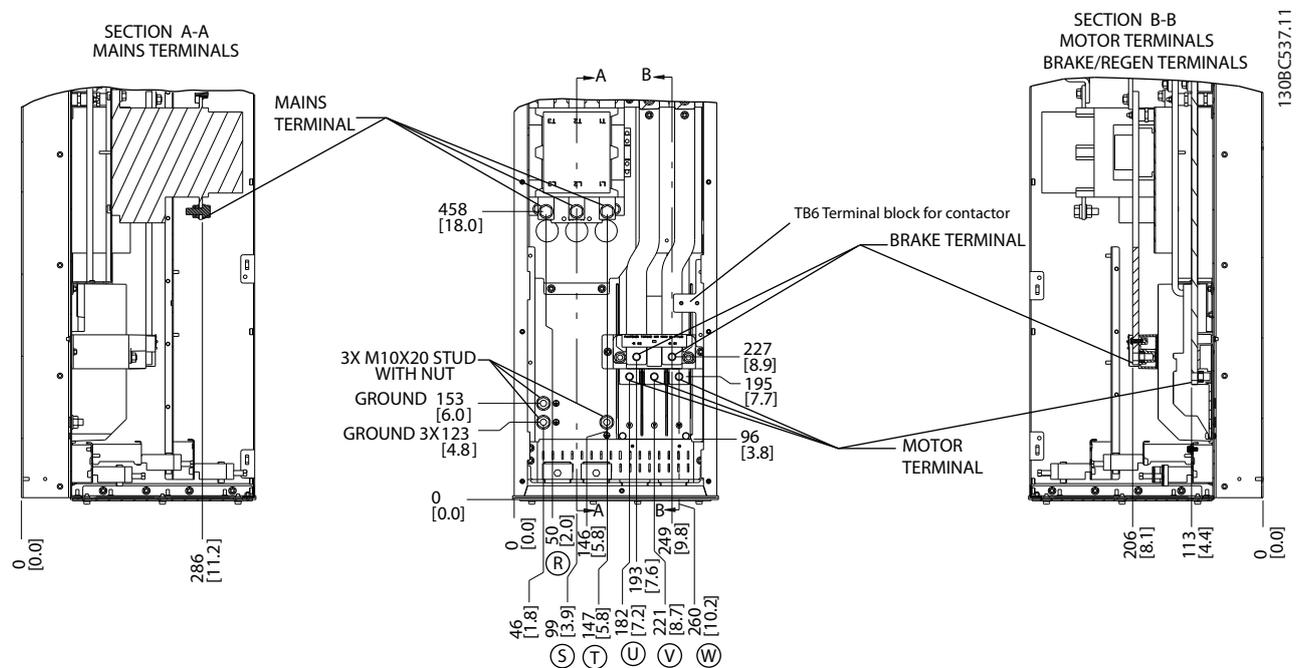


Illustration 5.68 Terminal Locations, D6h with Contactor Option

5

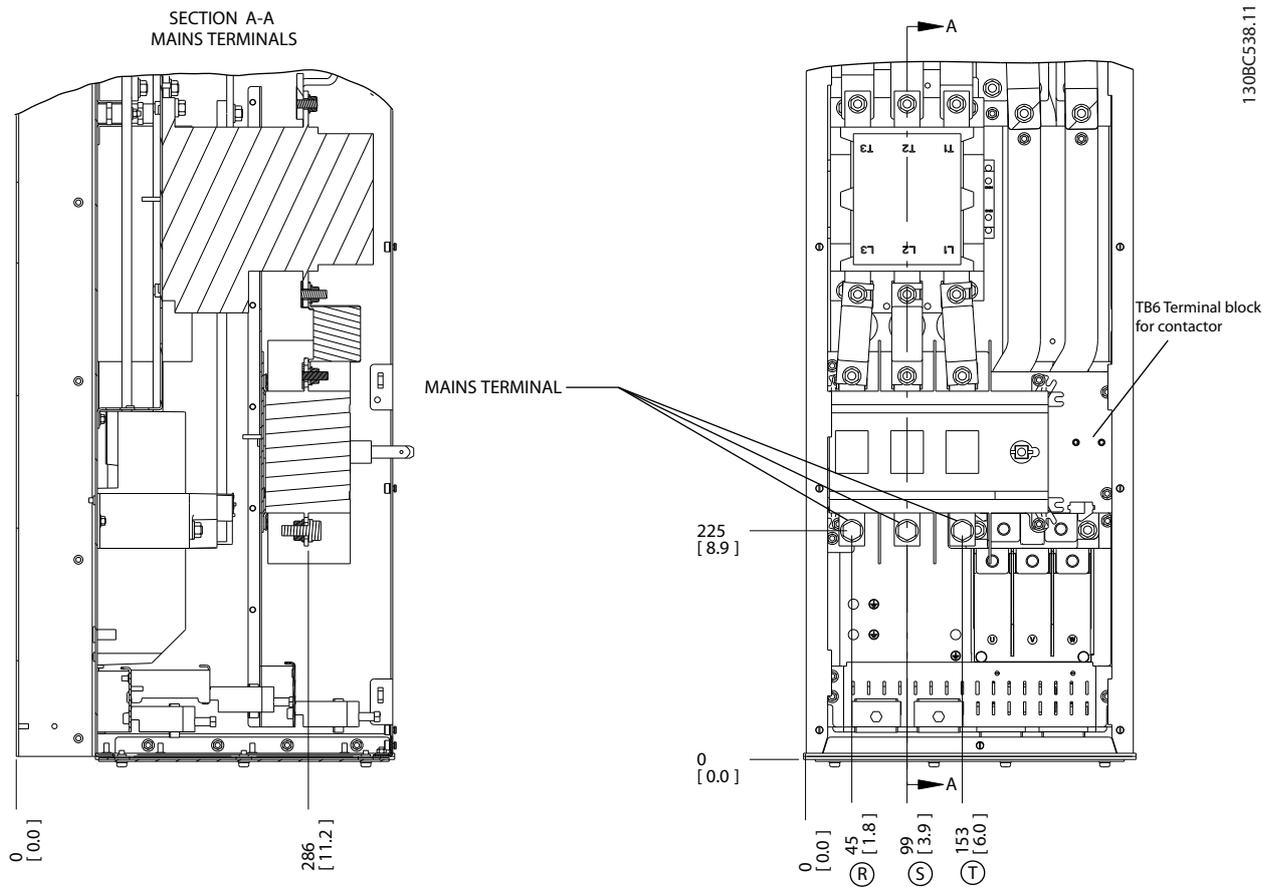
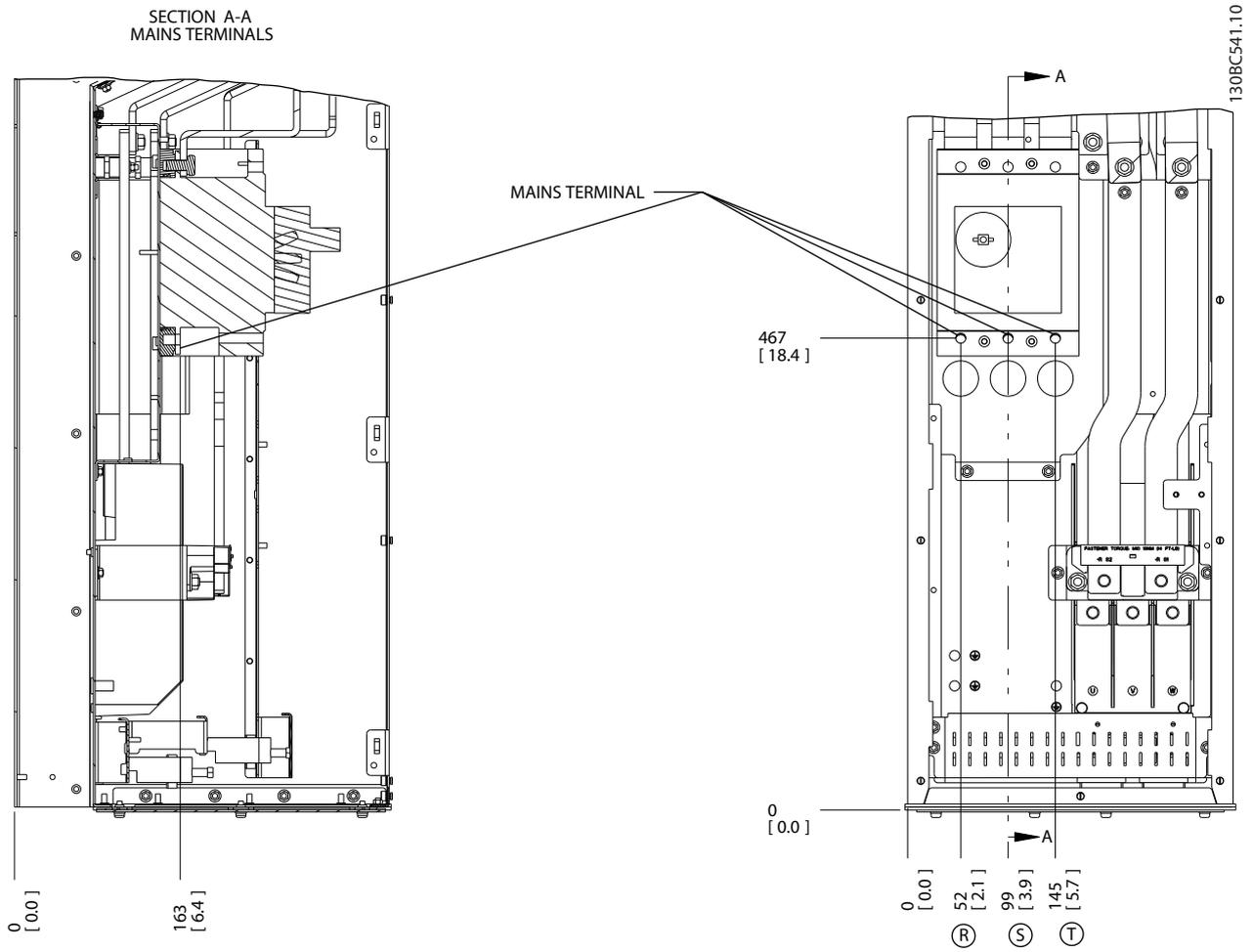


Illustration 5.69 Terminal Locations, D6h with Contactor and Disconnect Options



5

Illustration 5.70 Terminal Locations, D6h with Circuit Breaker Option

5

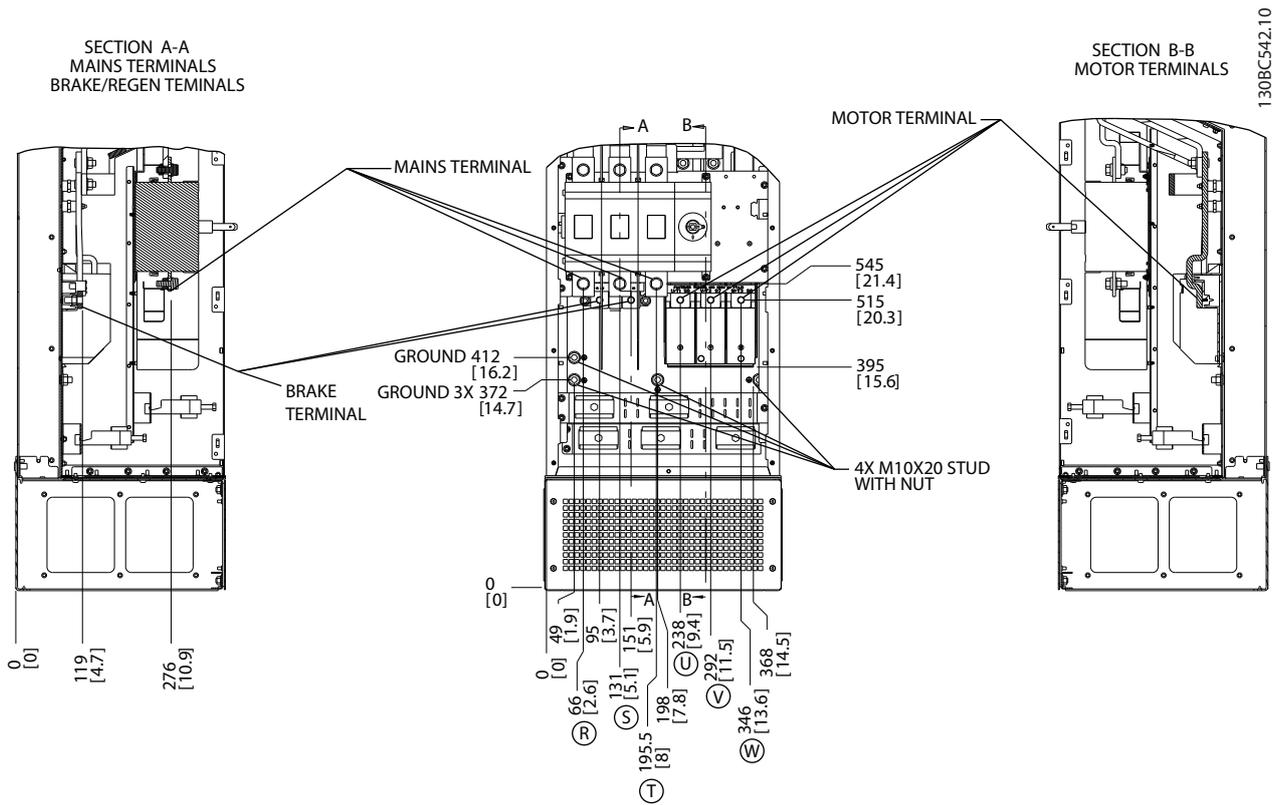
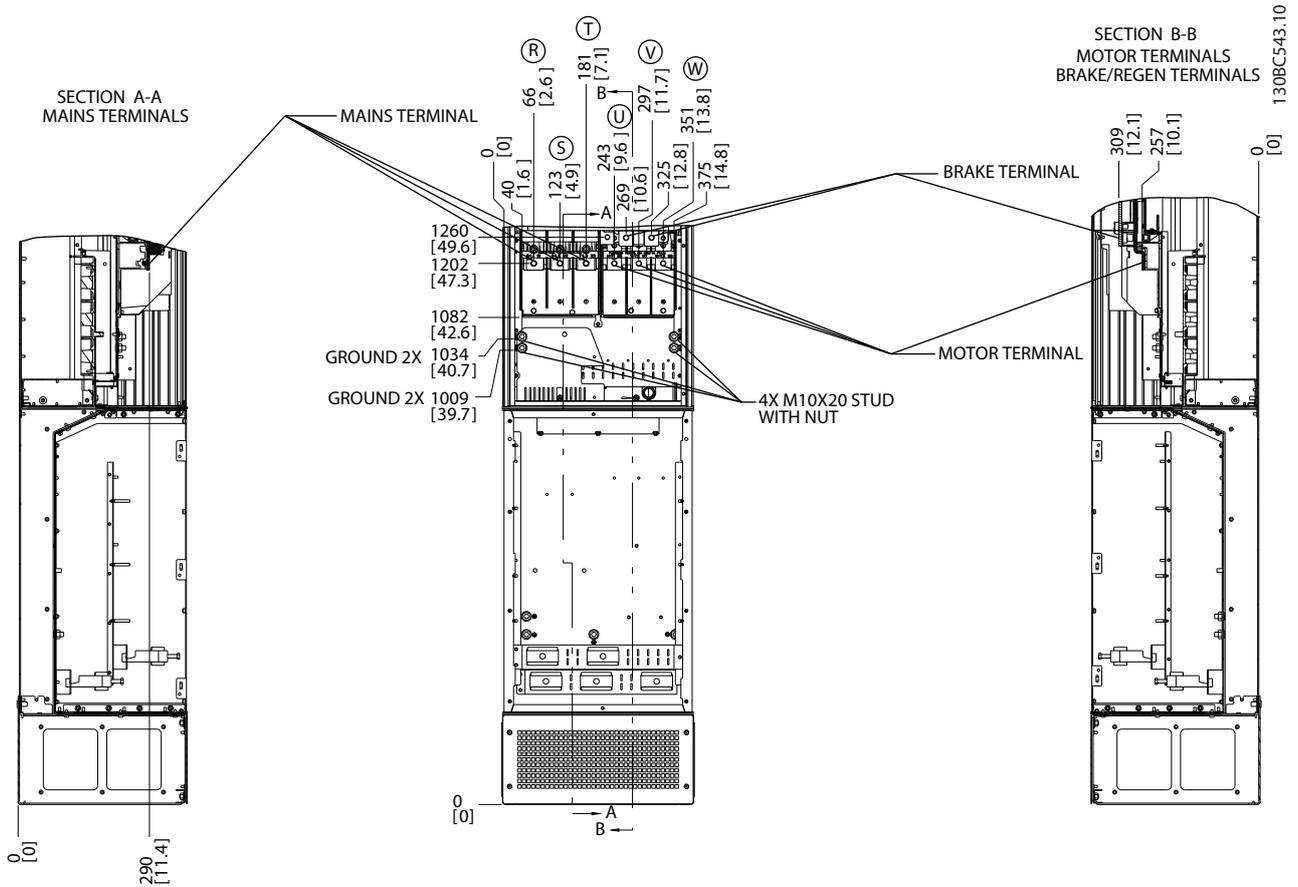


Illustration 5.71 Terminal Locations, D7h with Disconnect Option



5

Illustration 5.72 Terminal Locations, D7h with Brake Option

5

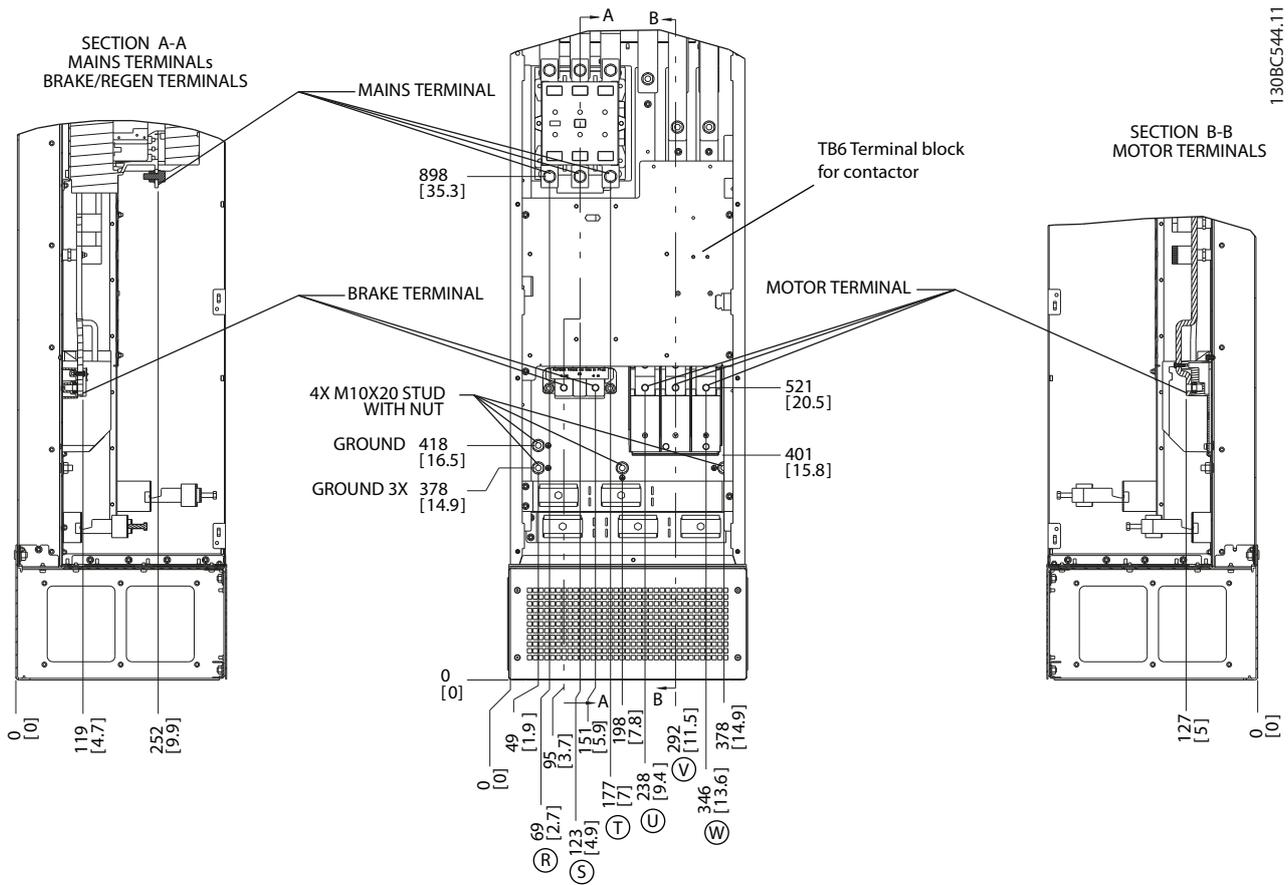
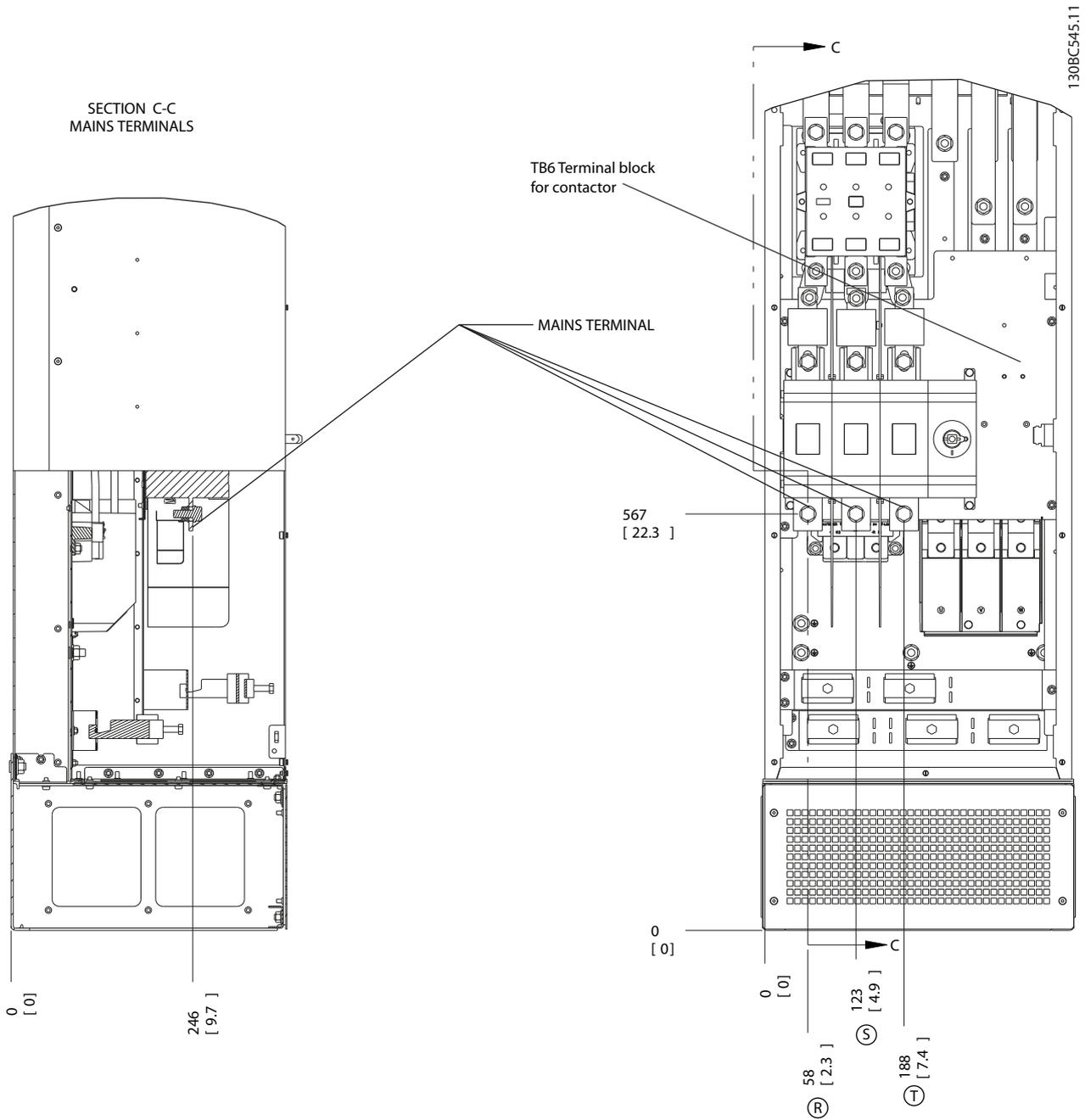


Illustration 5.73 Terminal Locations, D8h with Contactor Option



5

Illustration 5.74 Terminal Locations, D8h with Contactor and Disconnect Options

5

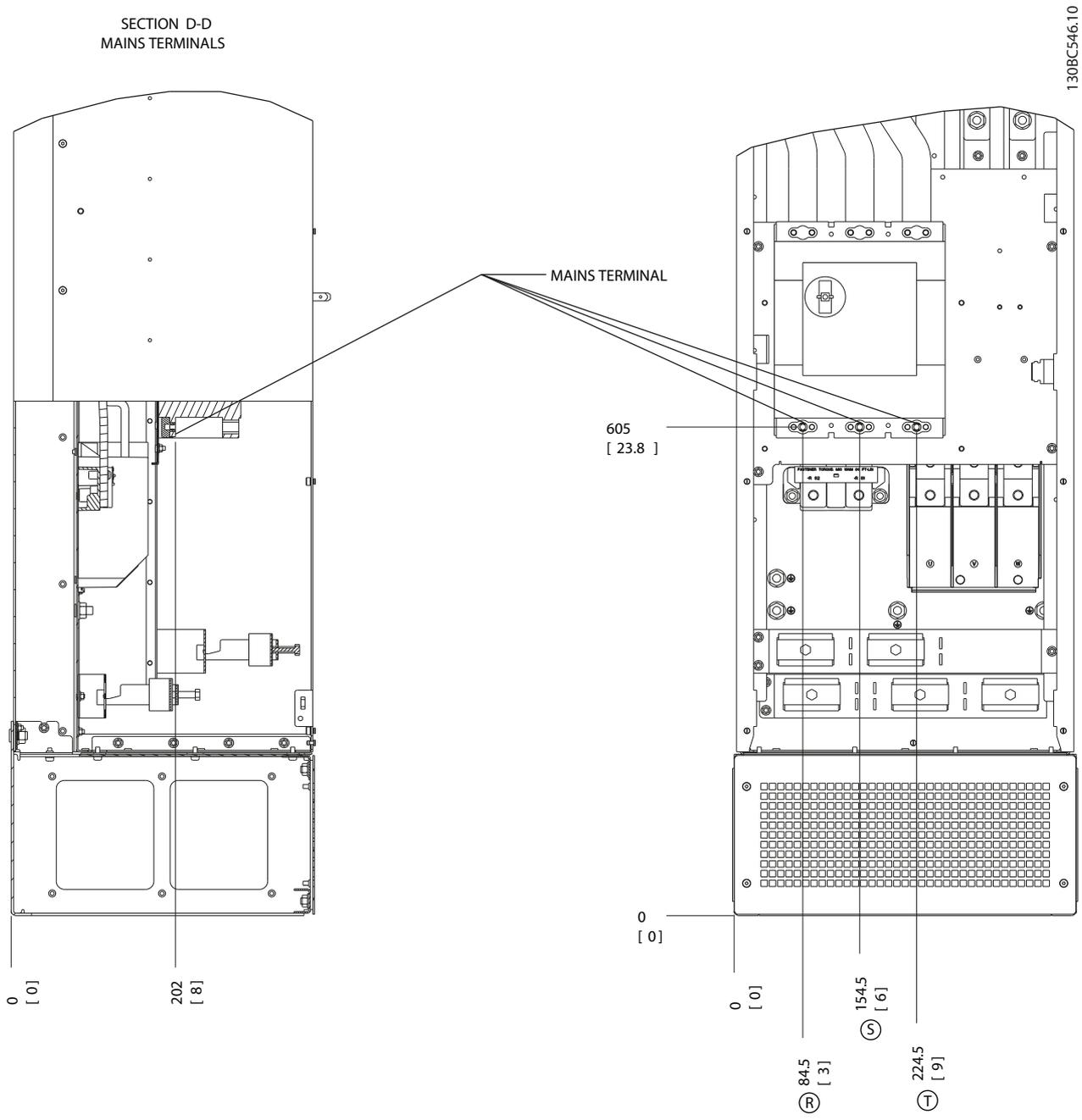
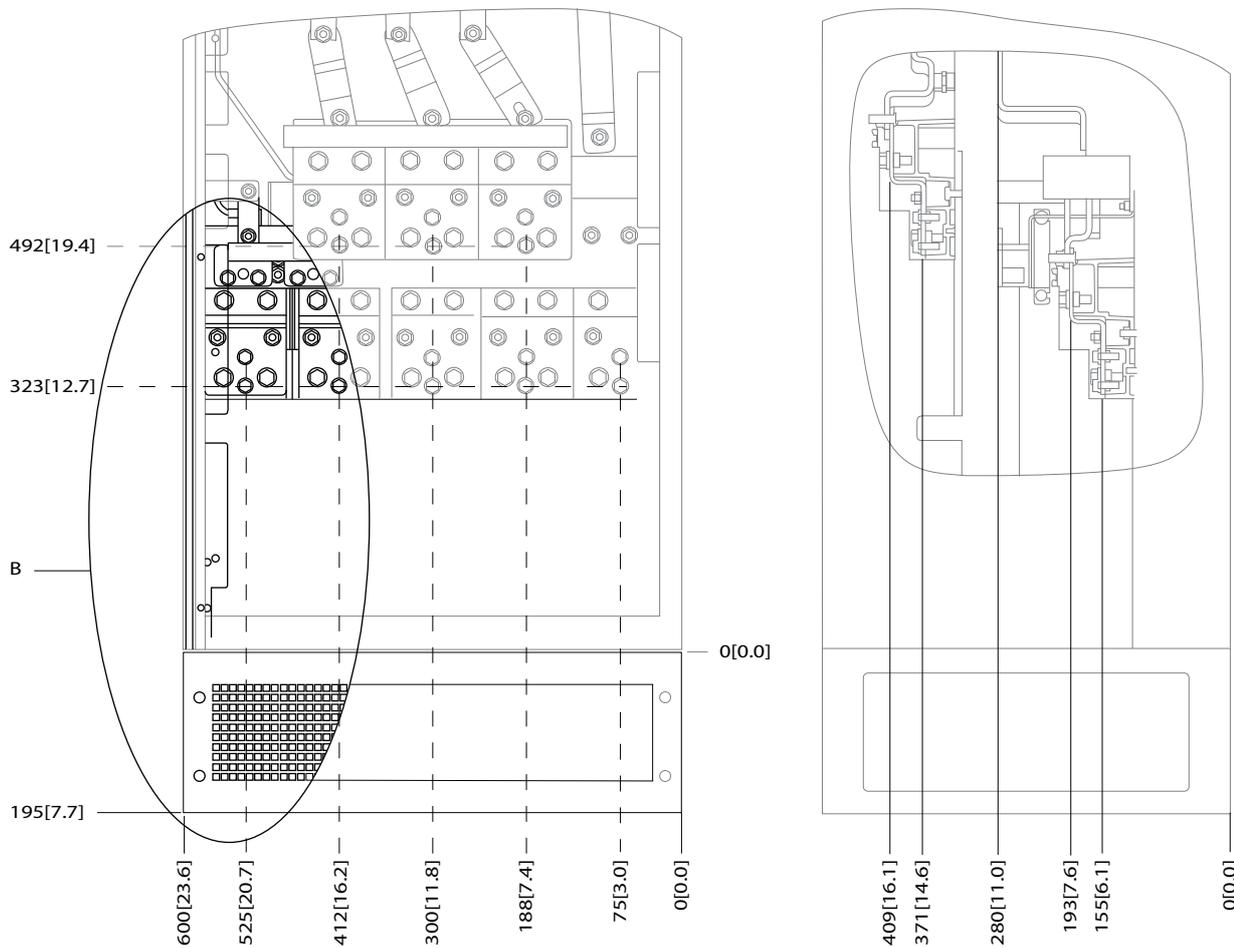


Illustration 5.75 Terminal Locations, D8h with Circuit Breaker Option

**Terminal Locations - E1**

Take the following position of the terminals into consideration when designing the cable access.



**Illustration 5.76 IP21 (NEMA Type 1) and IP54 (NEMA Type 12) Enclosure Power Connection Positions**

5

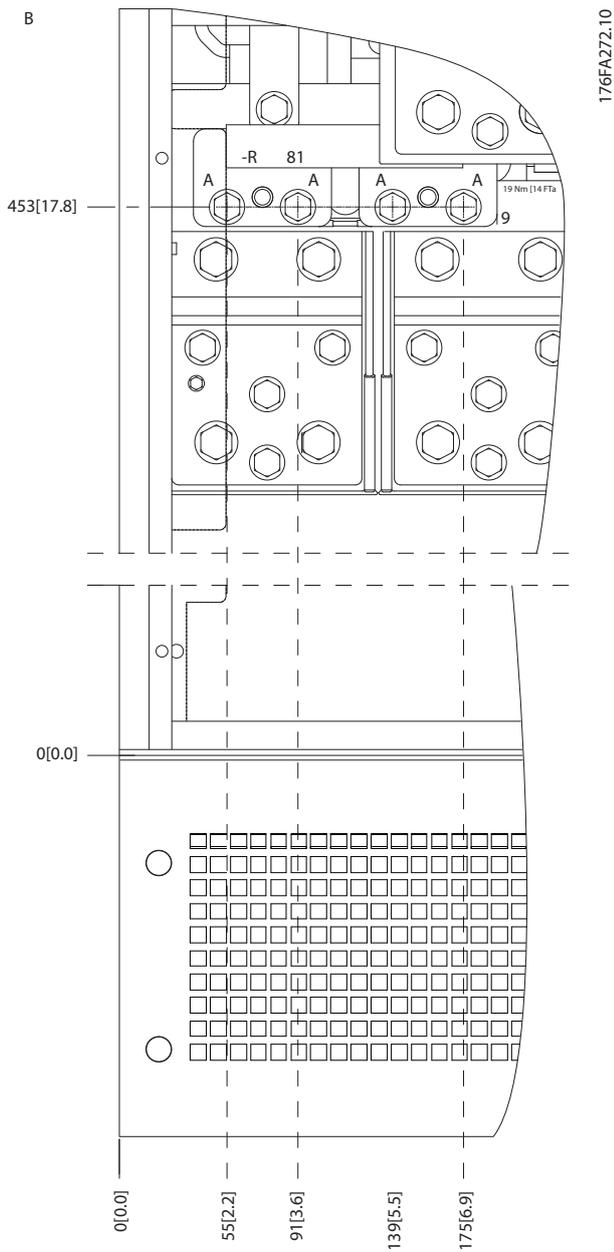
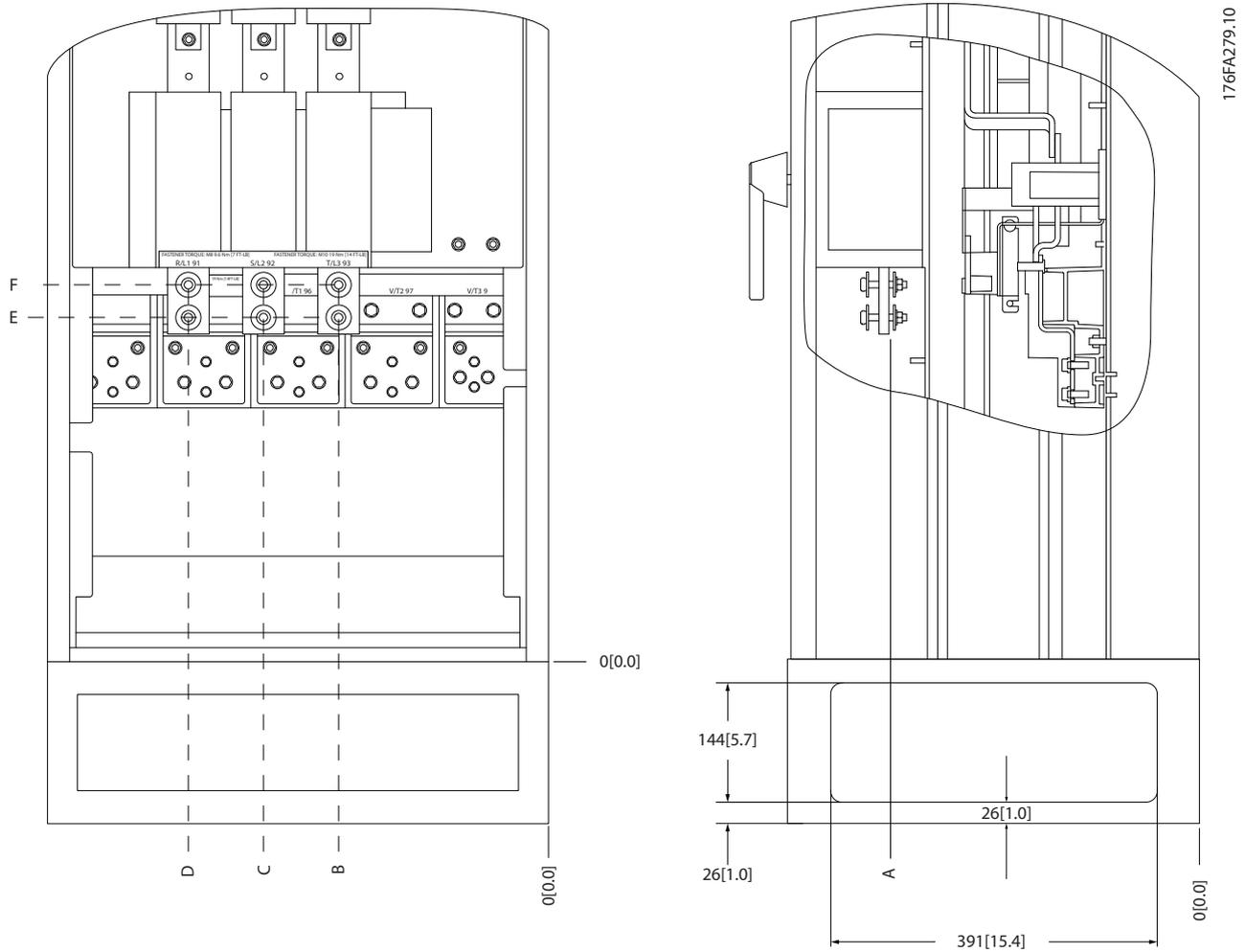


Illustration 5.77 IP21 (NEMA type 1) and IP54 (NEMA type 12)  
Enclosure Power Connection Positions (detail B)



5

Illustration 5.78 IP21 (NEMA type 1) and IP54 (NEMA type 12) Enclosure Power Connection Position of Disconnect Switch

Frame size	Unit type	Dimension for disconnect terminal					
E1	IP54/IP21 UL and NEMA1/NEMA12						
	250/315 kW (400 V) and 355/450-500/630 kW (690 V)	381 (15.0)	253 (9.9)	253 (9.9)	431 (17.0)	562 (22.1)	N/A
	315/355-400/450 kW (400 V)	371 (14.6)	371 (14.6)	341 (13.4)	431 (17.0)	431 (17.0)	455 (17.9)

Table 5.15 Legend to Illustration 5.78

Terminal locations - Frame size E2

Consider the following position of the terminals when designing the cable access.

5

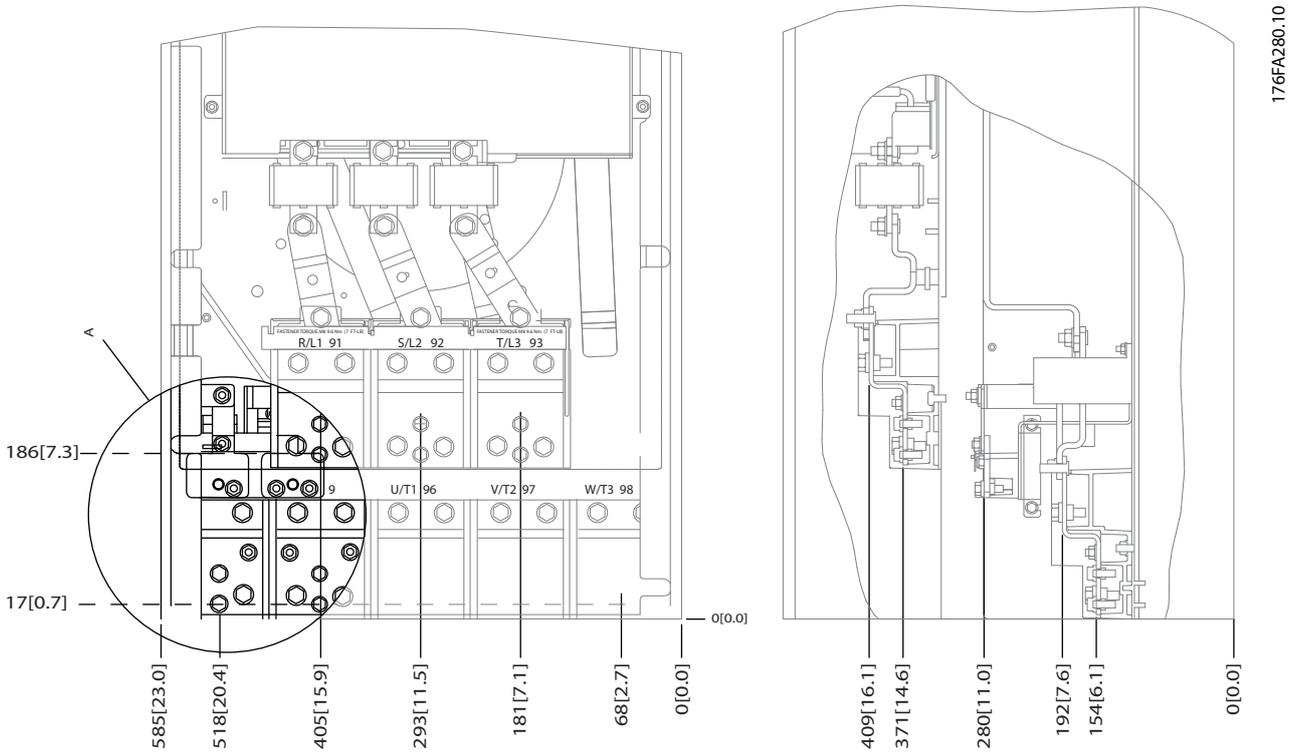


Illustration 5.79 IP00 Enclosure Power Connection Positions

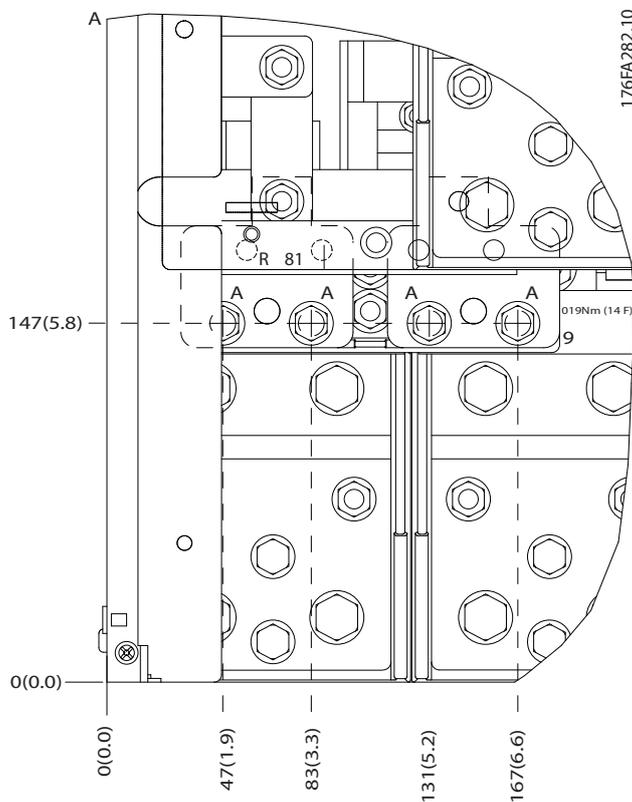


Illustration 5.80 IP00 Enclosure Power Connection Positions

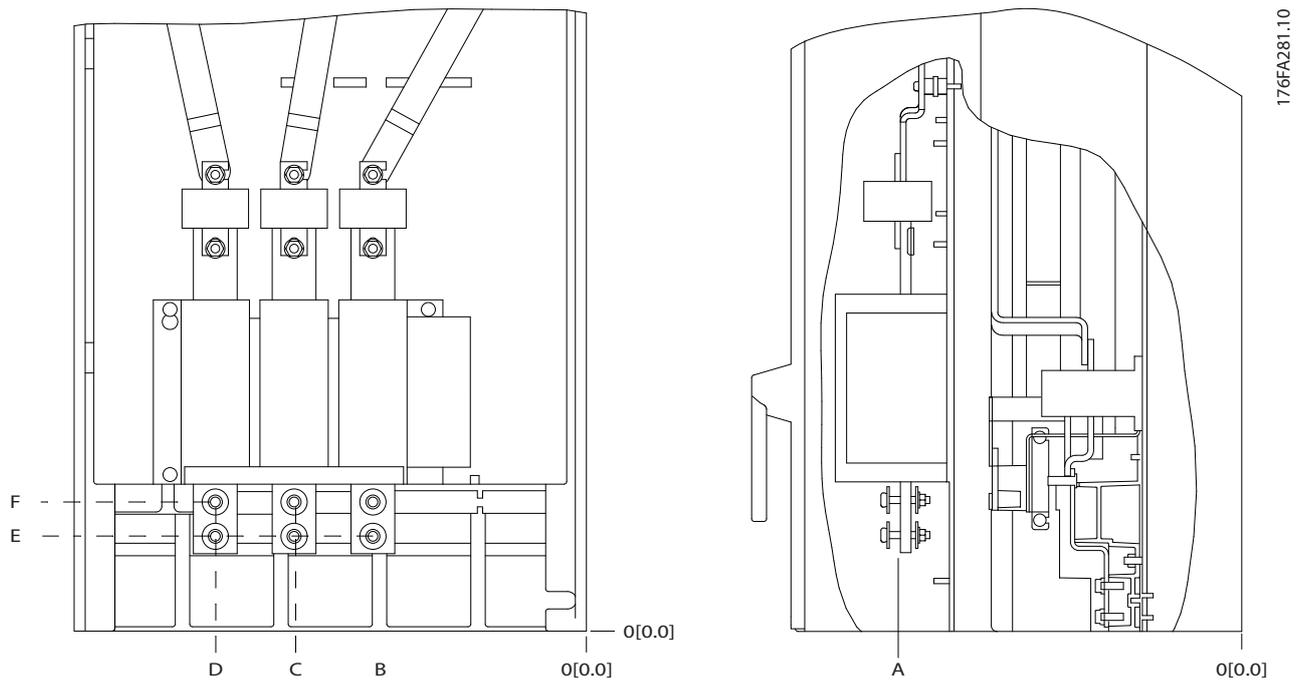


Illustration 5.81 IP00 Enclosure Power Connections, Position of Disconnect Switch

**NOTE**

The power cables are heavy and difficult to bend. Consider the optimum position of the frequency converter for ensuring easy installation of the cables.

Each terminal allows use of up to 4 cables with cable lugs or use of standard box lug. Earth is connected to a relevant termination point in the frequency converter.

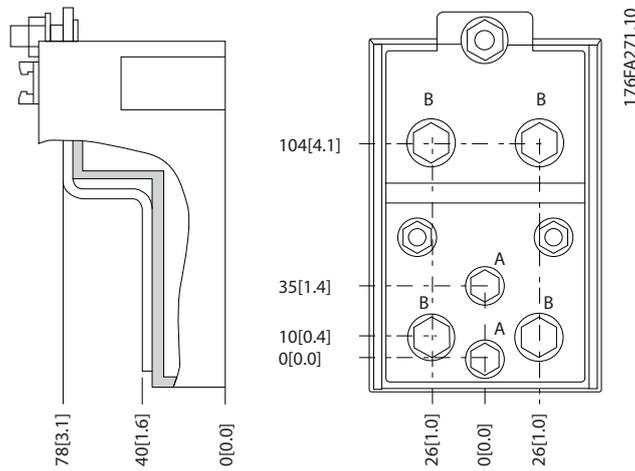


Illustration 5.82 Terminal in Detail

**NOTE**

Power connections can be made to positions A or B

Frame size	Unit type	Dimension for disconnect terminal					
		A	B	C	D	E	F
E2	IP00/CHASSIS						
	250/315kW (400 V) and 355/450-500/630 KW (690 V)	381 (15.0)	245 (9.6)	334 (13.1)	423 (16.7)	256 (10.1)	N/A
	315/355-400/450 kW (400 V)	383 (15.1)	244 (9.6)	334 (13.1)	424 (16.7)	109 (4.3)	149 (5.8)

Table 5.16 Power Connections

**5**

**NOTE**

The F-Frames have four different sizes, F1, F2, F3 and F4. The F1 and F2 consist of an inverter cabinet on the right and rectifier cabinet on the left. The F3 and F4 have an additional options cabinet to the left of the rectifier cabinet. The F3 is an F1 with an additional options cabinet. The F4 is an F2 with an additional options cabinet.

Terminal locations - Frame size F1 and F3

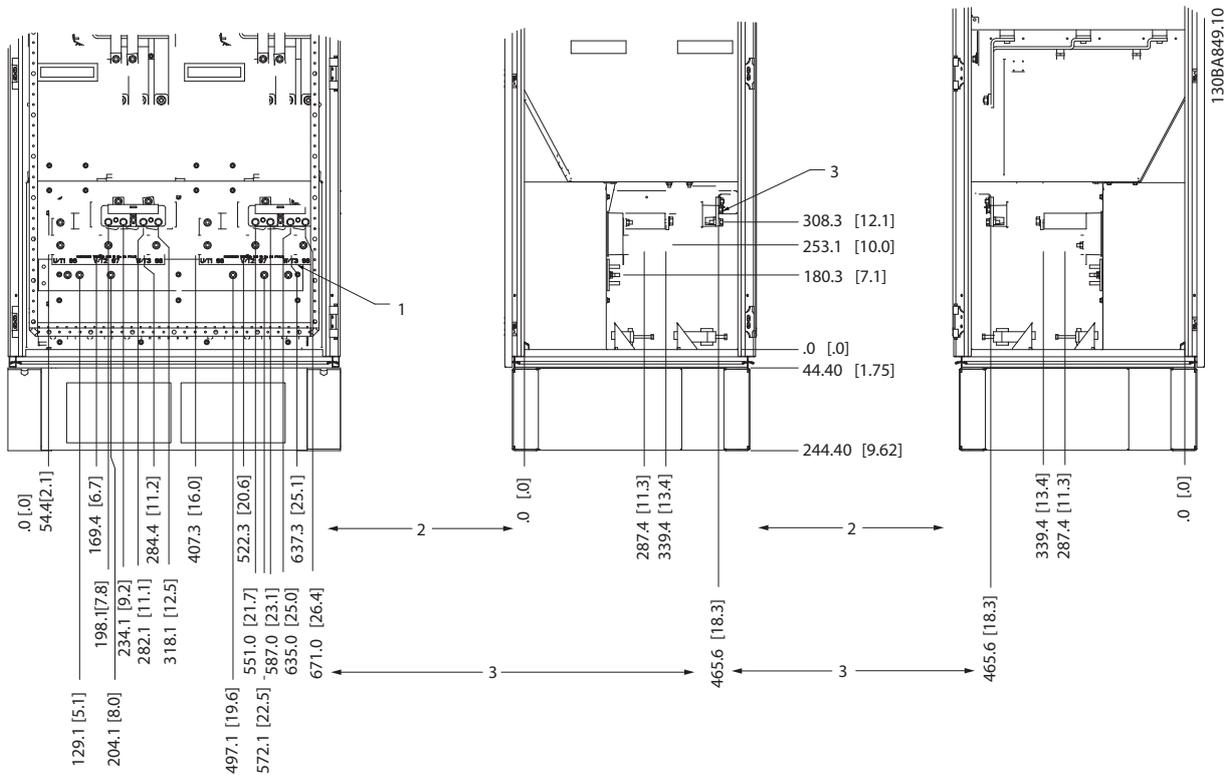


Illustration 5.83 Terminal Locations - Inverter Cabinet - F1 and F3 (Front, Left and Right Side View). The Gland Plate is 42 mm below .0 level.

- 1) Earth ground bar
- 2) Motor terminals
- 3) Brake terminals

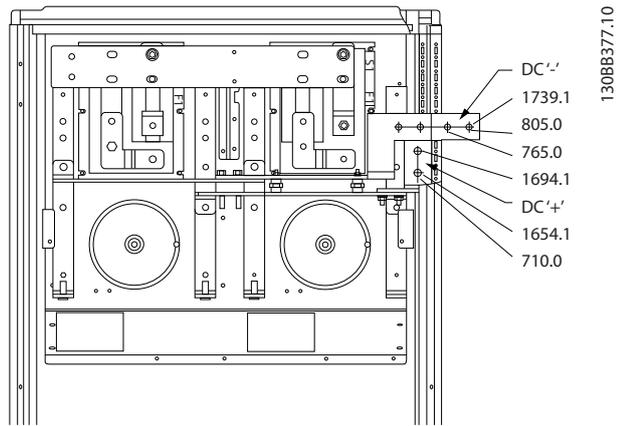


Illustration 5.84 Terminal Locations - Regeneration Terminals - F1 and F3

Terminal locations - Frame size F2 and F4

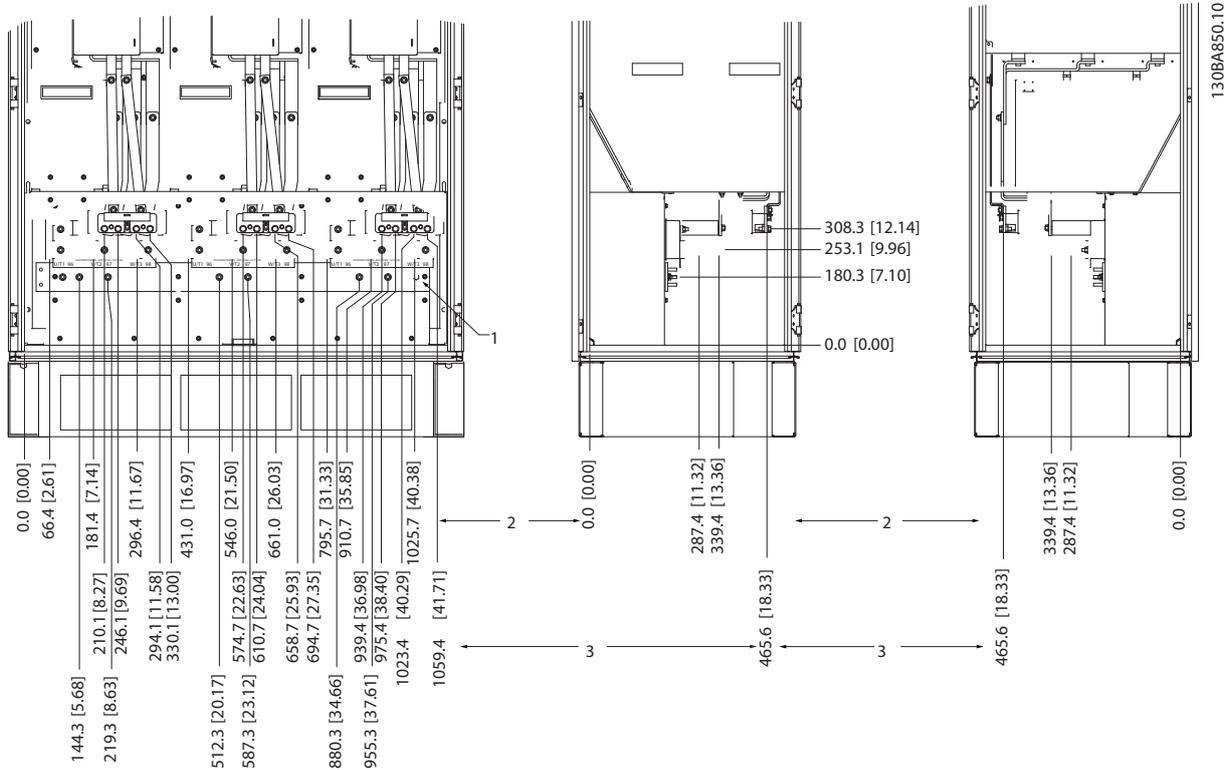


Illustration 5.85 Terminal Locations - Inverter Cabinet - F2 and F4 (Front, Left and Right Side View). The Gland Plate is 42 mm below .0 level.

1) Earth ground bar

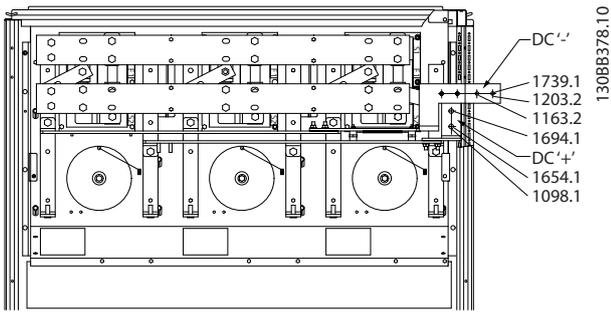


Illustration 5.86 Terminal Locations - Regeneration Terminals - F2 and F4

5

Terminal locations - Rectifier (F1, F2, F3 and F4)

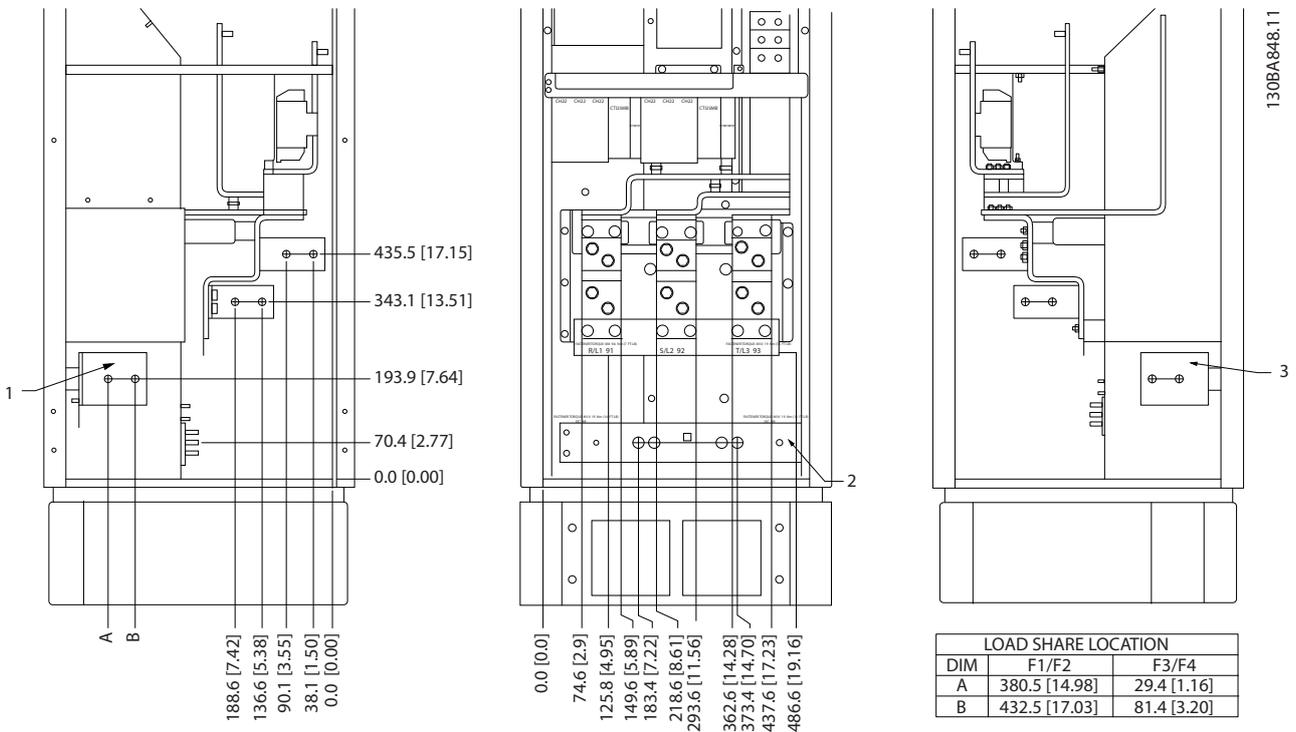


Illustration 5.87 Terminal Locations - Rectifier (Left, Front and Right Side View). The Gland Plate is 42 mm below .0 level.

- 1) Loadshare Terminal (-)
- 2) Earth ground bar
- 3) Loadshare Terminal (+)

Terminal locations - Options Cabinet (F3 and F4)

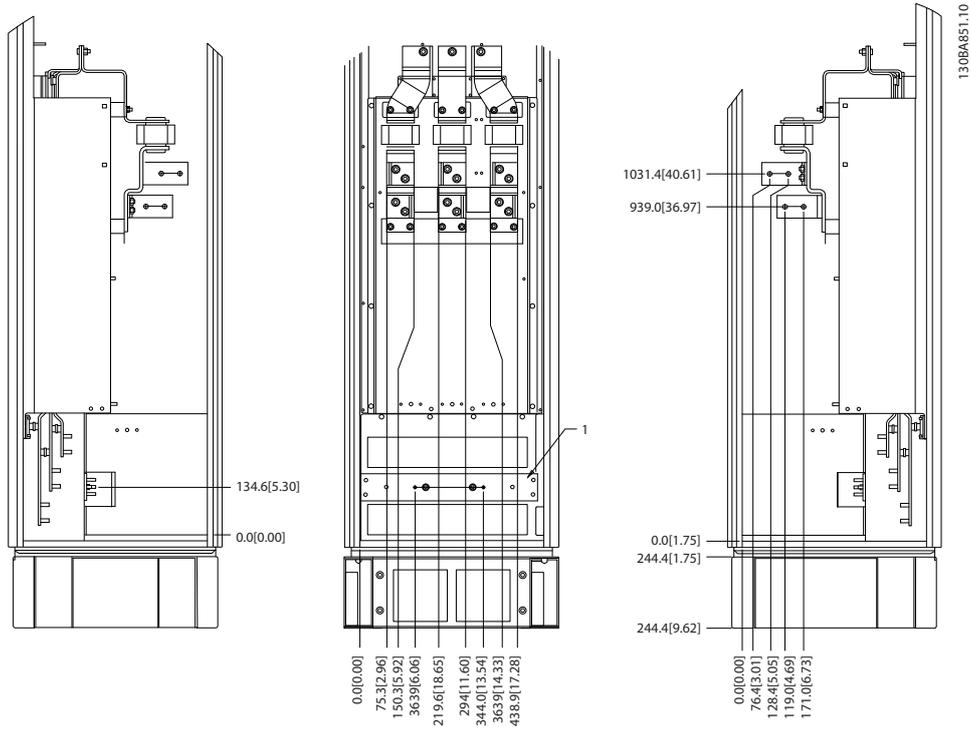


Illustration 5.88 Terminal Locations - Options Cabinet (Left, Front and Right Side View). The Gland Plate is 42 mm below .0 level.  
1) Earth ground bar

Terminal locations - Options Cabinet with circuit breaker/molded case switch (F3 and F4)

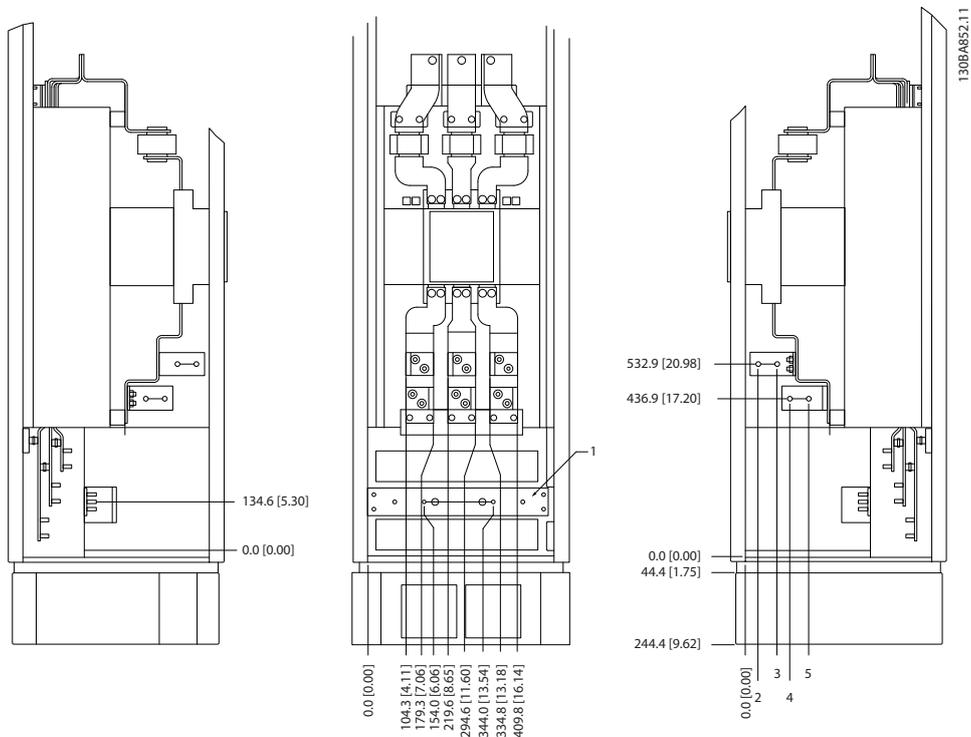


Illustration 5.89 Terminal Locations - Options Cabinet with Circuit Breaker/Molded Case Switch (Left, Front and Right Side View). The Gland Plate is 42 mm below .0 level.  
1) Earth ground bar

Power size	2	3	4	5
450 kW (480 V), 630-710 kW (690 V)	34.9	86.9	122.2	174.2
500-800 kW (480 V), 800-1000 kW (690 V)	46.3	98.3	119.0	171.0

Table 5.17 Dimension for Terminal

### 5.4.3 Power Connections 12-Pulse Drives

See 3.1 *General Specifications* for correct dimensioning of motor cable cross-section and length.

#### Cabling and Fusing

#### NOTE

##### Cables General

All cabling must comply with national and local regulations on cable cross-sections and ambient temperature. UL applications require 75 °C copper conductors. 75 and 90 °C copper conductors are thermally acceptable for the frequency converter to use in non-UL applications.

The power cable connections are situated as shown in *Illustration 5.90*. Dimensioning of cable cross section must be done in accordance with the current ratings and local legislation. See 3.1 *General Specifications* for details.

For protection of the frequency converter, the recommended fuses must be used or the unit must be fitted with built-in fuses. Recommended fuses can be seen in 5.3.7 *Fuses*. Always ensure that proper fusing is made according to local regulations.

The mains connection is fitted to the mains switch if included.

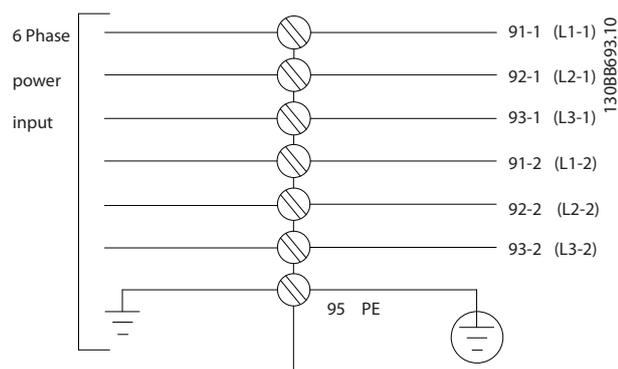
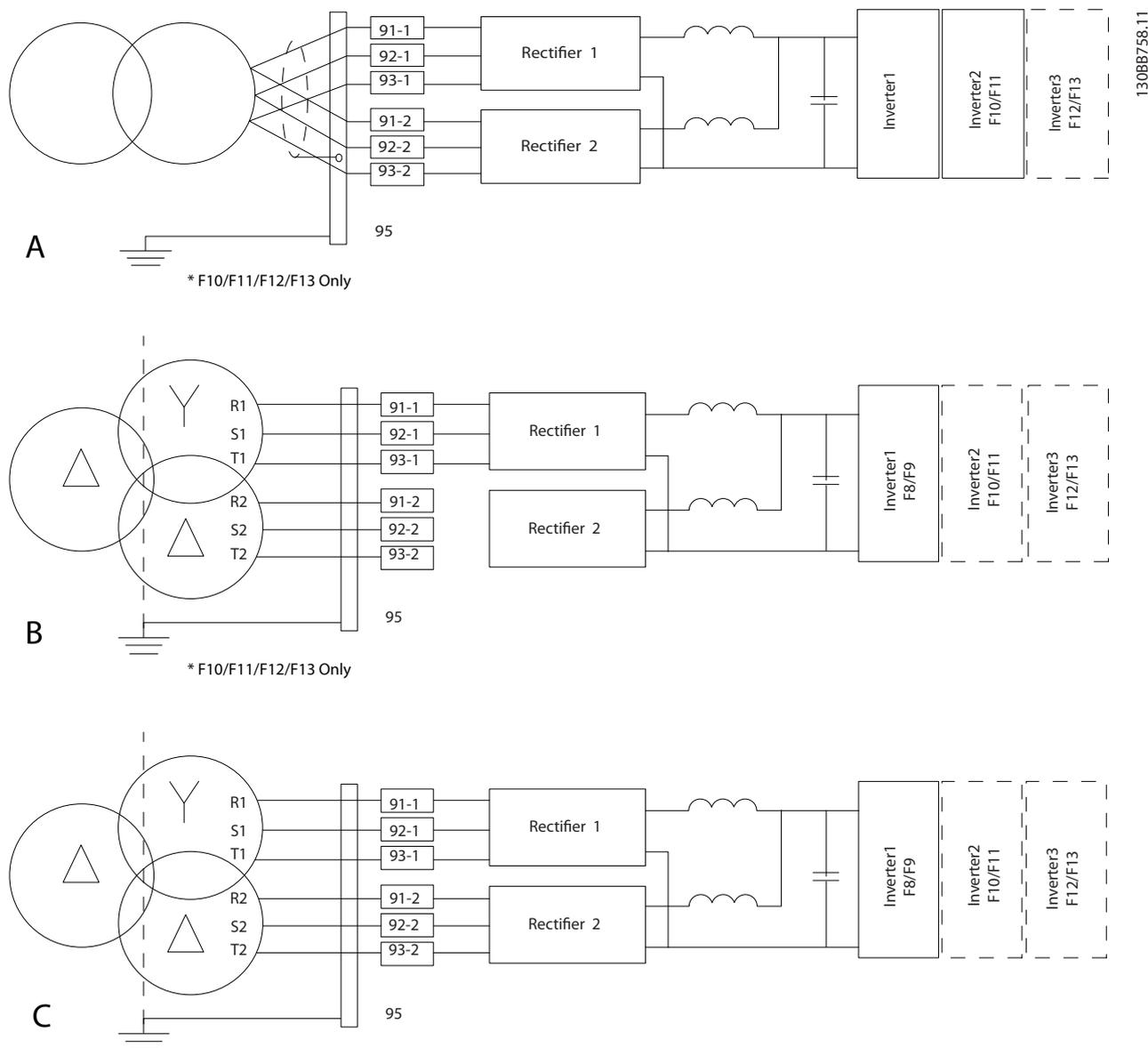


Illustration 5.90 Mains Connection

#### NOTE

The motor cable must be screened/armoured. If an unscreened/unarmoured cable is used, some EMC requirements are not complied with. Use a screened/armoured motor cable to comply with EMC emission specifications. For more information, see 5.10 *EMC-correct Installation*.



13088758:11

Illustration 5.91

- A) 6-Pulse Connection<sup>1), 2), 3)</sup>
- B) Modified 6-Pulse Connection<sup>2), 3), 4)</sup>
- C) 12-Pulse Connection<sup>3), 5)</sup>

**Notes:**

- 1) Parallel connection shown. A single three-phase cable may be used with sufficient carrying capability. Shorting bus bars must be installed.
- 2) 6-pulse connection eliminates the harmonics reduction benefits of the 12-pulse rectifier.
- 3) Suitable for IT and TN mains connection.
- 4) In the unlikely event that one of the 6-pulse modular rectifiers becomes inoperable, it is possible to operate the frequency converter at reduced load with a single 6-pulse rectifier. Contact the factory for reconnection details.

<sup>5)</sup> No paralleling of mains cabling is shown here. 12 pulse as a 6 pulse should have mains cable requirements of equal number of cables and lengths.

**NOTE**

Mains cables should be equal length ( $\pm 10\%$ ) and the same wire size for all three phases on both rectifier sections. A 12 pulse frequency converter used as a 6 pulse should have mains cables of equal numbers and lengths.

**Screening of cables**

Avoid installation with twisted screen ends (pigtailed). They spoil the screening effect at higher frequencies. If it is necessary to break the screen to install a motor isolator or

motor contactor, the screen must be continued at the lowest possible HF impedance.

Connect the motor cable screen to both the de-coupling plate of the frequency converter and to the metal housing of the motor.

Make the screen connections with the largest possible surface area (cable clamp). This is done by using the supplied installation devices within the frequency converter.

**Cable-length and cross-section**

The frequency converter has been EMC tested with a given length of cable. Keep the motor cable as short as possible to reduce the noise level and leakage currents.

**Switching frequency**

When frequency converters are used together with sine-wave filters to reduce the acoustic noise from a motor, the switching frequency must be set according to the instruction in *14-01 Switching Frequency*.

5

Term. no.	96	97	98	99	
	U	V	W	PE <sup>1)</sup>	Motor voltage 0-100% of mains voltage. 3 wires out of motor
	U1	V1	W1	PE <sup>1)</sup>	Delta-connected
	W2	U2	V2		6 wires out of motor
	U1	V1	W1	PE <sup>1)</sup>	Star-connected U2, V2, W2 U2, V2, and W2 to be interconnected separately.

**Table 5.18 Terminals**

<sup>1)</sup> Protected Earth Connection

**NOTE**

In motors without phase insulation paper or other insulation reinforcement suitable for operation with voltage supply (such as a frequency converter), fit a Sine-wave filter on the output of the frequency converter.

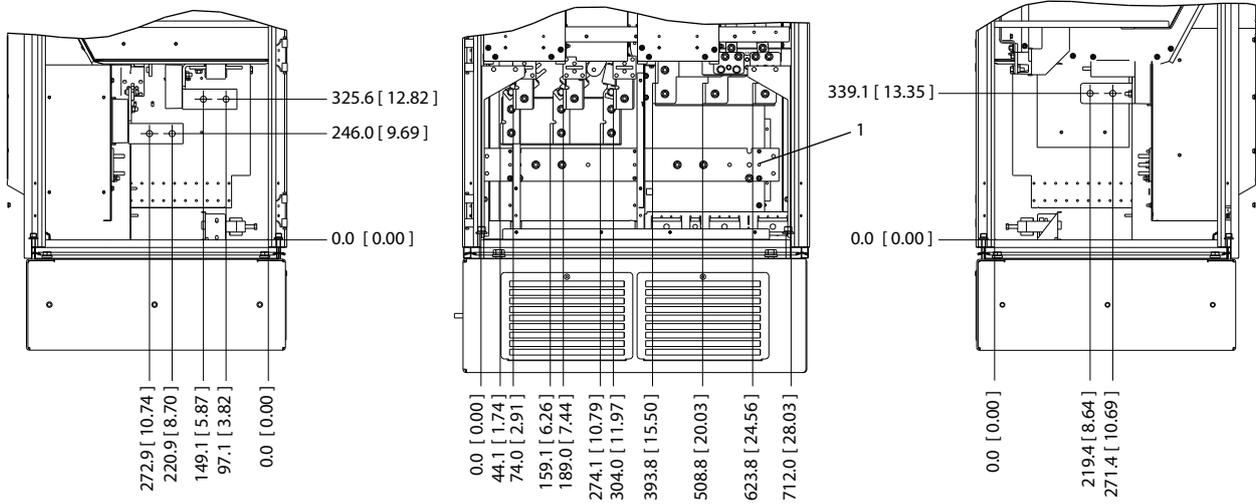


Illustration 5.92 F8 (Front, Left and Right Side Views)

- 1) Earth ground bar
- The gland plate is 42 mm below Ø level

5

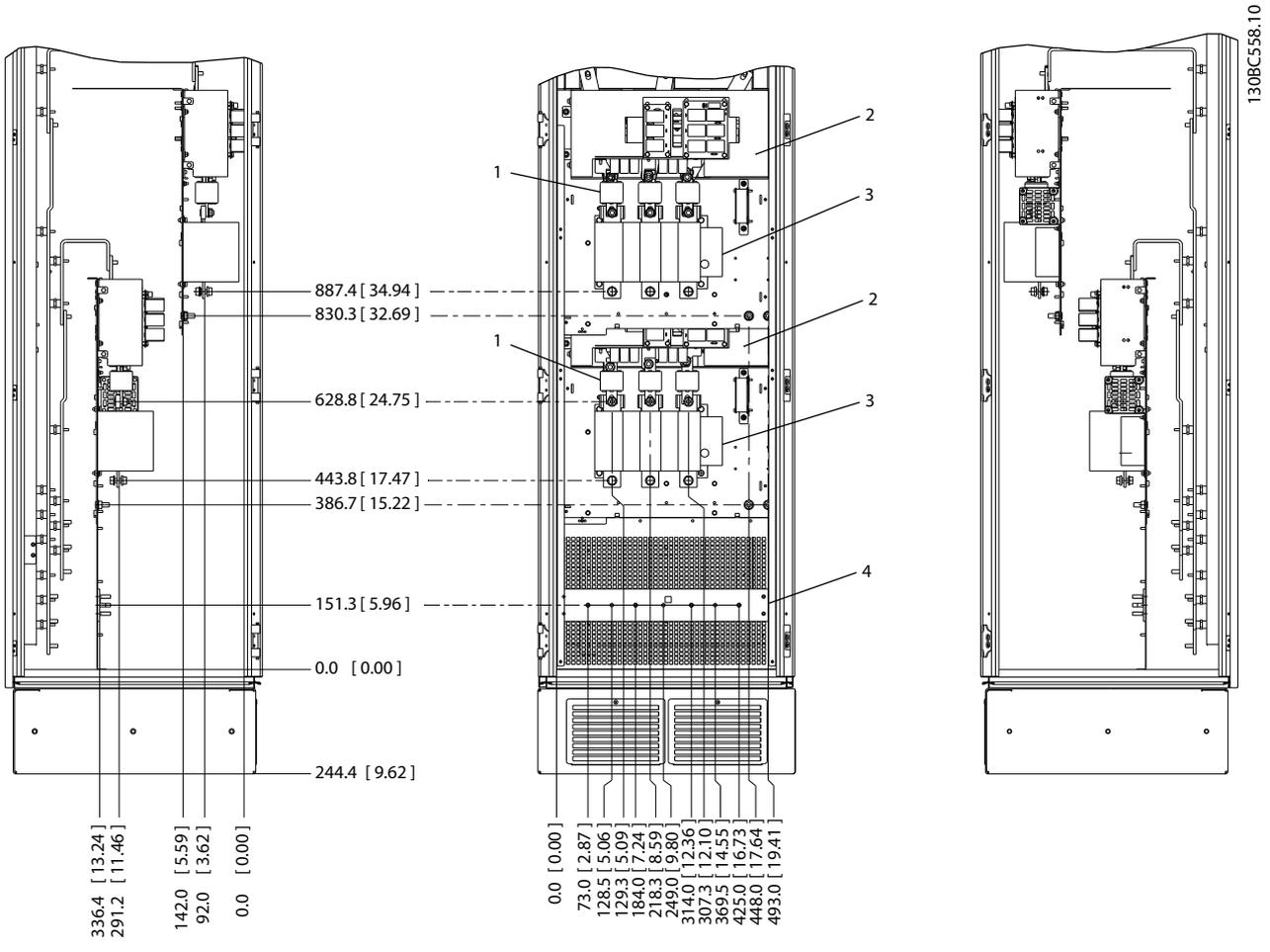
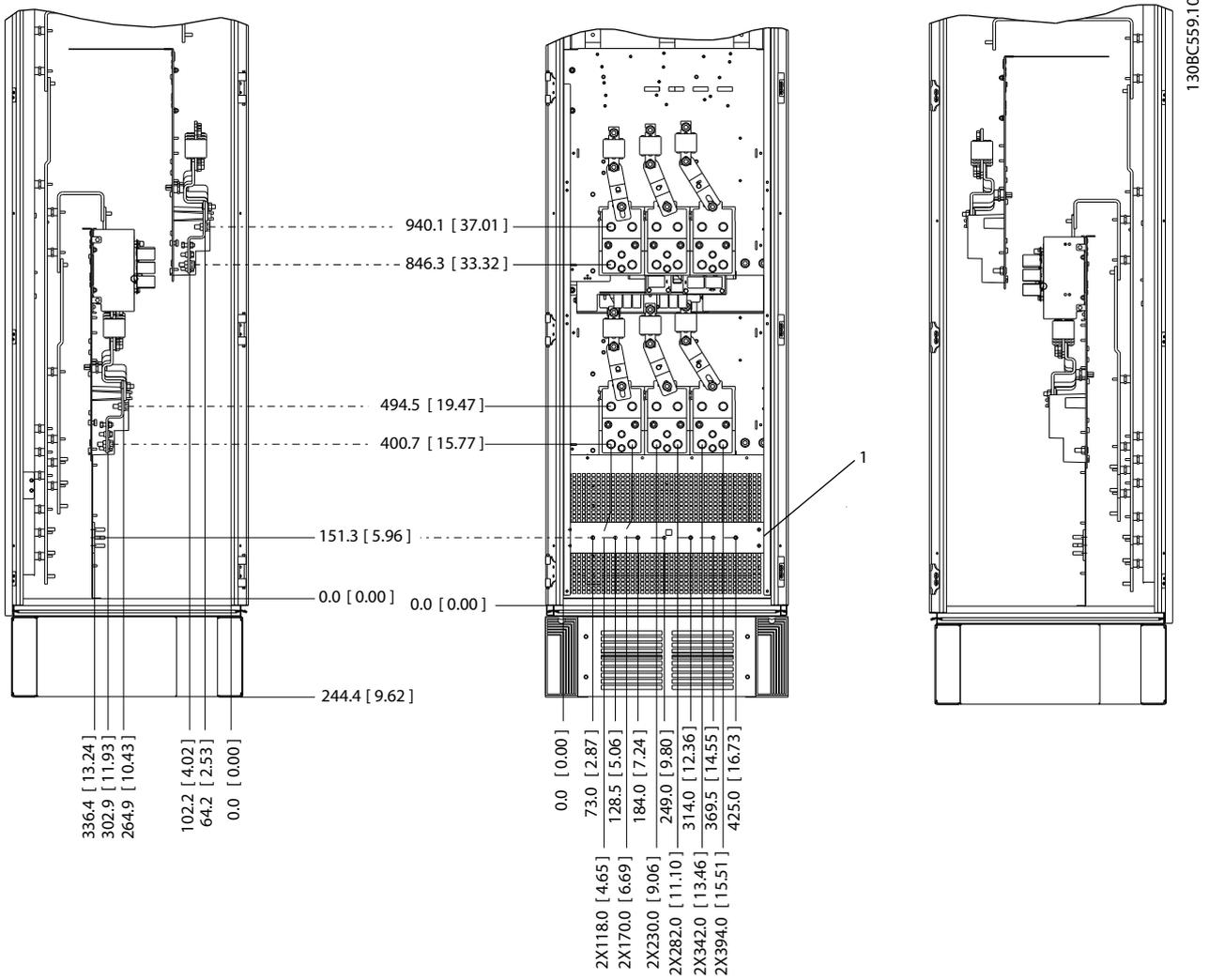


Illustration 5.93 F9 Input Options Cabinet with Disconnect and Fuses



5

Illustration 5.94 F9 Input Options Cabinet with Fuse only

5

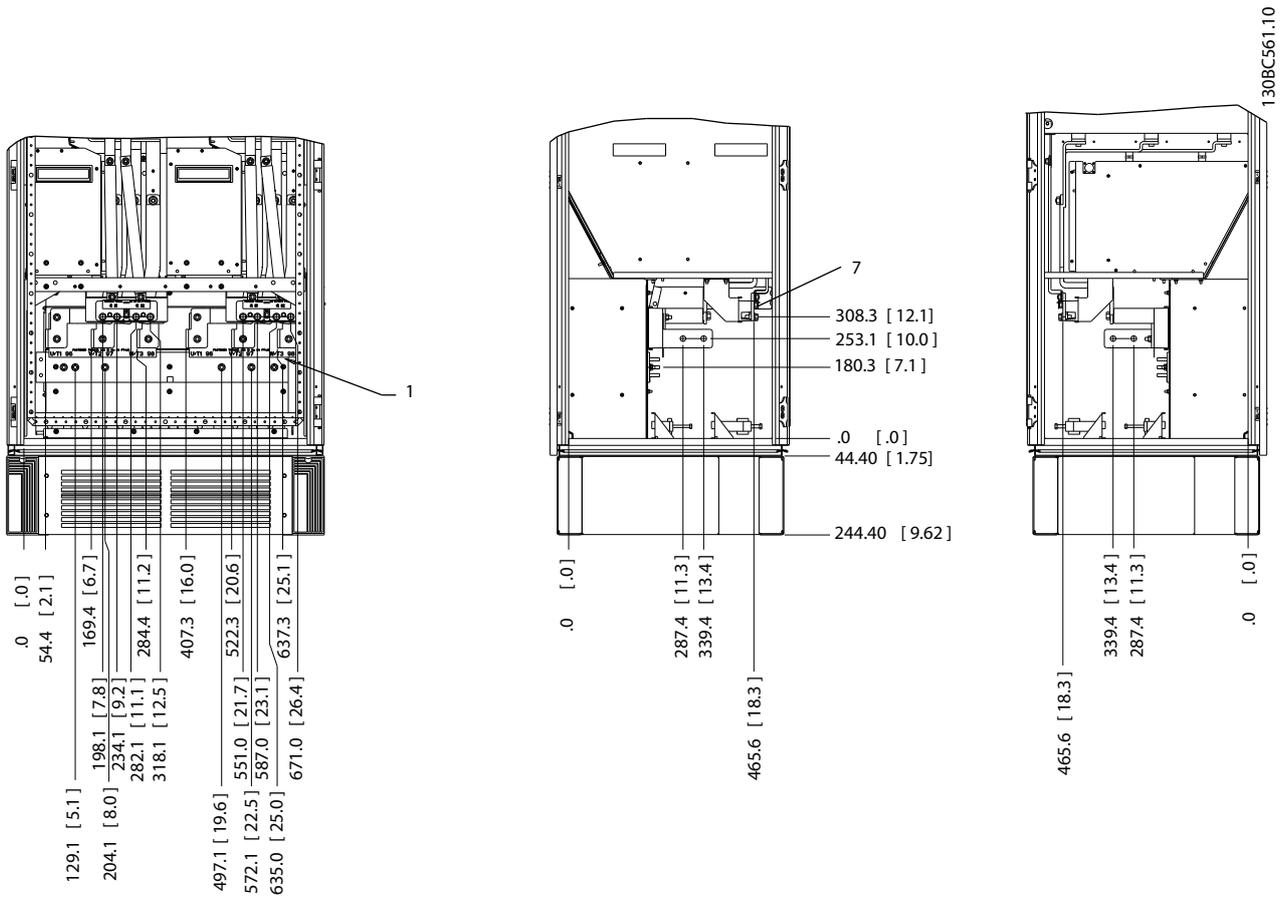
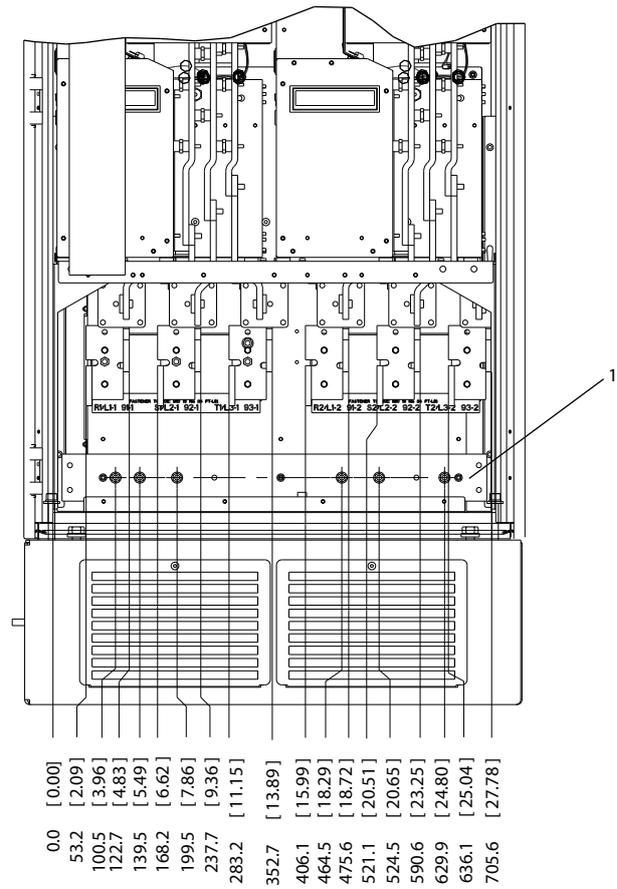
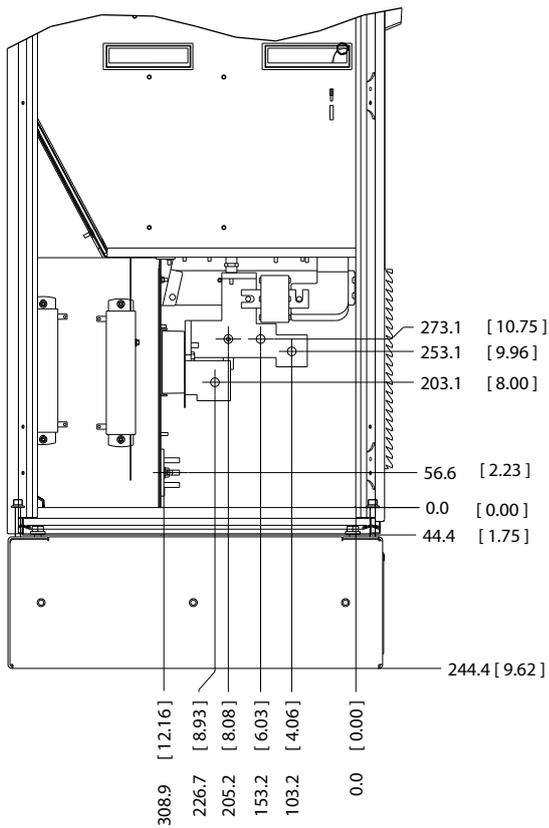


Illustration 5.95 F10/F11 Inverter Cabinet

1) Earth ground bar



130BC555.10

5

Illustration 5.96 F10/F12 Rectifier Cabinet

- 1) Earth ground bar  
The gland plate is 42 mm below Ø level

5

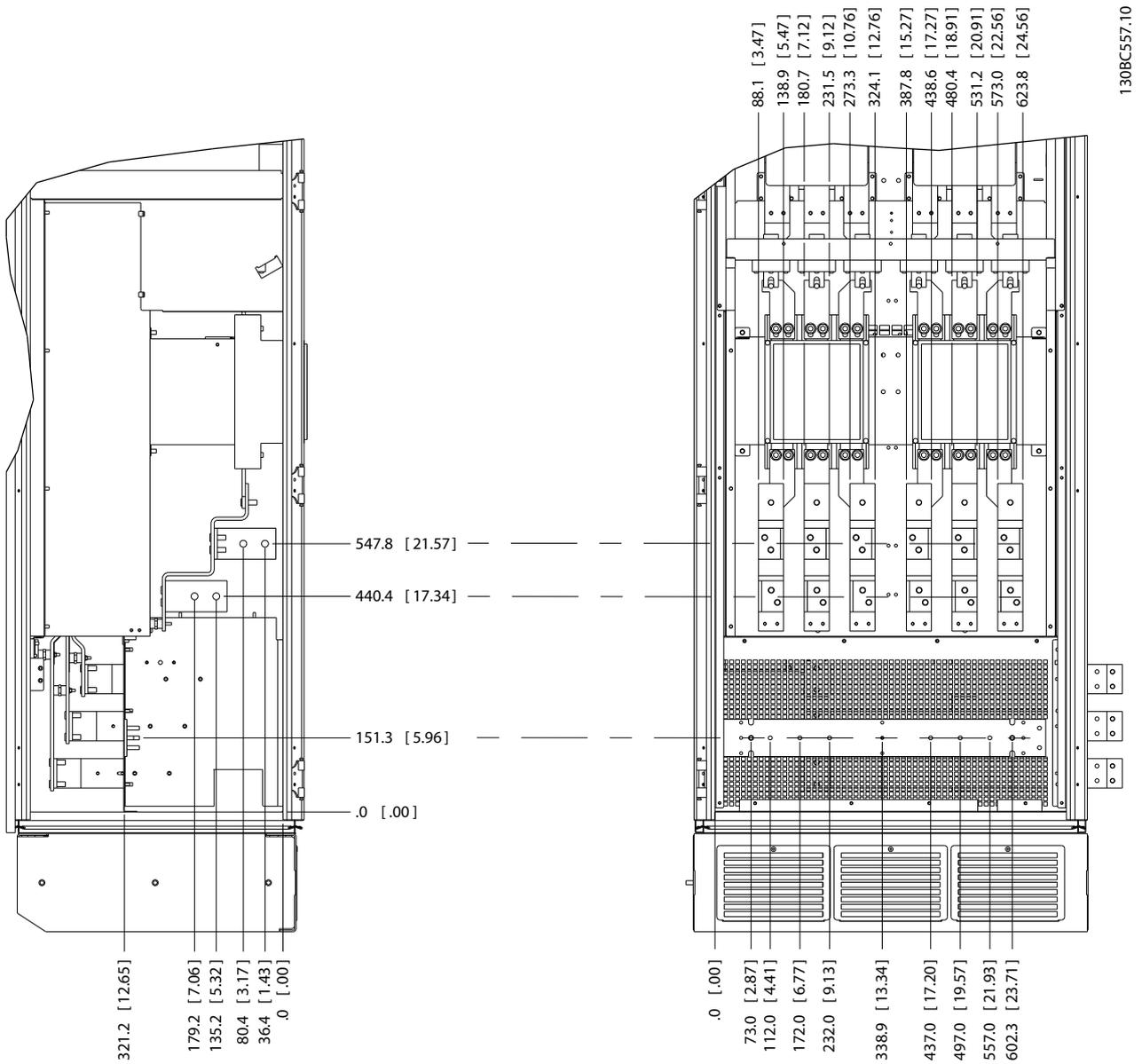
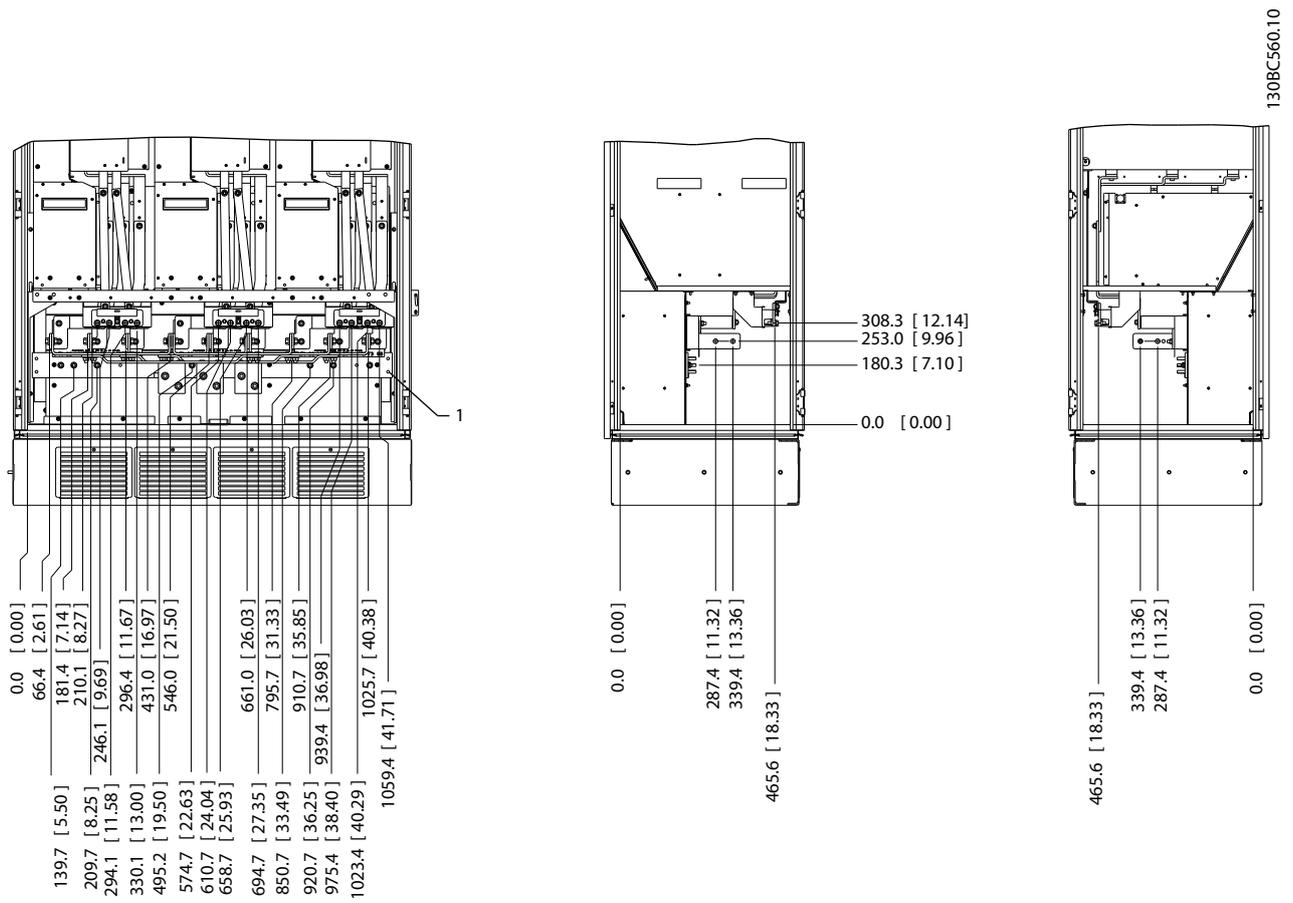


Illustration 5.97 F11/F13 Input Option Cabinet with Disconnect and Fuses

1) Earth ground bar



5

Illustration 5.98 F12/F13 Inverter Cabinet, Front, Left and Right Side Views)

1) Earth ground bar  
The gland plate is 42 mm below Ø level

### 5.4.4 Shielding against Electrical Noise

**F-Frame size units only**

Before mounting the mains power cable, mount the EMC metal cover to ensure best EMC performance.

**NOTE**

The EMC metal cover is only included in units with an RFI filter

5

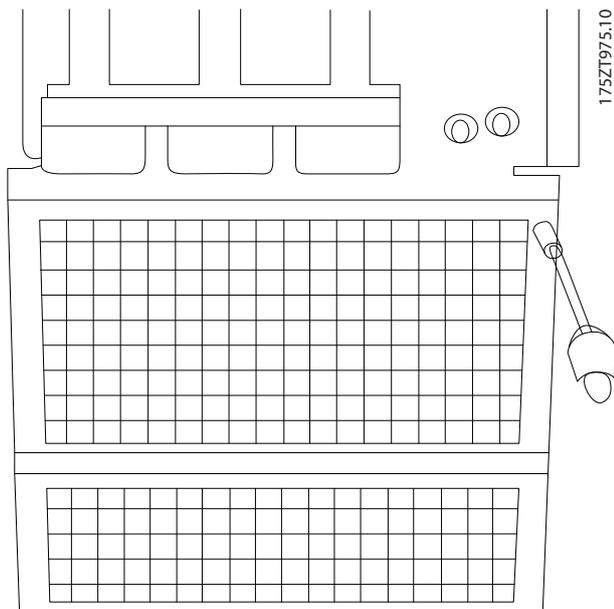


Illustration 5.99 Mounting of EMC shield

### 5.4.5 External Fan Power Supply

**Frame sizes E and F**

In case the frequency converter is supplied by DC or if the fan must run independently of the mains supply, an external power supply can be applied. The connection is made on the power card.

Terminal no.	Function
100, 101	Auxiliary supply S, T
102, 103	Internal supply S, T

Table 5.19 External Power Supply

The connector located on the power card provides the connection of line voltage for the cooling fans. The fans are connected at the factory to connect to a common AC line (jumpers between 100-102 and 101-103). If external supply is needed, the jumpers are removed and the supply is connected to terminals 100 and 101. Use a 5 Amp fuse for protection. In UL applications, use a Littelfuse KLK-5 or equivalent.

## 5.5 Input Options

### 5.5.1 Mains Disconnects

Frame size	Power	Type
<b>380-500V</b>		
D5h/D6h	N110-N160	ABB OT400U03
D7h/D8h	N200-N400	ABB OT600U03
E1/E2	P250	ABB OETL-NF600A
E1/E2	P315-P400	ABB OETL-NF800A
F3	P450	Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP
F3	P500-P630	Merlin Gerin NRKF36000S20AAYP
F4	P710-P800	Merlin Gerin NRKF36000S20AAYP
<b>525-690V</b>		
D5h/D6h	N75K-N160	ABB OT400U03
D5h/D6h	N200-N400	ABB OT600U03
F3	P630-P710	Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP
F3	P800	Merlin Gerin NRKF36000S20AAYP
F4	P900-P1M2	Merlin Gerin NRKF36000S20AAYP

5

Table 5.20 Mains Disconnects, D, E and F frame Frequency Converters

Frame size	Power	Type
<b>380-500 V</b>		
F9	P250	ABB OETL-NF600A
F9	P315	ABB OETL-NF600A
F9	P355	ABB OETL-NF600A
F9	P400	ABB OETL-NF600A
F11	P450	ABB OETL-NF800A
F11	P500	ABB OETL-NF800A
F11	P560	ABB OETL-NF800A
F11	P630	ABB OT800U21
F13	P710	Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP
F13	P800	Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP
<b>525-690 V</b>		
F9	P355	ABB OT400U12-121
F9	P400	ABB OT400U12-121
F9	P500	ABB OT400U12-121
F9	P560	ABB OT400U12-121
F11	P630	ABB OETL-NF600A
F11	P710	ABB OETL-NF600A
F11	P800	ABB OT800U21
F13	P900	ABB OT800U21
F13	P1M0	Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP
F13	P1M2	Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP

Table 5.21 Mains Disconnects, 12-Pulse Frequency Converters

Frame Size	Voltage [V]	Drive Model	Circuit Breaker Type	Default breaker settings (Trip level - Amps)	
				I1 (Overload)	I3/Ith (Instantaneous)
D6h	380-480	N110 - N132	ABB T5L400TW	400	4000
D6h	380-480	N160	ABB T5LQ400TW	400	4000
D8h	380-480	N200	ABB T6L600TW	600	6000
D8h	380-480	N250	ABB T6LQ600TW	600	6000
D8h	380-480	N315	ABB T6LQ800TW	800	8000
D6h	525-690	N75K - N160	ABB T5L400TW	400	4000
D8h	525-690	N200 - N315	ABB T6L600TW	600	6000
D8h	525-690	N400	ABB T6LQ600TW	600	6000

Table 5.22 D-frame Circuit Breakers

Frame size	Power & Voltage	Type	Default breaker settings	
			Trip level [A]	Time [s]
F3	P450 380-500V & P630-P710 525-690V	Merlin Gerin NPJF36120U31AABSCYP	1200	0.5
F3	P500-P630 380-500V & P800 525-690V	Merlin Gerin NRJF36200U31AABSCYP	2000	0.5
F4	P710 380-500V & P900-P1M2 525-690V	Merlin Gerin NRJF36200U31AABSCYP	2000	0.5
F4	P800 380-500V	Merlin Gerin NRJF36250U31AABSCYP	2500	0.5

Table 5.23 F-frame Circuit Breakers

## 5.5.2 Mains Contactors

Frame size	Power & Voltage	Type
D6h	N110-N160 380-480 V	CK95BE311N
	N75-N160 525-690 V	
D8h	N200-N315 380-480 V	CK11CE311N
	N200-N400 525-690 V	

Table 5.24 D-Frame Contactors

Frame size	Power & Voltage	Type
F3	P450-P500 380-500 V & P630-P800 525-690 V	Eaton XTCE650N22A
F3	P560 380-500 V	Eaton XTCE820N22A
F3	P630 380-500 V	Eaton XTCEC14P22B
F4	P900 525-690 V	Eaton XTCE820N22A
F4	P710-P800 380-500 V & P1M2 525-690 V	Eaton XTCEC14P22B

Table 5.25 F-Frame Contactors

### NOTE

Customer supplied 230 V supply is required for mains contactors.

### 5.5.3 Relay Output D frame

**Relay 1**

- Terminal 01: common
- Terminal 02: normal open 400 V AC
- Terminal 03: normal closed 240 V AC

**Relay 2**

- Terminal 04: common
- Terminal 05: normal open 400 V AC
- Terminal 06: normal closed 240 V AC

Relay 1 and relay 2 are programmed in 5-40 Function Relay, 5-41 On Delay, Relay, and 5-42 Off Delay, Relay.

Additional relay outputs by using option module MCB 105.

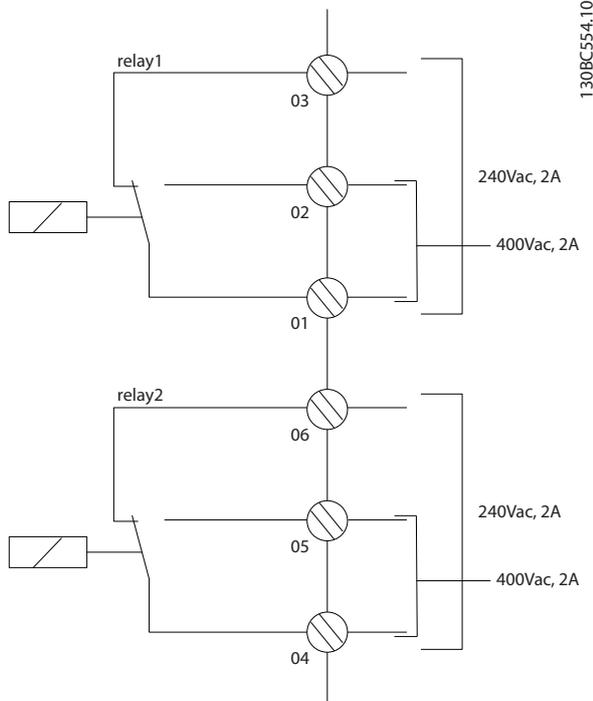


Illustration 5.100 D-frame Additional Relay Outputs

### 5.5.4 Relay Output E & F-Frame

**Relay 1**

- Terminal 01: common
- Terminal 02: normal open 240 V AC
- Terminal 03: normal closed 240 V AC

**Relay 2**

- Terminal 04: common
- Terminal 05: normal open 400 V AC
- Terminal 06: normal closed 240 V AC

Relay 1 and relay 2 are programmed in 5-40 Function Relay, 5-41 On Delay, Relay, and 5-42 Off Delay, Relay.

Additional relay outputs by using option module MCB 105.

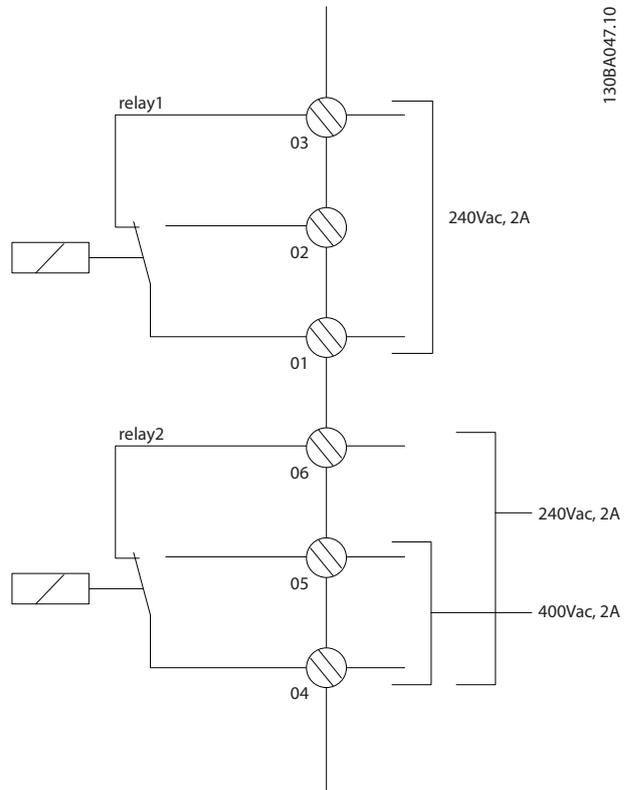


Illustration 5.101 E- and F-frame Additional Relay Outputs

### 5.6 Final Set-Up and Test

To test the set-up and ensure that the frequency converter is running, follow these steps.

**Step 1. Locate the motor name plate.**

**NOTE**

The motor is either star- (Y) or delta- connected (Δ). This information is on the motor name plate data.

**Step 2. Enter the motor name plate data in this parameter list.**

To access this list, first press [Quick Menu], then select "Q2 Quick Setup".

1. 1-20 Motor Power [kW] or 1-21 Motor Power [HP]
2. 1-22 Motor Voltage
3. 1-23 Motor Frequency
4. 1-24 Motor Current
5. 1-25 Motor Nominal Speed

**Step 3. Activate the Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA).**

Performing an AMA ensures optimum performance. The AMA measures the values from the motor model equivalent diagram.

1. Connect terminal 27 to terminal 12 or set 5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input to [0] No function
2. Activate the AMA 1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA).
3. Choose between complete or reduced AMA. If an LC filter is mounted, run only the reduced AMA, or remove the LC filter during the AMA procedure.
4. Press [OK]. The display shows "Press [Hand On] to start".
5. Press [Hand On]. A progress bar indicates whether the AMA is in progress.

**Stop the AMA during operation**

1. Press [Off] - the frequency converter enters into alarm mode and the display shows that the AMA was terminated.

**Successful AMA**

1. The display shows "Press [OK] to finish AMA".
2. Press [OK] to exit the AMA state.

**Unsuccessful AMA**

1. The frequency converter enters into alarm mode. A description of the alarm can be found in 8 Troubleshooting.
2. "Report Value" in the [Alarm Log] shows that the last measuring sequence carried out by the AMA, before the frequency converter entered alarm mode. This number along with the description of the alarm helps with troubleshooting. If contacting Danfoss Service, make sure to mention number and alarm description.

**NOTE**

AMA often fails because of incorrectly registered motor name plate data or too great a difference between the motor power size and the frequency converter power size.

**Step 4. Set speed limit and ramp time.**

Set up the desired limits for speed and ramp time.

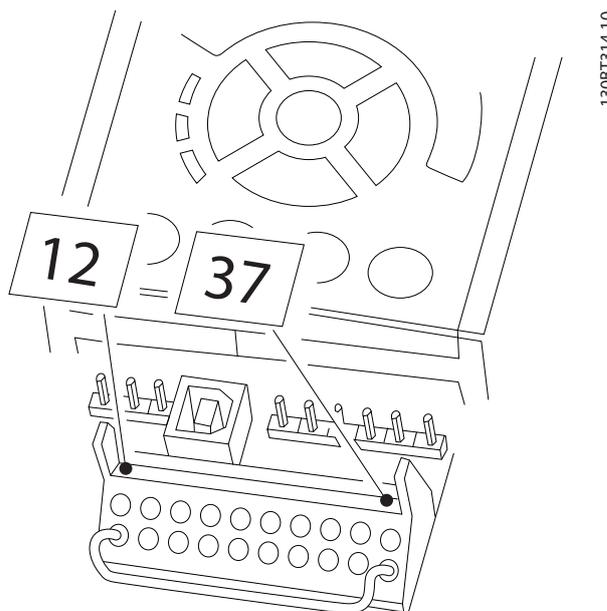
1. 3-02 Minimum Reference
2. 3-03 Maximum Reference
1. 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM] or 4-12 Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]
2. 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM] or 4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]

1. 3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time
2. 3-42 Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time

**5.7 Safe Stop Installation**

To carry out an installation of a Category 0 Stop (EN60204) in conformance with Safety Category 3 (EN954-1), follow these instructions:

1. The bridge (jumper) between Terminal 37 and 24 V DC of FC 202 must be removed. Cutting or breaking the jumper is not sufficient. Remove it entirely to avoid short-circuiting. See jumper on Illustration 5.102.
2. Connect terminal 37 to 24 V DC by a short-circuit protected cable. The 24 V DC voltage supply must be interruptible by an EN954-1 Category 3 circuit interrupt device. If the interrupt device and the frequency converter are placed in the same installation panel, use a regular cable instead of a protected one.



130BT314.10

Illustration 5.102 Bridge Jumper between Terminal 37 and 24 V DC

Illustration 5.103 shows a Stopping Category 0 (EN 60204-1) with safety Cat. 3 (EN 954-1). An opening door contact causes the circuit interrupt. The illustration also shows how to connect a non-safety related hardware coast.

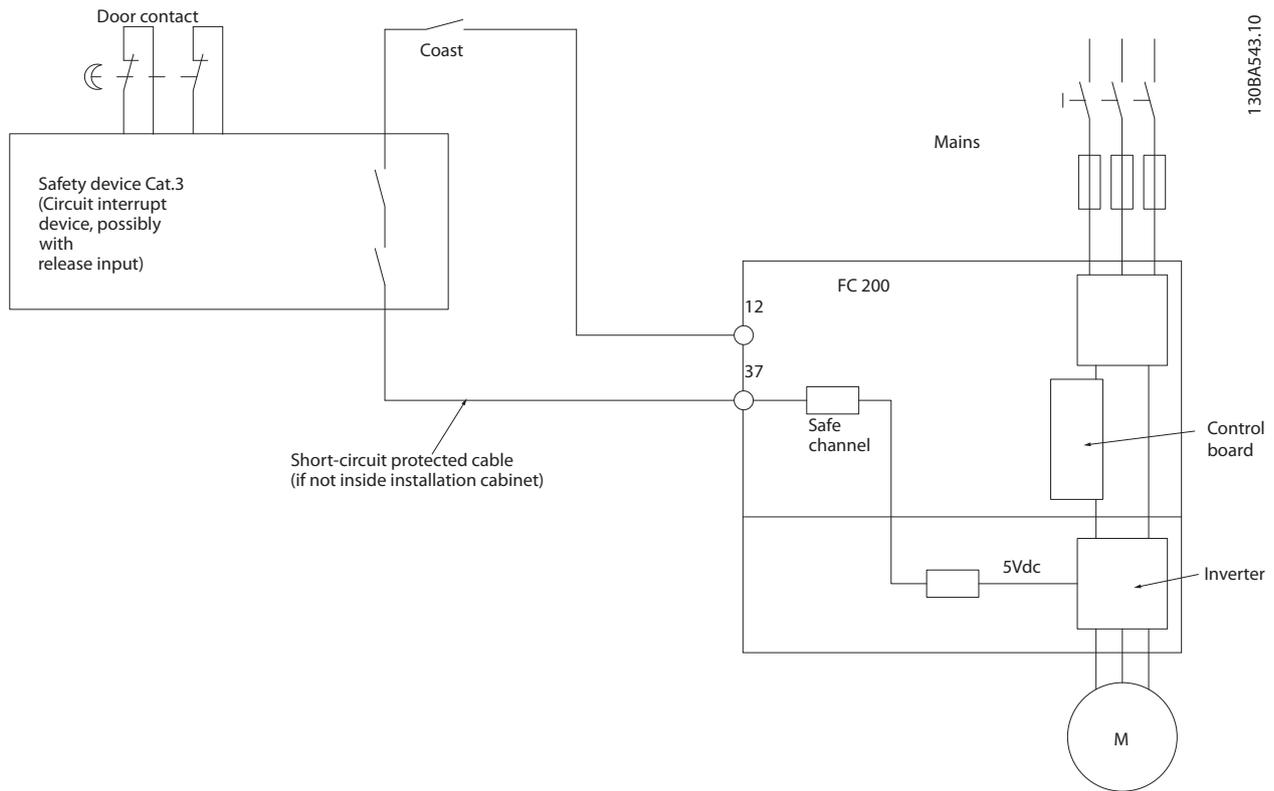


Illustration 5.103 Essential Aspects of an Installation to Achieve a Stopping Category 0 (EN 60204-1) with Safety Cat. 3 (EN 954-1)

### 5.7.1 Safe Stop Commissioning Test

After installation and before first operation, perform a commissioning test of an installation or application using FC 200 Safe Stop.

Perform the test after each modification of the installation or application, of which the FC 200 Safe Stop is part.

**The commissioning test:**

1. Remove the 24 V DC voltage supply to terminal 37 by the interrupt device while the frequency converter drives the motor (mains supply is not interrupted). The test step is passed if the motor reacts with a coast and the mechanical brake (if connected) is activated.
2. Send a Reset signal (via Bus, Digital I/O, or [Reset] key). The test step is passed if the motor remains in the Safe Stop state, and the mechanical brake (if connected) remains activated.
3. Reapply 24 V DC to terminal 37. The test step is passed if the motor remains in the coasted state, and the mechanical brake (if connected) remains activated.
4. Send a Reset signal (via Bus, Digital I/O, or [Reset] key). If the motor becomes operational again, this step is not necessary.

5. If all four test steps are completed successfully, the commissioning test is complete.

## 5.8 Installation of Miscellaneous Connections

### 5.8.1 RS-485 Bus Connection

One or more frequency converters can be connected to a control (or master) using the RS-485 standardised interface. Terminal 68 is connected to the P signal (TX+, RX+), while terminal 69 is connected to the N signal (TX-, RX-).

If more than one frequency converter is connected to a master, use parallel connections.

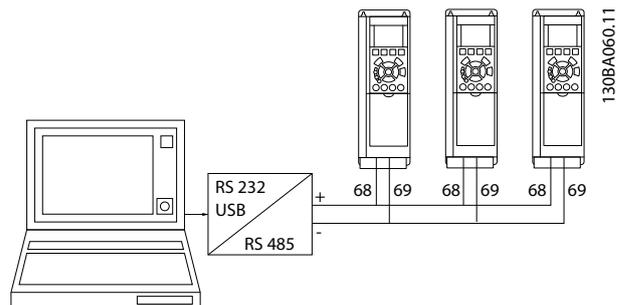


Illustration 5.104 Parallel Connections

To avoid potential equalising currents in the screen, earth the cable screen via terminal 61, which is connected to the frame via an RC-link.

For EMC correct installation, refer to 5.10 *EMC-correct Installation*.

#### Bus termination

Terminate the RS-485 bus using a resistor network at both ends. For this purpose, set switch S801 on the control card for "ON".

For more information, see 5.3.16 *Switches S201, S202 and S801*.

Communication protocol must be set to *8-30 Protocol*.

### 5.8.2 How to Connect a PC to the Unit

To control or program the frequency converter from a PC, install the MCT 10 Set-up Software.

The PC is connected via a standard (host/device) USB cable, or via the RS-485 interface.

#### NOTE

The USB connection is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals. The USB connection is connected to protection earth on the frequency converter. Use only isolated laptop as PC connection to the USB connector on the frequency converter.

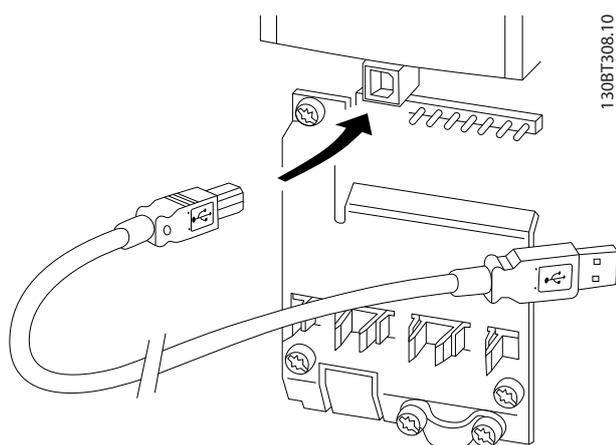


Illustration 5.105 Connection of PC to Frequency Converter

### 5.8.3 PC Software Tools

All frequency converters are equipped with a serial communication port. A PC tool for communication between PC and frequency converter is available.

#### 5.8.3.1 MCT 10

MCT 10 has been designed as an easy to use interactive tool for setting parameters in our frequency converters.

##### The MCT 10 Set-up Software is useful for:

- Planning a communication network off-line. MCT 10 contains a complete frequency converter database
- Commissioning frequency converters on line
- Saving settings for all frequency converters
- Replacing a frequency converter in a network
- Expanding an existing network
- Future developed frequency converters will be supported

#### MCT 10

Set-up Software support Profibus DP-V1 via a Master class 2 connection, which makes it possible to on line read/write parameters in a frequency converter via the Profibus network, eliminating the need for an extra communication network.

##### Save drive settings:

1. Connect a PC to the unit via USB com port
2. Open MCT 10 Set-up Software
3. Choose "Read from drive"
4. Choose "Save as"

All parameters are now stored in the PC.

##### Load drive settings:

1. Connect a PC to the unit via USB com port
2. Open MCT 10 Set-up software
3. Choose "Open"– to view stored files
4. Open the appropriate file
5. Choose "Write to drive"

All parameter settings are now transferred to the frequency converter.

A separate manual for MCT 10 Set-up Software is available.

#### The MCT 10 Set-up Software Modules

The following modules are included in the software package:

##### MCT 10 Setup Software

- Setting parameters
- Copy to and from frequency converters
- Documentation and print out of parameter settings incl. diagrams

##### Ext. User Interface

- Preventive Maintenance Schedule
- Clock settings

- Timed Action Programming
- Smart Logic Controller Set-up
- Cascade Control Config. Tool

**Ordering number:**

Order the CD containing MCT 10 Set-up Software using code number 130B1000.

MCT 10 can also be downloaded from [www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Softwaredownload/](http://www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Softwaredownload/).

### 5.8.3.2 MCT 31

**MCT 31**

The MCT 31 harmonic calculation PC tool enables easy estimation of the harmonic distortion in a given application. Both the harmonic distortion of Danfoss frequency converters as well as non-Danfoss frequency converters with additional harmonic reduction devices, such as Danfoss AHF filters and 12-18-pulse rectifiers, can be calculated.

**Ordering number:**

Order the CD containing the MCT 31 PC tool using code number 130B1031.

MCT 31 can also be downloaded from [www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Softwaredownload/](http://www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Softwaredownload/).

## 5.9 Safety

### 5.9.1 High Voltage Test

Carry out a high voltage test by short-circuiting terminals U, V, W, L<sub>1</sub>, L<sub>2</sub> and L<sub>3</sub>. Energize maximum 2.15 kV DC for 380-500V frequency converters and 2.525 kV DC for 525-690 V frequency converters for one second between this short-circuit and the chassis.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**When running high voltage tests of the entire installation, interrupt the mains and motor connection if the leakage currents are too high.**

### 5.9.2 Safety Earth Connection

The frequency converter has a high leakage current and must be earthed appropriately for safety reasons according to EN 50178.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**The earth leakage current from the frequency converter exceeds 3.5 mA. To ensure a good mechanical connection from the earth cable to the earth connection (terminal 95), the cable cross-section must be at least 10 mm<sup>2</sup> or 2 rated earth wires terminated separately.**

## 5.10 EMC-correct Installation

### 5.10.1 Electrical Installation - EMC Precautions

The following is a guideline to good engineering practice when installing frequency converters. Follow these guidelines in compliance with EN 61800-3 *First environment*. If the installation is in EN 61800-3 *Second environment*, industrial networks, or in an installation with its own transformer, deviation from these guidelines is allowed but not recommended. See also 2.3.3 *Danfoss Frequency Converter and CE Labelling*, 2.9.3 *EMC Test Results (Emission)* and 5.10.3 *Earthing of Screened/Armoured Control Cables*.

#### **Good engineering practice to ensure EMC-correct electrical installation:**

- Use only braided screened/armoured motor cables and braided screened control cables. The screen provides a minimum coverage of 80%. The screen material must be metal, not limited to but typically copper, aluminum, steel, or lead. There are no special requirements for the mains cable.
- Installations using rigid metal conduits are not required to use screened cable, but the motor cable must be installed in conduit separate from the control and mains cables. Full connection of the conduit from the frequency converter to the motor is required. The EMC performance of flexible conduits varies a lot and information from the manufacturer must be obtained.
- Connect the screen conduit to earth at both ends for motor cables as well as for control cables. In some cases, it is not possible to connect the screen in both ends. If so, connect the screen at the frequency converter. See also 5.3.3 *Connection to Mains and Earthing*.
- Avoid terminating the screen with twisted ends (pigtailed). It increases the high frequency impedance of the screen, which reduces its effectiveness at high frequencies. Use low impedance cable clamps or EMC cable glands instead.
- Avoid using unscreened motor or control cables inside cabinets housing the frequency converter, whenever possible.

Leave the screen as close to the connectors as possible.

*Illustration 5.106* shows an example of an EMC-correct electrical installation of an IP 20 frequency converter. The frequency converter is fitted in an installation cabinet with an output contactor and connected to a PLC, which is

installed in a separate cabinet. Other ways of doing the installation could have just as good an EMC performance, provided the guidelines to engineering practice are followed.

used, some emission requirements are not complied with, although the immunity requirements are fulfilled. See 2.9.3 EMC Test Results (Emission).

If the installation is not carried out according to the guideline and if unshielded cables and control wires are

5

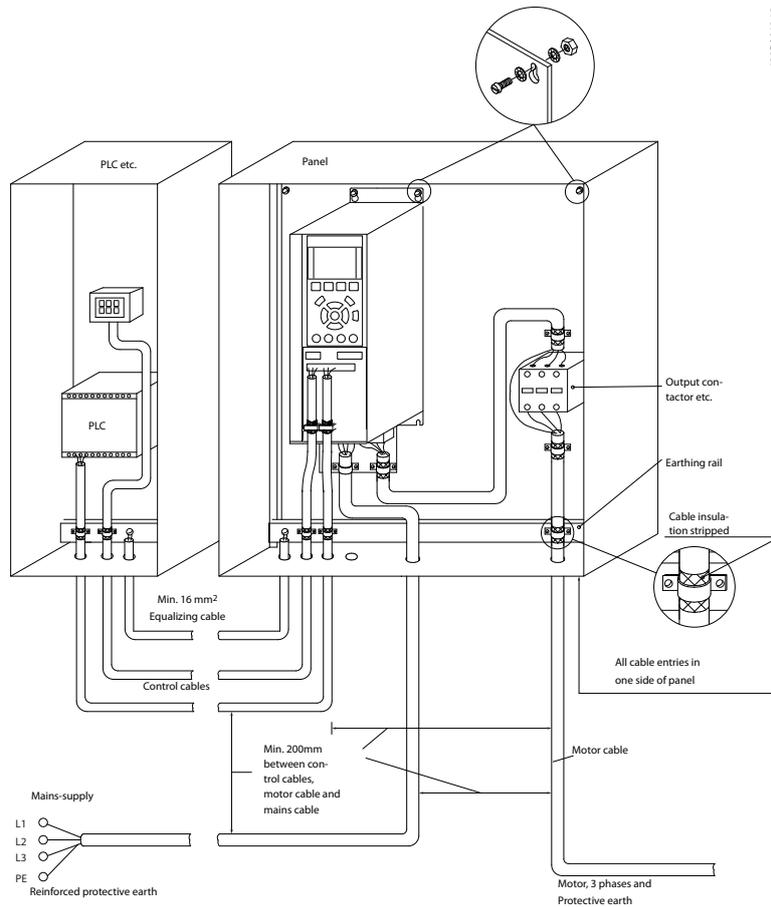
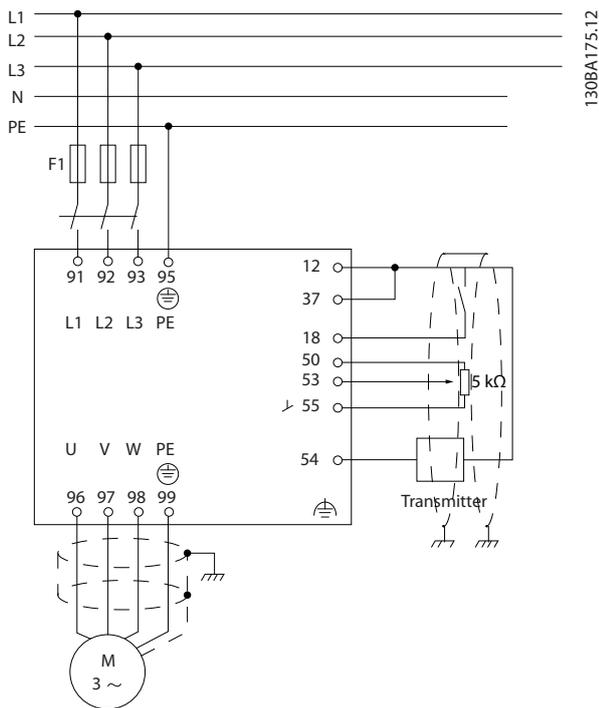


Illustration 5.106 EMC-correct Electrical Installation of a Frequency Converter in Cabinet



1308A175.12

Illustration 5.107 Electrical Connection Diagram (6-pulse example shown)

### 5.10.2 Use of EMC-Correct Cables

Danfoss recommends braided screened/armoured cables to optimise EMC immunity of the control cables and the EMC emission from the motor cables.

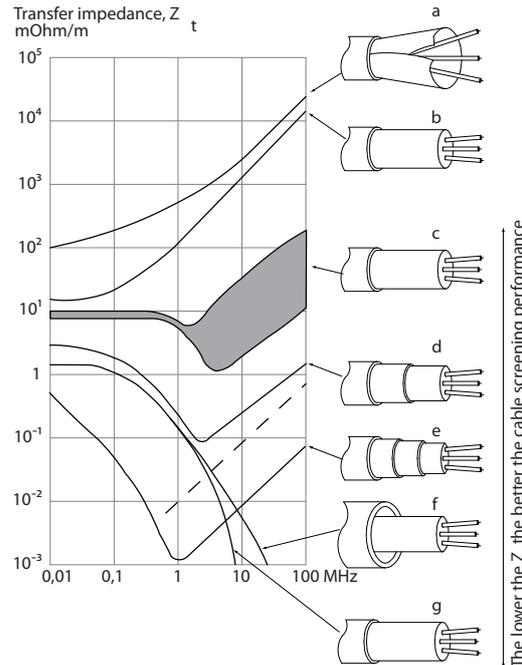
The ability of a cable to reduce the incoming and outgoing radiation of electric noise depends on the transfer impedance ( $Z_T$ ). The screen of a cable is normally designed to reduce the transfer of electric noise; however, a screen with a lower transfer impedance ( $Z_T$ ) value is more effective than a screen with a higher transfer impedance ( $Z_T$ ).

Cable manufacturers rarely state transfer impedance ( $Z_T$ ) but it is often possible to estimate transfer impedance ( $Z_T$ ) by assessing the physical design of the cable.

**Transfer impedance ( $Z_T$ ) can be assessed based on the following factors:**

- The conductivity of the screen material
- The contact resistance between the individual screen conductors
- The screen coverage, which consists of the physical area of the cable covered by the screen - often stated as a percentage value
- Screen type—braided or twisted pattern
- Aluminum-clad with copper wire

- Twisted copper wire or screened steel wire cable
- Single-layer braided copper wire with varying percentage screen coverage
- Double-layer braided copper wire
- Twin layer of braided copper wire with a magnetic, screened/armoured intermediate layer
- Cable that runs in copper tube or steel tube
- Lead cable with 1.1 mm wall thickness



175ZA166.13

Illustration 5.108 Transfer Impedance  $Z_T$

### 5.10.3 Earthing of Screened/Armoured Control Cables

Generally speaking, control cables must be braided screened/armoured and the screen must be connected with a cable clamp at both ends to the metal cabinet of the unit.

Illustration 5.109 indicates how correct earthing is carried out and what to do when in doubt.

- Correct earthing**  
Control cables and cables for serial communication must be fitted with cable clamps at both ends to ensure the best possible electrical contact.
- Wrong earthing**  
Do not use twisted cable ends (pigtailed). They increase the screen impedance at high frequencies.

c. **Protection regarding earth potential between PLC and frequency converter**

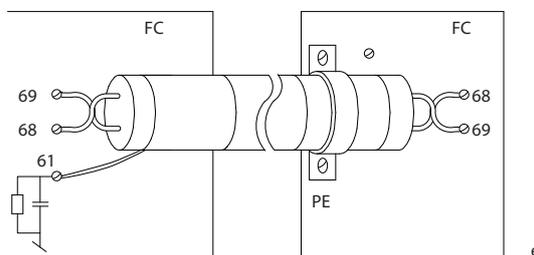
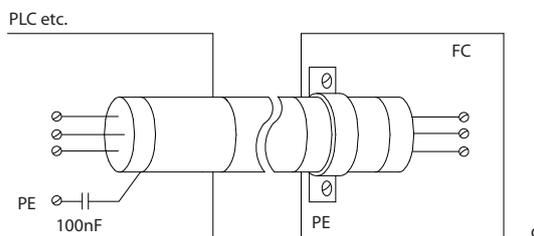
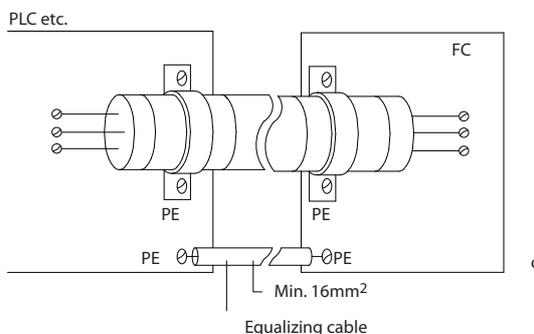
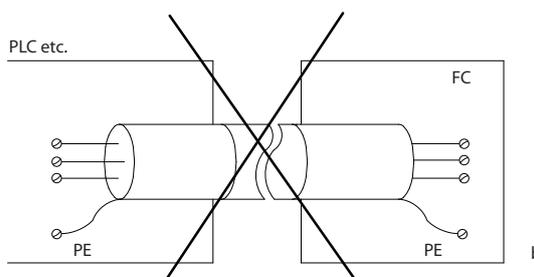
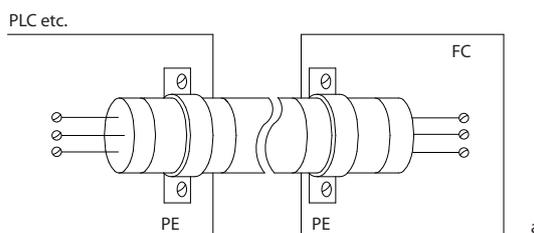
If the earth potential between the frequency converter and the PLC is different, electric noise can occur that disturbs the entire system. Solve this problem by fitting an equalising cable next to the control cable. Minimum cable cross-section: 16 mm<sup>2</sup>.

d. **For 50/60 Hz earth loops**

If long control cables are used, 50/60 Hz earth loops are possible. Solve this problem by connecting one end of the screen to earth via a 100 nF capacitor (keeping leads short).

e. **Cables for serial communication**

Eliminate low-frequency noise currents between two frequency converters by connecting one end of the screen to terminal 61. This terminal is connected to earth via an internal RC link. Use twisted-pair cables for reducing the differential mode interference between the conductors.



130BA051.11

Illustration 5.109 Earthing

### 5.11 Residual Current Device

Use RCD relays, multiple protective earthing, or earthing as extra protection to comply with local safety regulations.

If an earth fault appears, a DC content could develop in the faulty current.

If RCD relays are used, local regulations must be observed.

Relays must be suitable for protection of 3-phase equipment with a bridge rectifier and for a brief discharge on power-up see *2.12 Earth Leakage Current* for further information.

## 6 Application Examples

### 6.1 Typical Application Examples

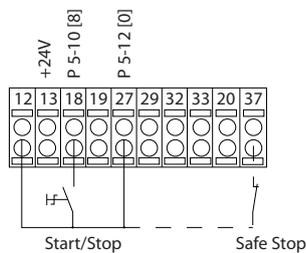
#### 6.1.1 Start/Stop

Terminal 18 = start/stop 5-10 Terminal 18 Digital Input [8] Start

Terminal 27 = No operation 5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input [0] No operation (Default coast inverse)

5-10 Terminal 18 Digital Input = Start (default)

5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input = coast inverse (default)



130BA155.12

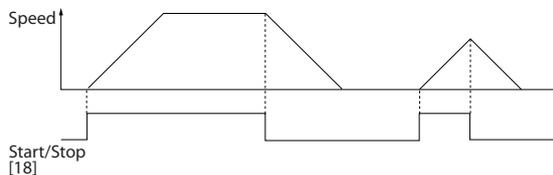


Illustration 6.1 Terminal 37: Available only with Safe Stop Function!

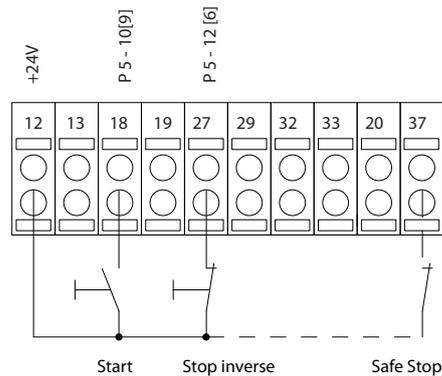
#### 6.1.2 Pulse Start/Stop

Terminal 18 = start/stop 5-10 Terminal 18 Digital Input [9] Latched start

Terminal 27 = Stop 5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input [6] Stop inverse

5-10 Terminal 18 Digital Input = Latched start

5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input = Stop inverse



130BA156.12

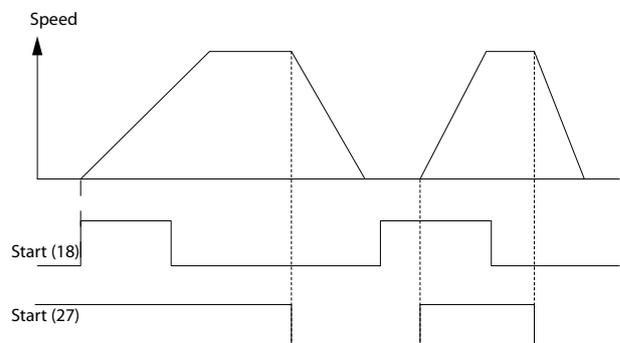


Illustration 6.2 Terminal 37: Available only with Safe Stop Function!

### 6.1.3 Potentiometer Reference

Voltage reference via a potentiometer.

- 3-15 Reference 1 Source [1] = Analog Input 53
- 6-10 Terminal 53 Low Voltage = 0 V
- 6-11 Terminal 53 High Voltage = 10 V
- 6-14 Terminal 53 Low Ref./Feedb. Value = 0 RPM
- 6-15 Terminal 53 High Ref./Feedb. Value = 1.500 RPM
- Switch S201 = OFF (U)

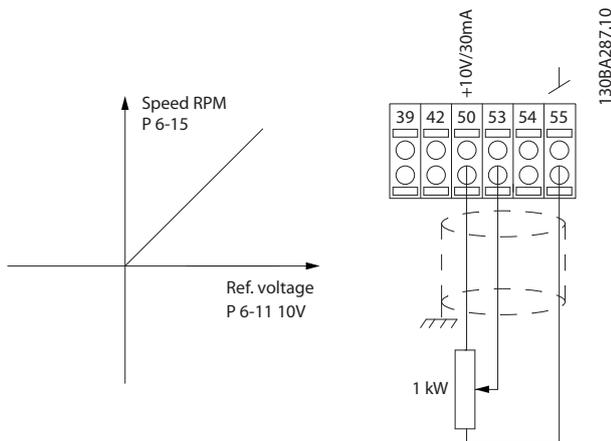


Illustration 6.3 Potentiometer Reference

### 6.1.4 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)

AMA is an algorithm to measure the electrical motor parameters on a motor at standstill, meaning that AMA itself does not supply any torque.

AMA is useful when commissioning systems and optimising the adjustment of the frequency converter to the applied motor. This feature is used where the default setting does not apply to the connected motor.

1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA) allows a choice of complete AMA with determination of all electrical motor parameters or reduced AMA with determination of the stator resistance  $R_s$  only.

The duration of a total AMA varies from a few minutes on small motors to more than 15 minutes on large motors.

#### Limitations and preconditions:

- For the AMA to determine the motor parameters optimally, enter the correct motor nameplate data in 1-20 Motor Power [kW] to 1-28 Motor Rotation Check.
- For the best adjustment of the frequency converter, carry out AMA on a cold motor. Repeated AMA runs could lead to a heating of the motor, which results in an increase of the

stator resistance,  $R_s$ . Normally, this increase is not critical.

- AMA can only be carried out if the rated motor current is minimum 35% of the rated output current of the frequency converter. AMA can be carried out on up to one oversize motor.
- It is possible to carry out a reduced AMA test with a Sine-wave filter installed. Avoid carrying out a complete AMA with a Sine-wave filter. If an overall setting is required, remove the Sine-wave filter while running a total AMA. After completion of the AMA, reinsert the Sine-wave filter.
- If motors are coupled in parallel, use only reduced AMA if any.
- Avoid running a complete AMA when using synchronous motors. If synchronous motors are applied, run a reduced AMA and manually set the extended motor data. The AMA function does not apply to permanent magnet motors.
- The frequency converter does not produce motor torque during an AMA. During an AMA, it is imperative that the application does not force the motor shaft to run, which is known to happen with wind milling in ventilation systems, for example. This disturbs the AMA function.
- AMA cannot be activated when running a PM motor (when 1-10 Motor Construction is set to [1] PM non-salient SPM).

### 6.1.5 Smart Logic Control

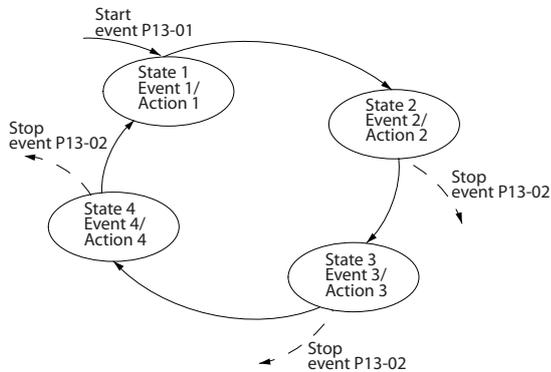
The Smart Logic Control (SLC) is essentially a sequence of user-defined actions (see 13-52 SL Controller Action) executed by the SLC when the associated user-defined event (see 13-51 SL Controller Event) is evaluated as TRUE by the SLC.

Events and actions are each numbered and are linked in pairs called states, which means that when event [1] is fulfilled (attains the value TRUE), action [1] is executed. After this sequence, the conditions of event [2] will be evaluated and if evaluated TRUE, action [2] will be executed, and so on. Events and actions are placed in array parameters.

Only one event is evaluated at any time. If an event is evaluated as FALSE, nothing happens (in the SLC) during the present scan interval and no other events are evaluated, so that when the SLC starts, it evaluates event [1] (and only event [1]) each scan interval. Only when event [1] is evaluated TRUE, the SLC executes action [1] and starts evaluating event [2].

It is possible to program from 0 to 20 events and actions. When the last event/action has been executed, the

sequence starts over again from event [1]/action [1]. The illustration shows an example with three events/actions:



130BA062.13

Illustration 6.4 Events and Actions

### 6.1.6 Smart Logic Control Programming

In applications where a PLC is generating a simple sequence, the SLC takes over elementary tasks from the main control.

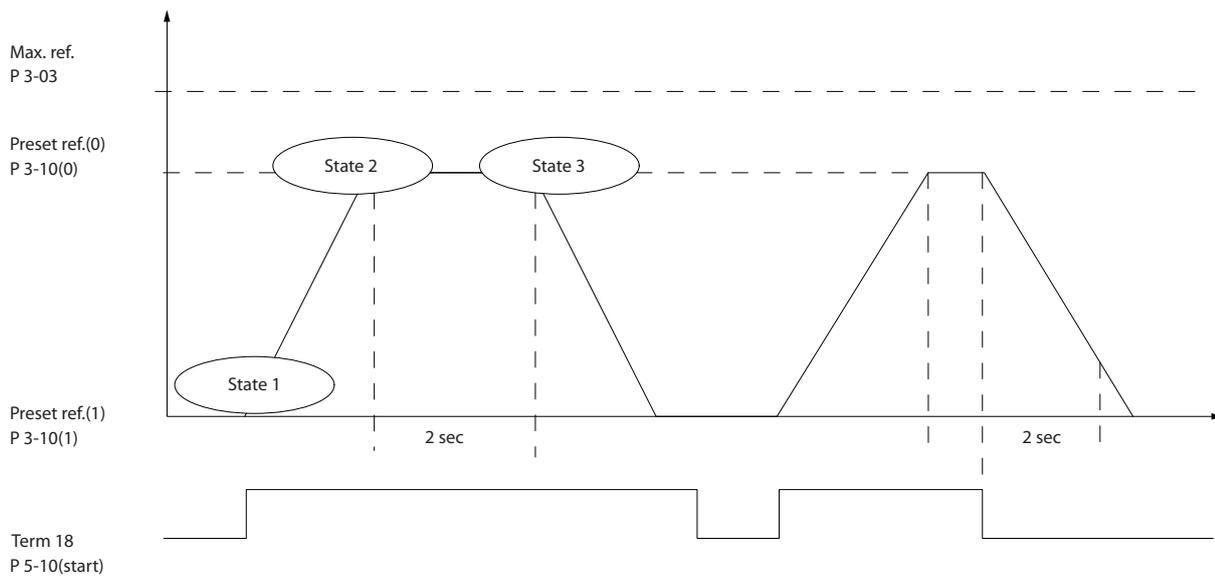
SLC is designed to act from event send to or generated in the frequency converter. The frequency converter then performs the pre-programmed action.

6

### 6.1.7 SLC Application Example

One sequence 1:

Start – ramp up – run at reference speed 2 seconds – ramp down and hold shaft until stop.



130BA157.11

Illustration 6.5 Ramp Up/Ramp Down

Set the ramping times in 3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time and 3-42 Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time to the wanted times

$$t_{ramp} = \frac{t_{acc} \times n_{norm}^{(par. 1 - 25)}}{ref[RPM]}$$

Set term 27 to No Operation (5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input)

Set Preset reference 0 to first preset speed (3-10 Preset Reference [0]) in percentage of Max reference speed (3-03 Maximum Reference). Ex.: 60%

Set preset reference 1 to second preset speed (3-10 Preset Reference [1] Ex.: 0% (zero).

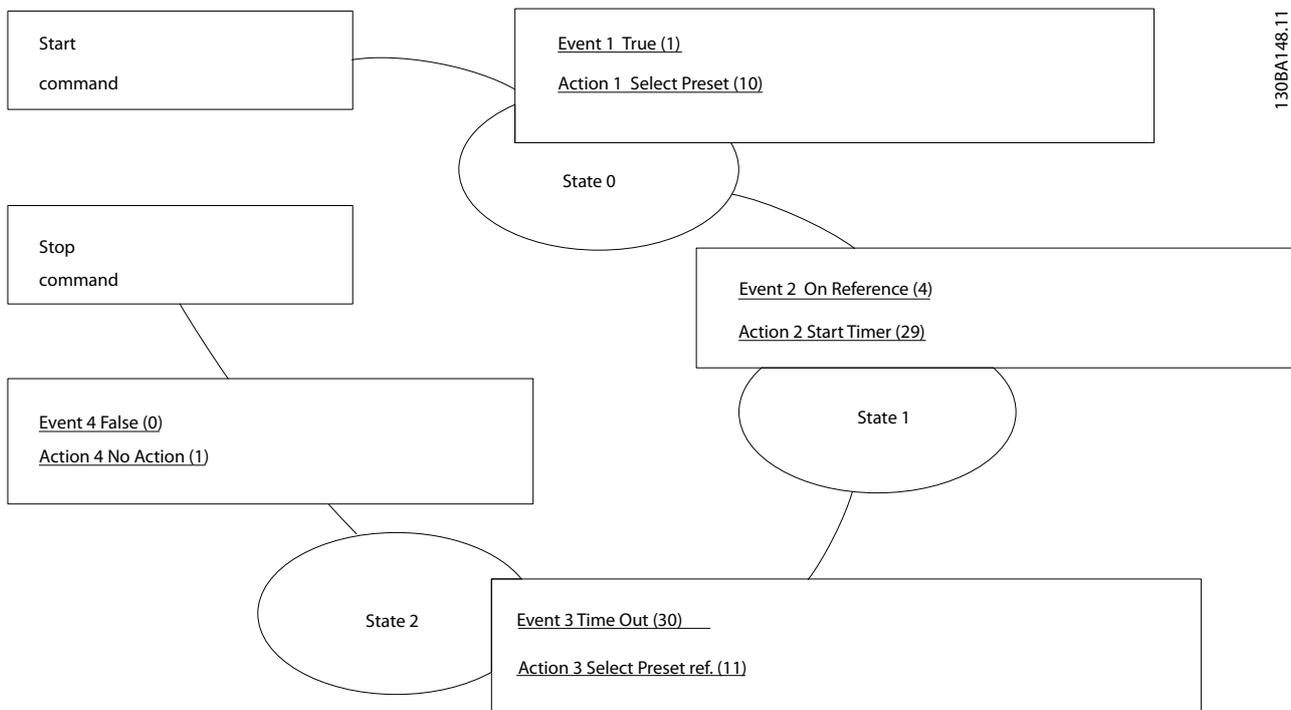
Set the timer 0 for constant running speed in 13-20 SL Controller Timer [0]. Ex.: 2 s

Set Event 1 in 13-51 SL Controller Event [1] to True [1]

Set Event 2 in 13-51 SL Controller Event [2] to On Reference [4]

Set Event 3 in 13-51 SL Controller Event [3] to Time Out 0 [30]  
 Set Event 4 in 13-51 SL Controller Event [4] to False [0]

Set Action 1 in 13-52 SL Controller Action [1] to Select preset 0 [10]  
 Set Action 2 in 13-52 SL Controller Action [2] to Start Timer 0 [29]  
 Set Action 3 in 13-52 SL Controller Action [3] to Select preset 1 [11]  
 Set Action 4 in 13-52 SL Controller Action [4] to No Action [1]



130BA148.11

Illustration 6.6 SLC Application Example

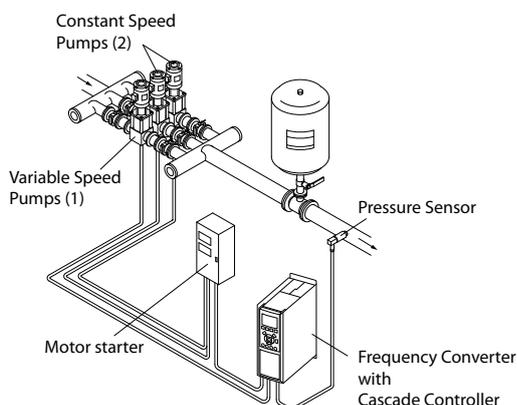
Set the Smart Logic Control in 13-00 SL Controller Mode to ON.

Start/stop command is applied on terminal 18. If the stop signal is applied, the frequency converter ramps down and goes into free mode.

### 6.1.8 BASIC Cascade Controller

The BASIC Cascade Controller is used for pump applications where a certain pressure (“head”) or level must be maintained over a wide dynamic range. Running a large pump at variable speed over a wide range is not an ideal solution because of low pump efficiency at lower speed. In a practical way, the limit is 25% of the rated full load speed for the pump.

In the BASIC Cascade Controller, the frequency converter controls a variable speed (lead) motor as the variable speed pump and can stage up to two additional constant speed pumps on and off. By varying the speed of the initial pump, variable speed control of the entire system is provided, maintaining constant pressure while eliminating pressure surges, resulting in reduced system stress, and quieter operation in pumping systems.



130BA362.10

Illustration 6.7 BASIC Cascade Controller

#### Fixed Lead Pump

The motors must be of equal size. The BASIC Cascade Controller allows the frequency converter to control up to three equal size pumps using the frequency converter’s two built-in relays. When the variable pump (lead) is connected directly to the frequency converter, the two built-in relays control the other two pumps. When lead pump alternations are enabled, pumps are connected to the built-in relays and the frequency converter can operate two pumps.

#### Lead Pump Alternation

The motors must be of equal size. This function makes it possible to cycle the frequency converter between the pumps in the system (maximum of two pumps). In this operation, the run time between pumps is equalised reducing the required pump maintenance and increasing reliability and lifetime of the system. The alternation of the lead pump can take place at a command signal or at staging (adding another pump).

The command can be a manual alternation or an alternation event signal. If the alternation event is selected, the lead pump alternation takes place every time the event occurs. Selections include whenever an alternation timer expires, at a predefined time of day or when the lead pump goes into sleep mode. The actual system load determines staging.

A separate parameter limits alternation only to take place if total capacity required is > 50%. Total pump capacity is determined as lead pump plus fixed speed pumps capacities.

#### Bandwidth Management

In cascade control systems, to avoid frequent switching of fixed speed pumps, the desired system pressure is kept within a bandwidth rather than at a constant level. The staging bandwidth provides the required bandwidth for operation. When a large and quick change in system pressure occurs, the override bandwidth overrides the staging bandwidth to prevent immediate response to a short duration pressure change. An override bandwidth timer can be programmed to prevent staging until the system pressure has stabilised and normal control established.

When the cascade controller is enabled and the drive issues a trip alarm, the system head is maintained by staging and destaging fixed speed pumps. To prevent frequent staging and destaging and minimise pressure fluctuations, a wider fixed speed bandwidth is used instead of the staging bandwidth.

### 6.1.9 Pump Staging with Lead Pump Alternation

With lead pump alternation enabled, a maximum of two pumps are controlled. At an alternation command, the PID stops, the lead pump ramps to minimum frequency ( $f_{min}$ ) and after a delay, it ramps to maximum frequency ( $f_{max}$ ). When the speed of the lead pump reaches the de-staging frequency, the fixed speed pump is cut out (de-staged). The lead pump continues to ramp up and then ramps down to a stop and the two relays are cut out.

and emergency has stopped all pumps, all pumps are running, fixed speed pumps are being staged/de-staged and lead pump alternation is occurring.

- De-stage at no-flow ensures that all fixed speed pumps are stopped individually until the no-flow status disappears.

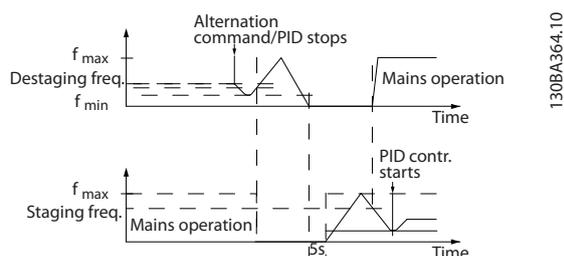


Illustration 6.8 Lead Pump Alternation

After a time delay, the relay for the fixed speed pump cuts in (staged) and this pump becomes the new lead pump. The new lead pump ramps up to maximum speed and then down to minimum speed. When ramping down and reaching the staging frequency, the old lead pump is now cut in (staged) on the mains as the new fixed speed pump.

If the lead pump has been running at minimum frequency ( $f_{min}$ ) for a programmed amount of time, with a fixed speed pump running, the lead pump contributes little to the system. When programmed value of the timer expires, the lead pump is removed avoiding water heating problems.

### 6.1.10 System Status and Operation

If the lead pump goes into sleep mode, the function is displayed on the LCP. It is possible to alternate the lead pump on a sleep mode condition.

When the cascade controller is enabled, the operation status for each pump and the cascade controller is displayed on the LCP. Information displayed includes:

- Pumps Status, is a read out of the status for the relays assigned to each pump. The display shows pumps that are disabled, off, running on the frequency converter or running on the mains/motor starter.
- Cascade Status, is a read out of the status for the Cascade Controller. The display shows that the Cascade Controller is disabled, all pumps are off,

### 6.1.11 Cascade Controller Wiring Diagram

The wiring diagram shows an example with the built-in BASIC Cascade Controller with one variable speed pump (lead) and two fixed speed pumps, a 4–20 mA transmitter and System Safety Interlock.

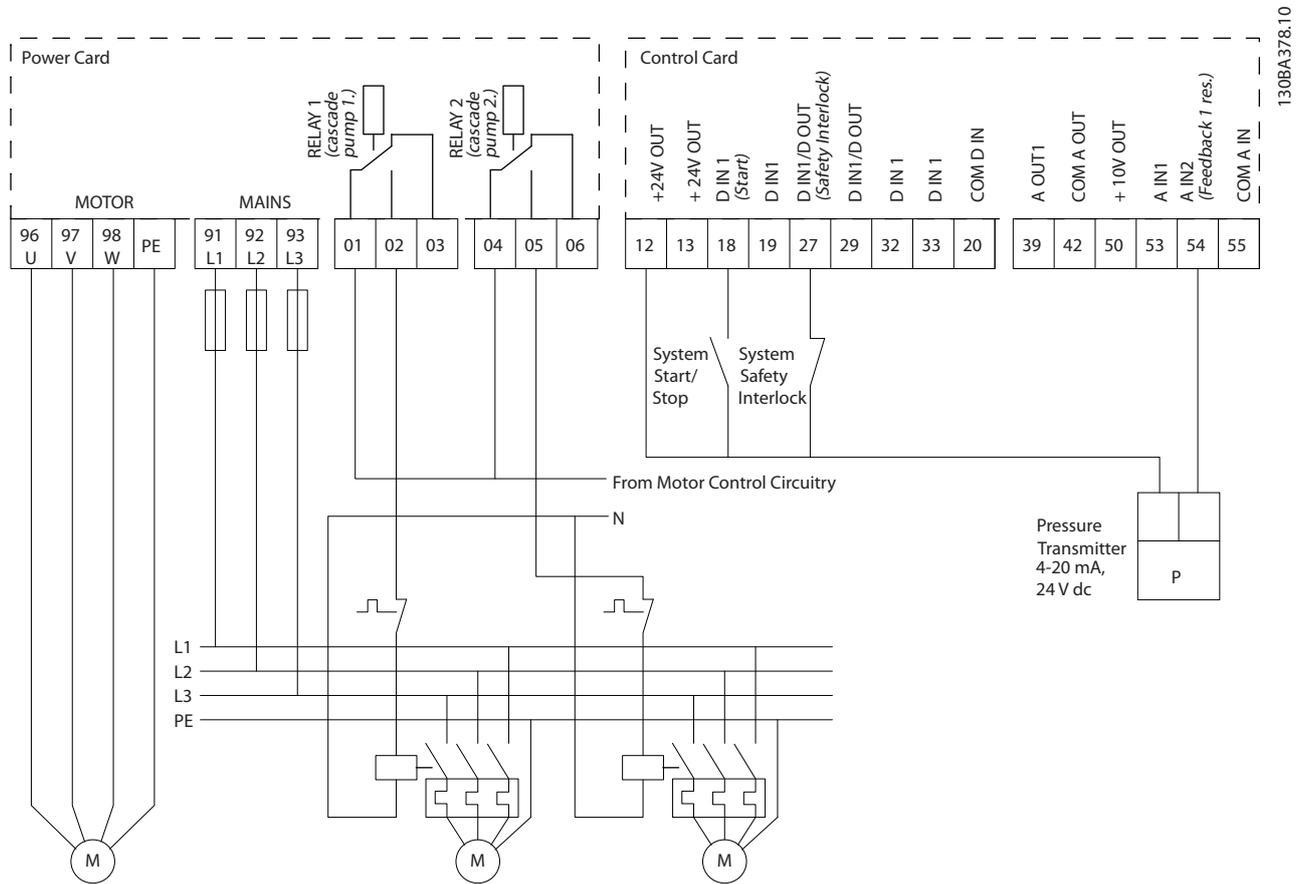


Illustration 6.9 Cascade Controller Wiring Diagram

6

130BA378.10

### 6.1.12 Fixed Variable Speed Pump Wiring Diagram

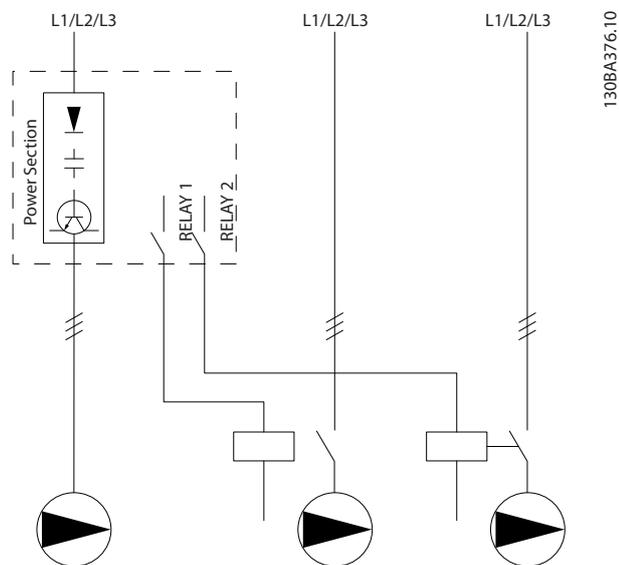


Illustration 6.10 Fixed Variable Speed Pump Wiring Diagram

- K1 blocks for K2 via the mechanical interlock preventing mains to be connected to the output of the frequency converter (via K1).
- Auxiliary break contact on K1 prevents K3 to cut in.
- RELAY 2 controls contactor K4 for on/off control of the fixed speed pump.
- At alternation, both relays de-energize and now RELAY 2 are energized as the first relay.

### 6.1.13 Lead Pump Alternation Wiring Diagram

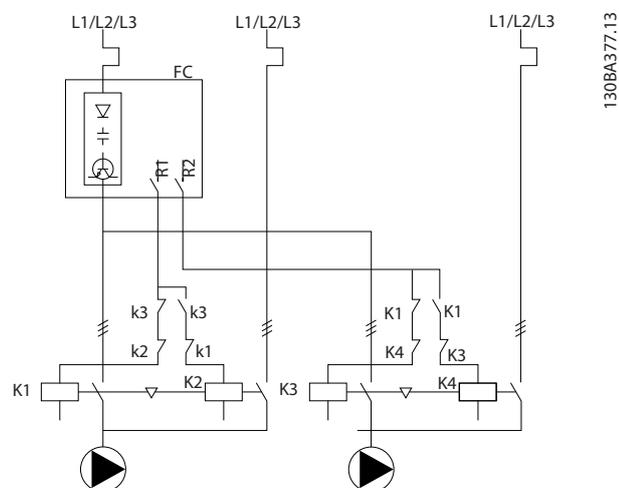


Illustration 6.11 Lead Pump Alternation Wiring Diagram

Every pump must be connected to two contactors (K1/K2 and K3/K4) with a mechanical interlock. Thermal relays or other motor protection devices must be applied according to local regulation and/or individual demands.

- RELAY 1 (R1) and RELAY 2 (R2) are the built-in relays in the frequency converter.
- When all relays are de-energized, the first built-in relay that is energized cuts in the contactor corresponding to the pump controlled by the relay. For example, RELAY 1 cuts in contactor K1, which becomes the lead pump.

### 6.1.14 Start/Stop Conditions

Commands assigned to digital inputs. See parameter group 5-1\* *Digital Inputs*.

	Variable speed pump (lead)	Fixed speed pumps
Start (SYSTEM START /STOP)	Ramps up (if stopped and there is a demand)	Staging (if stopped and there is a demand)
Lead Pump Start	Ramps up if SYSTEM START is active	Not affected
Coast (EMERGENCY STOP)	Coast to stop	Cut out (built in relays are de-energized)
Safety Interlock	Coast to stop	Cut out (built in relays are de-energized)

**Table 6.1** Commands Assigned to Digital Input

	Variable speed pump (lead)	Fixed speed pumps
Hand On	Ramps up (if stopped by a normal stop command) or stays in operation if already running	Destaging (if running)
Off	Ramps down	Cut out
Auto On	Starts and stops according to commands via terminals or serial bus	Staging/Destaging

**Table 6.2** Function of LCP Keys

# 7 RS-485 Installation and Set-up

## 7.1 Introduction

RS-485 is a two-wire bus interface compatible with multi-drop network topology. Nodes can be connected as a bus, or via drop cables from a common trunk line. A total of 32 nodes can be connected to one network segment. Repeaters divide network segments. Note each repeater function as a node within the segment in which it is installed. Each node connected within a given network must have a unique node address, across all segments. Terminate each segment at both ends, using either the termination switch (S801) of the frequency converters or a biased termination resistor network. Always use screened twisted pair (STP) cable for bus cabling, and always follow good common installation practice. Low-impedance earth connection of the screen at every node is important, including at high frequencies. Thus, connect a large surface of the screen to earth, with a cable clamp or a conductive cable gland, for example. If necessary, apply potential-equalizing cables to maintain the same earth potential throughout the network. Particularly in installations with long cables. To prevent impedance mismatch, always use the same type of cable throughout the entire network. When connecting a motor to the frequency converter, always use screened motor cable.

Cable	Screened twisted pair (STP)
Impedance	120 Ω
Cable length	Max. 1,200 m (including drop lines)
	Max. 500 m station-to-station

Table 7.1 Motor Cable

### 7.1.1 Hardware Setup

Use the terminator dip switch on the main control board of the frequency converter to terminate the RS-485 bus.

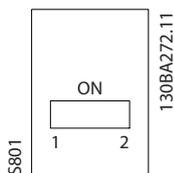


Illustration 7.1 Terminator Switch Factory Setting

### NOTE

The factory setting for the dip switch is OFF.

### 7.1.2 Parameter Settings for Modbus Communication

The parameters in Table 7.2 apply to the RS-485 interface (FC-port)

Parameter	Function
8-30 Protocol	Select the application protocol to run on the RS-485 interface
8-31 Address	Set the node address. Note: The address range depends on the protocol selected in <i>8-30 Protocol</i>
8-32 Baud Rate	Set the baud rate. Note: The default baud rate depends on the protocol selected in <i>8-30 Protocol</i>
8-33 Parity / Stop Bits	Set the parity and number of stop bits. Note: The default selection depends on the protocol selected in <i>8-30 Protocol</i>
8-35 Minimum Response Delay	Specify a minimum delay time between receiving a request and transmitting a response, which can be used for overcoming modem turnaround delays.
8-36 Maximum Response Delay	Specify a maximum delay time between transmitting a request and receiving a response.
8-37 Maximum Inter-Char Delay	Specify a maximum delay time between two received bytes to ensure timeout when transmission is interrupted.

Table 7.2 Modbus Communication Parameters

### 7.1.3 EMC Precautions

To achieve interference-free operation of the RS-485 network, the following EMC precautions are recommended.

Relevant national and local regulations, regarding protective earth connection, for example, must be observed. The RS-485 communication cable must be kept away from motor and brake resistor cables to avoid coupling of high frequency noise from one cable to another. Normally a distance of 200 mm (8 in) is sufficient, but keeping the greatest possible distance between the cables is recommended, especially where cables run in parallel over long distances. When crossing is unavoidable, the RS-485 cable must cross motor and brake resistor cables at an angle of 90°.

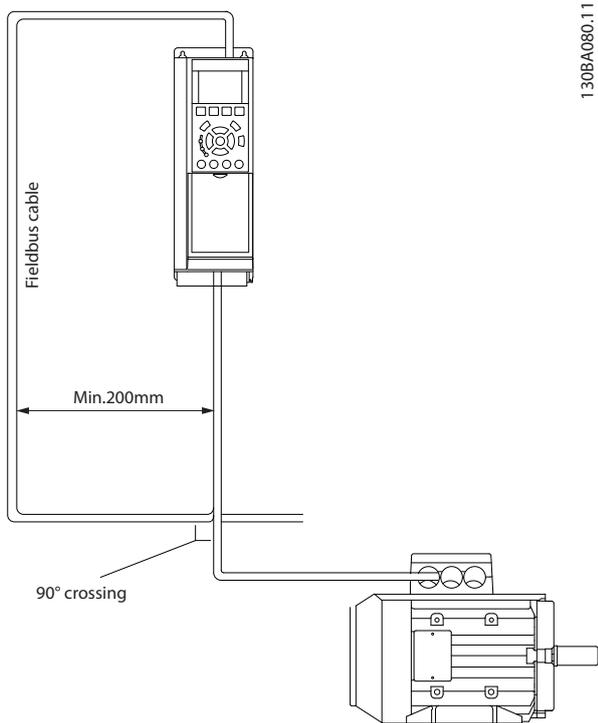


Illustration 7.2 EMC Precautions

## 7.2 FC Protocol Overview

The FC protocol, also referred to as FC bus or Standard bus, is the Danfoss standard fieldbus. It defines an access technique according to the master-slave principle for communications via a serial bus.

One master and a maximum of 126 slaves can be connected to the bus. The master selects the individual slaves via an address character in the telegram. A slave itself can never transmit without first being requested to do so, and direct message transfer between the individual slaves is not possible. Communications occur in the half-duplex mode.

The master function cannot be transferred to another node (single-master system).

The physical layer is RS-485, thus utilising the RS-485 port built into the frequency converter. The FC protocol supports different telegram formats:

- A short format of 8 bytes for process data.
- A long format of 16 bytes that also includes a parameter channel.
- A format used for texts.

## 7.2.1 Modbus RTU

The FC protocol provides access to the control word and bus reference of the frequency converter.

**The control word allows the Modbus master to control several important functions of the frequency converter:**

- Start
- Stop of the frequency converter in various ways:
  - Coast stop
  - Quick stop
  - DC Brake stop
  - Normal (ramp) stop
- Reset after a fault trip
- Run at various preset speeds
- Run in reverse
- Change of the active set-up
- Control of the two relays built into the frequency converter

The bus reference is commonly used for speed control. It is also possible to access the parameters, read their values, and where possible, write values to them, permitting a range of control options, including controlling the setpoint of the frequency converter when its internal PID controller is used.

## 7.3 Network Connection

One or more frequency converters can be connected to a control (or master) using the RS-485 standardised interface. Terminal 68 is connected to the P signal (TX+, RX+), while terminal 69 is connected to the N signal (TX-, RX-). See drawings in 5.10.3 *Earthing of Screened/Armoured Control Cables*

If more than one frequency converter is connected to a master, use parallel connections.

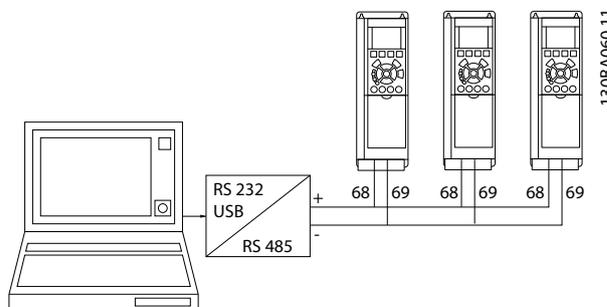


Illustration 7.3 Parallel Connections

To avoid potential equalising currents in the screen, earth the cable screen via terminal 61, which is connected to the frame via an RC-link.

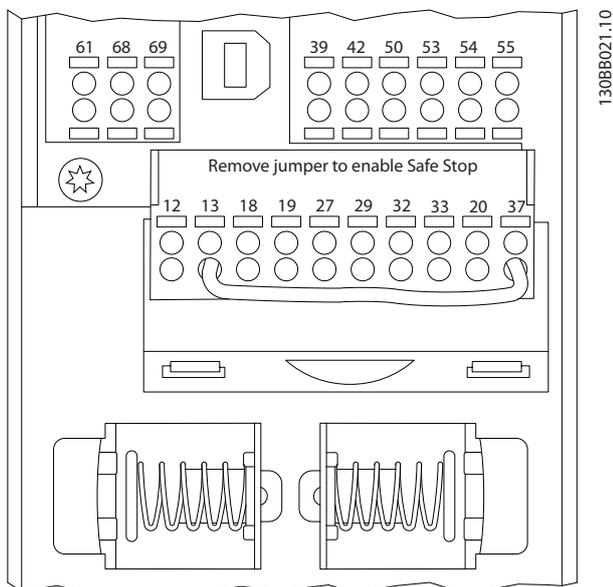


Illustration 7.4 Control Card Terminals

1308B021.10

195NA036.10

## 7.4 FC Protocol Message Framing Structure

### 7.4.1 Content of a Character (byte)

Each character transferred begins with a start bit. Then eight data bits are transferred, each corresponding to a byte. Each character is secured via a parity bit. This bit is set at "1" when it reaches parity. Parity is when there is an equal number of 1 characters in the eight data bits and the parity bit in total. A stop bit completes a character, thus consisting of 11 bits in all.

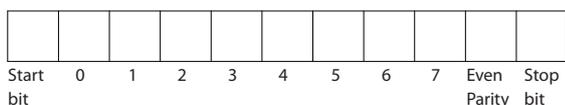


Illustration 7.5 Character (Byte)

### 7.4.2 Telegram Structure

Each telegram has the following structure:

1. Start character (STX)=02 Hex
2. A byte denoting the telegram length (LGE)
3. A byte denoting the frequency converter address (ADR)

A number of data bytes (variable, depending on the type of telegram) follows.

A data control byte (BCC) completes the telegram.



Illustration 7.6 Telegram Structure

195NA099.10

### 7.4.3 Telegram Length (LGE)

The telegram length is the number of data bytes plus the address byte ADR and the data control byte BCC.

- The length of telegrams with 4 data bytes is  $LGE=4+1+1=6$  bytes
- The length of telegrams with 12 data bytes is  $LGE=12+1+1=14$  bytes
- The length of telegrams containing texts is  $10^{1)}+n$  bytes

<sup>1)</sup> The 10 represents the fixed characters, while the "n" is variable (depending on the length of the text).

### 7.4.4 Frequency Converter Address (ADR)

Two different address formats are used.

The address range of the frequency converter is either 1–31 or 1–126.

1. Address format 1–31:

Bit 7=0 (address format 1–31 active)

Bit 6 is not used

Bit 5=1: Broadcast, address bits (0–4) are not used

Bit 5=0: No Broadcast

Bit 0–4=frequency converter address 1–31

2. Address format 1–126:

Bit 7=1 (address format 1–126 active)

Bit 0–6=frequency converter address 1–126

Bit 0–6=0 Broadcast

The slave returns the address byte unchanged to the master in the response telegram.

### 7.4.5 Data Control Byte (BCC)

The checksum is calculated as an XOR-function. Before the first byte in the telegram is received, the Calculated Checksum is 0.

### 7.4.6 The Data Field

The structure of data blocks depends on the type of telegram. There are three types, and the type applies for both control telegrams (master→slave) and response telegrams (slave→master).

The three types of telegram are:

#### Process block (PCD)

The PCD is made up of a data block of 4 bytes (two words) and contains:

- Control word and reference value (from master to slave)
- Status word and present output frequency (from slave to master)



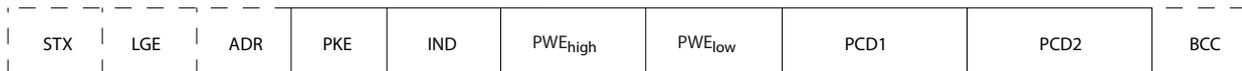
130BA269.10

Illustration 7.7 PCD

7

#### Parameter block

The parameter block is used to transfer parameters between master and slave. The data block is made up of 12 bytes (6 words) and also contains the process block.

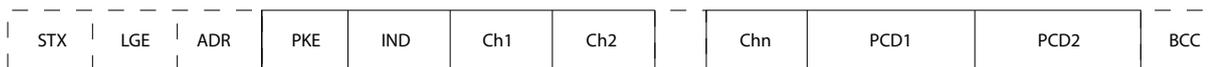


130BA271.10

Illustration 7.8 Parameter Block

#### Text block

The text block is used to read or write texts via the data block.

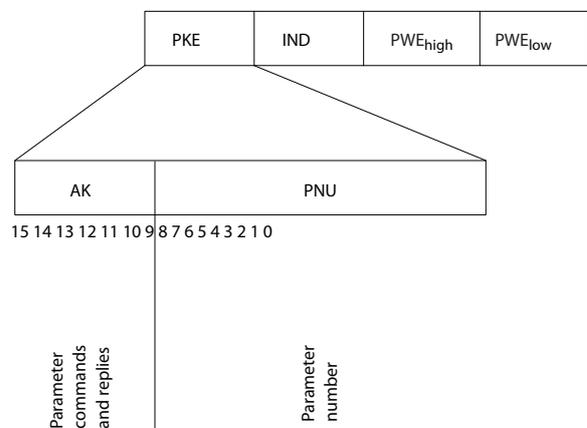


130BA270.10

Illustration 7.9 Text Block

### 7.4.7 The PKE Field

The PKE field contains two sub fields: Parameter command and response AK, and Parameter number PNU:



130BA268.10

Illustration 7.10

Bits no. 12–15 transfer parameter commands from master to slave and return processed slave responses to the master.

Bit no.				Parameter command
15	14	13	12	
0	0	0	0	No command
0	0	0	1	Read parameter value
0	0	1	0	Write parameter value in RAM (word)
0	0	1	1	Write parameter value in RAM (double word)
1	1	0	1	Write parameter value in RAM and EEprom (double word)
1	1	1	0	Write parameter value in RAM and EEprom (word)
1	1	1	1	Read/write text

**Table 7.3 Parameter Commands Master⇒Slave**

Bit no.				Response
15	14	13	12	
0	0	0	0	No response
0	0	0	1	Parameter value transferred (word)
0	0	1	0	Parameter value transferred (double word)
0	1	1	1	Command cannot be performed
1	1	1	1	text transferred

**Table 7.4 Response Slave⇒Master**

If the command cannot be performed, the slave sends this response:

*0111 Command cannot be performed*

- and issues the following fault report in the parameter value (PWE):

PWE low (Hex)	Fault report
0	The parameter number used does not exist
1	There is no write access to the defined parameter
2	Data value exceeds the parameter limits
3	The sub index used does not exist
4	The parameter is not the array type
5	The data type does not match the defined parameter
11	Data change in the defined parameter is not possible in the present mode of the frequency converter. Certain parameters can only be changed when the motor is turned off
82	There is no bus access to the defined parameter
83	Data change is not possible because factory setup is selected

**Table 7.5 Fault Report**

## 7.4.8 Parameter Number (PNU)

Bits no. 0–11 transfer parameter numbers. The function of the relevant parameter is defined in the parameter description in the Programming Guide.

## 7.4.9 Index (IND)

The index is used together with the parameter number to read/write-access parameters with an index, for example, *15-30 Alarm Log: Error Code*. The index consists of 2 bytes, a low byte and a high byte.

Only the low byte is used as an index.

## 7.4.10 Parameter Value (PWE)

The parameter value block consists of two words (4 bytes), and the value depends on the defined command (AK). The master prompts for a parameter value when the PWE block contains no value. To change a parameter value (write), write the new value in the PWE block and send from the master to the slave.

When a slave responds to a parameter request (read command), the present parameter value in the PWE block is transferred and returned to the master. If a parameter contains not a numerical value but several data options, for example, *0-01 Language [0] English*, and *[4] Danish*, select the data value by entering the value in the PWE block. See example - selecting a data value. Serial communication is only capable of reading parameters containing data type 9 (text string).

*15-40 FC Type to 15-53 Power Card Serial Number* contain data type 9.

For example, read the unit size and mains voltage range in *15-40 FC Type*. When a text string is transferred (read), the length of the telegram is variable, and the texts are of different lengths. The telegram length is defined in the second byte of the telegram, LGE. When using text transfer, the index character indicates whether it is a read or a write command.

To read a text via the PWE block, set the parameter command (AK) to 'F' Hex. The index character high-byte must be "4."

Some parameters contain text that can be written via the serial bus. To write a text via the PWE block, set the parameter command (AK) to 'F' Hex. The index characters high-byte must be "5."

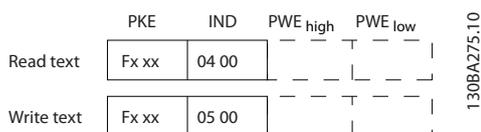


Illustration 7.11 PWE

### 7.4.11 Data Types Supported

Unsigned means that there is no operational sign in the telegram.

Data types	Description
3	Integer 16
4	Integer 32
5	Unsigned 8
6	Unsigned 16
7	Unsigned 32
9	Text string
10	Byte string
13	Time difference
33	Reserved
35	Bit sequence

Table 7.6 Data Types Supported

### 7.4.12 Conversion

The various attributes of each parameter are displayed in the section factory settings. Parameter values are transferred as whole numbers only. Conversion factors are therefore used to transfer decimals.

4-12 Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz] has a conversion factor of 0.1.

To preset the minimum frequency to 10 Hz, transfer the value 100. A conversion factor of 0.1 means that the value transferred is multiplied by 0.1. The value 100 is thus perceived as 10.0.

Examples:

- 0 s⇒conversion index 0
- 0.00 s⇒conversion index -2
- 0 ms⇒conversion index -3
- 0.00 ms⇒conversion index -5

Conversion index	Conversion factor
100	
75	
74	
67	
6	1000000
5	100000
4	10000
3	1000
2	100
1	10
0	1
-1	0.1
-2	0.01
-3	0.001
-4	0.0001
-5	0.00001
-6	0.000001
-7	0.0000001

Table 7.7 Conversion Table

### 7.4.13 Process Words (PCD)

The block of process words is divided into two blocks of 16 bits, which always occur in the defined sequence.

PCD 1	PCD 2
Control Telegram (master⇒slave Control word)	Reference-value
Control Telegram (slave⇒master) Status word	Present output frequency

Table 7.8 PCD

## 7.5 Examples

### 7.5.1 Writing a Parameter Value

Change 4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz] to 100 Hz. Write the data in EEPROM.

PKE=E19E Hex - Write single word in 4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]

IND=0000 Hex

PWE<sub>high</sub>=0000 Hex

PWE<sub>low</sub>=03E8 Hex - Data value 1,000, corresponding to 100 Hz, see 7.4.12 Conversion.

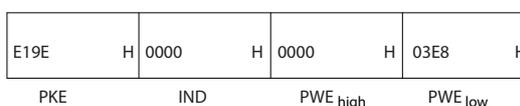


Illustration 7.12 Telegram

## NOTE

4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz] is a single word, and the parameter command for write in EEPROM is "E." Parameter number 4-14 is 19E in hexadecimal.

119E	H	0000	H	0000	H	03E8	H
PKE		IND		PWE <sub>high</sub>		PWE <sub>low</sub>	

130BA093.10

Illustration 7.13 Response from Master to Slave

## 7.5.2 Reading a Parameter Value

Read the value in 3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time

PKE=1,155 Hex - Read parameter value in 3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time

IND=0000 Hex

PWE<sub>high</sub>=0000 Hex

PWE<sub>low</sub>=0000 Hex

1155	H	0000	H	0000	H	0000	H
PKE		IND		PWE <sub>high</sub>		PWE <sub>low</sub>	

130BA094.10

Illustration 7.14 Parameter Value

If the value in 3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time is 10 s, the response from the slave to the master is:

1155	H	0000	H	0000	H	03E8	H
PKE		IND		PWE <sub>high</sub>		PWE <sub>low</sub>	

130BA267.10

Illustration 7.15 Response from Slave to Master

3E8 Hex corresponds to 1000 decimal. The conversion index for 3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time is -2. 3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time is of the type *Unsigned 32*.

## 7.6 Modbus RTU Overview

### 7.6.1 Assumptions

Danfoss assumes that the installed controller supports the interfaces in this document, and strictly observes all requirements and limitations stipulated in the controller and frequency converter.

### 7.6.2 Prerequisite Knowledge

The Modbus RTU (Remote Terminal Unit) is designed to communicate with any controller that supports the interfaces defined in this document. It is assumed that the reader has full knowledge of the capabilities and limitations of the controller.

### 7.6.3 Modbus RTU Overview

Regardless of the type of physical communication networks, the Modbus RTU Overview describes the process a controller uses to request access to another device. This process includes how the Modbus RTU responds to requests from another device, and how errors are detected and reported. It also establishes a common format for the layout and contents of message fields.

During communications over a Modbus RTU network, the protocol determines:

- How each controller learns its device address
- Recognises a message addressed to it
- Determines which actions to take
- Extracts any data or other information contained in the message

If a reply is required, the controller constructs the reply message and sends it.

Controllers communicate using a master-slave technique in which only one device (the master) can initiate transactions (called queries). The other devices (slaves) respond by supplying the requested data to the master, or by responding to the the query.

The master can address individual slaves, or can initiate a broadcast message to all slaves. Slaves return a message, called a response, to queries that are addressed to them individually. No responses are returned to broadcast queries from the master. The Modbus RTU protocol establishes the format for the master query by placing into it the device (or broadcast) address, a function code defining the requested action, any data to send, and an error-checking field. The slave response message is also constructed using Modbus protocol. It contains fields confirming the action taken, any data to return, and an error-checking field. If an error occurs in receipt of the message, or if the slave is unable to perform the requested action, the slave constructs an error message, and send it in response, or a time-out occurs.

## 7.6.4 Frequency Converter with Modbus RTU

The frequency converter communicates in Modbus RTU format over the built-in RS-485 interface. Modbus RTU provides access to the control word and bus reference of the frequency converter.

The control word allows the Modbus master to control several important functions of the frequency converter:

- Start
- Stop of the frequency converter in various ways:
  - Coast stop
  - Quick stop
  - DC Brake stop
  - Normal (ramp) stop
- Reset after a fault trip
- Run at various preset speeds
- Run in reverse
- Change the active set-up
- Control the built-in relay of the frequency converter

The bus reference is commonly used for speed control. It is also possible to access the parameters, read their values, and, where possible, write values to them, permitting a range of control options, including controlling the setpoint of the frequency converter when its internal PI controller is used.

## 7.7 Network Configuration

### 7.7.1 Frequency Converter with Modbus RTU

To enable Modbus RTU on the frequency converter, set the following parameters:

Parameter	Setting
8-30 Protocol	Modbus RTU
8-31 Address	1-247
8-32 Baud Rate	2400-115200
8-33 Parity / Stop Bits	Even parity, 1 stop bit (default)

## 7.8 Modbus RTU Message Framing Structure

### 7.8.1 Frequency Converter with Modbus RTU

The controllers are set up to communicate on the Modbus network using RTU (Remote Terminal Unit) mode, with each byte in a message containing two 4 bit hexadecimal characters. The format for each byte is shown in *Table 7.10*.

Start bit	Data byte						Stop/parity	Stop

Table 7.9 Example Format

Coding System	8-bit binary, hexadecimal 0-9, A-F. two hexadecimal characters contained in each 8-bit field of the message
Bits Per Byte	1 start bit 8 data bits, least significant bit sent first 1 bit for even/odd parity; no bit for no parity 1 stop bit if parity is used; 2 bits if no parity
Error Check Field	Cyclical Redundancy Check (CRC)

Table 7.10 Bit Detail

### 7.8.2 Modbus RTU Message Structure

The transmitting device places a Modbus RTU message into a frame with a known beginning and ending point. Receiving devices are able to begin at the start of the message, read the address portion, determine which device is addressed (or all devices, if the message is broadcast), and to recognise when the message is completed. Partial messages are detected and errors set as a result. Characters for transmission must be in hexadecimal 00 to FF format in each field. The frequency converter continuously monitors the network bus, also during 'silent' intervals. When the first field (the address field) is received, each frequency converter or device decodes it to determine which device is being addressed. Modbus RTU messages addressed to zero are broadcast messages. No response is permitted for broadcast messages. A typical message frame is shown in *Table 7.12*.

Start	Address	Function	Data	CRC check	End
T1-T2-T3-T4	8 bits	8 bits	N x 8 bits	16 bits	T1-T2-T3-T4

Table 7.11 Typical Modbus RTU Message Structure

### 7.8.3 Start/Stop Field

Messages start with a silent period of at least 3.5 character intervals, implemented as a multiple of character intervals at the selected network baud rate (shown as Start T1-T2-T3-T4). The first transmitted field is the device address. Following the last transmitted character, a similar period of at least 3.5 character intervals marks the end of the message. A new message can begin after this period. The entire message frame must be transmitted as a continuous stream. If a silent period of more than 1.5 character intervals occurs before completion of the frame, the receiving device flushes the incomplete message and assumes that the next byte is the address field of a new message. Similarly, if a new message begins before 3.5 character intervals after a previous message, the receiving device will consider it a continuation of the previous message, causing a time-out (no response from the slave), since the value in the final CRC field is not valid for the combined messages.

### 7.8.4 Address Field

The address field of a message frame contains 8 bits. Valid slave device addresses are in the range of 0–247 decimal. The individual slave devices are assigned addresses in the range of 1–247. (0 is reserved for broadcast mode, which all slaves recognise.) A master addresses a slave by placing the slave address in the address field of the message. When the slave sends its response, it places its own address in this address field to let the master know which slave is responding.

### 7.8.5 Function Field

The function field of a message frame contains 8 bits. Valid codes are in the range of 1-FF. Function fields are used to send messages between master and slave. When a message is sent from a master to a slave device, the function code field tells the slave what action to perform. When the slave responds to the master, it uses the function code field to indicate either a normal (error-free) response, or that an error has occurred (called an exception response). For a normal response, the slave simply echoes the original function code. For an exception response, the slave returns a code that is equivalent to the original function code with its most significant bit set to logic 1. In addition, the slave places a unique code into the data field of the response message. This code tells the master what error occurred, or the reason for the exception. See *7.8.9 Function Codes Supported by Modbus RTU*.

### 7.8.6 Data Field

The data field is constructed using sets of two hexadecimal digits, in the range of 00 to FF hexadecimal. These sequences are made up of one RTU character. The data field of messages sent from a master to slave device contains more information, which the slave must use to do what is defined by the function code. This information can include items such as coil or register addresses, the quantity of items, and the count of actual data bytes in the field.

### 7.8.7 CRC Check Field

Messages include an error-checking field, operating based on a Cyclical Redundancy Check (CRC) method. The CRC field checks the contents of the entire message. It is applied regardless of any parity check method used for the individual characters of the message. The transmitting device calculates the CRC value then appends the CRC as the last field in the message. The receiving device recalculates a CRC during receipt of the message and compares the calculated value to the actual value received in the CRC field. If the two values are unequal, a bus time-out results. The error-checking field contains a 16-bit binary value implemented as two 8-bit bytes. After error-checking, the low-order byte of the field is appended first, followed by the high-order byte. The CRC high-order byte is the last byte sent in the message.

## 7.8.8 Coil Register Addressing

In Modbus, all data are organised in coils and holding registers. Coils hold a single bit, whereas holding registers hold a 2 byte word (16 bits). All data addresses in Modbus messages are referenced to zero. The first occurrence of a data item is addressed as item number zero. For example: The coil known as 'coil 1' in a programmable controller is addressed as coil 0000 in the data address field of a Modbus message. Coil 127 decimal is addressed as coil 007EHEX (126 decimal). Holding register 40001 is addressed as register 0000 in the data address field of the message. The function code field already specifies a 'holding register' operation. Therefore, the '4XXXX' reference is implicit. Holding register 40108 is addressed as register 006BHEX (107 decimal).

Coil number	Description	Signal direction
1–16	Frequency converter control word (see <i>Table 7.14</i> )	Master to slave
17–32	Frequency converter speed or set-point reference Range 0x0–0xFFFF (-200% ... ~200%)	Master to slave
33–48	Frequency converter status word (see <i>Table 7.14</i> )	Slave to master
49–64	Open loop mode: Frequency converter output frequency Closed loop mode: Frequency converter feedback signal	Slave to master
65	Parameter write control (master to slave)	Master to slave
	0 = Parameter changes are written to the RAM of the frequency converter	
	1 =Parameter changes are written to the RAM and EEPROM of the frequency converter.	
66-65536	Reserved	

**Table 7.12 Coils and Holding Registers**

Coil	0	1
01	Preset reference LSB	
02	Preset reference MSB	
03	DC brake	No DC brake
04	Coast stop	No coast stop
05	Quick stop	No quick stop
06	Freeze freq.	No freeze freq.
07	Ramp stop	Start
08	No reset	Reset
09	No jog	Jog
10	Ramp 1	Ramp 2
11	Data not valid	Data valid
12	Relay 1 off	Relay 1 on
13	Relay 2 off	Relay 2 on
14	Set up LSB	
15	Set up MSB	
16	No reversing	Reversing

**Table 7.13 Frequency Converter Control Word (FC Profile)**

Coil	0	1
33	Control not ready	Control ready
34	frequency converter not ready	frequency converter ready
35	Coasting stop	Safety closed
36	No alarm	Alarm
37	Not used	Not used
38	Not used	Not used
39	Not used	Not used
40	No warning	Warning
41	Not at reference	At reference
42	Hand mode	Auto mode
43	Out of freq. range	In frequency range
44	Stopped	Running
45	Not used	Not used
46	No voltage warning	Voltage warning
47	Not in current limit	Current limit
48	No thermal warning	Thermal warning

**Table 7.14 Frequency Converter Status Word (FC Profile)**

Register Number	Description
00001-00006	Reserved
00007	Last error code from an FC data object interface
00008	Reserved
00009	Parameter index*
00010-00990	000 parameter group (parameters 001 through 099)
01000-01990	100 parameter group (parameters 100 through 199)
02000-02990	200 parameter group (parameters 200 through 299)
03000-03990	300 parameter group (parameters 300 through 399)
04000-04990	400 parameter group (parameters 400 through 499)
...	...
49000-49990	4900 parameter group (parameters 4900 through 4999)
50000	Input data: frequency converter control word register (CTW).
50010	Input data: Bus reference register (REF).
...	...
50200	Output data: frequency converter status word register (STW).
50210	Output data: frequency converter main actual value register (MAV).

**Table 7.15 Holding Registers**

\* Used to specify the index number used when accessing an indexed parameter.

## 7.8.9 Function Codes Supported by Modbus RTU

Modbus RTU supports use of the function codes in *Table 7.17* in the function field of a message.

Function	Function code
Read coils	1 hex
Read holding registers	3 hex
Write single coil	5 hex
Write single register	6 hex
Write multiple coils	F hex
Write multiple registers	10 hex
Get comm. event counter	B hex
Report slave ID	11 hex

**Table 7.16 Function Codes**

Function	Function code	Sub-function code	Sub-function
Diagnostics	8	1	Restart communication
		2	Return diagnostic register
		10	Clear counters and diagnostic register
		11	Return bus message count
		12	Return bus communication error count
		13	Return bus exception error count
		14	Return slave message count

**Table 7.17 Function Codes**

### 7.8.10 Database Error Codes

In the event of an error, the following error codes may appear in the data field of a response message. For a full explanation of the structure of an exception (error) response, refer to *7.8.5 Function Field*.

Error Code in data field (decimal)	Database Error Code description
00	The parameter number does not exist
01	There is no write access to the parameter
02	The data value exceeds the parameter limits
03	The sub-index in use does not exist
04	The parameter is not of the array type
05	The data type does not match the parameter called
06	Only reset
07	Not changeable
11	No write access
17	Data change in the parameter called is not possible in the present mode
18	Other error
64	Invalid data address
65	Invalid message length
66	Invalid data length or value
67	Invalid function code
130	There is no bus access to the parameter called
131	Data change is not possible because factory set-up is selected

Table 7.18 Error Codes

## 7.9 How to Access Parameters

### 7.9.1 Parameter Handling

The PNU (Parameter Number) is translated from the register address contained in the Modbus read or write message. The parameter number is translated to Modbus as (10xparameter number) DECIMAL.

### 7.9.2 Storage of Data

The Coil 65 decimal determines whether data written to the frequency converter is stored in EEPROM and RAM (coil 65=1) or only in RAM (coil 65=0).

### 7.9.3 IND

The array index is set in holding register 9 and used when accessing array parameters.

### 7.9.4 Text Blocks

Parameters stored as text strings are accessed in the same way as the other parameters. The maximum text block size is 20 characters. If a read request for a parameter is for more characters than the parameter stores, the response is truncated. If the read request for a parameter is for fewer characters than the parameter stores, the response is space filled.

### 7.9.5 Conversion Factor

The different attributes for each parameter can be seen in the section on factory settings. Since a parameter value can only be transferred as a whole number, a conversion factor must be used to transfer decimals.

### 7.9.6 Parameter Values

#### Standard Data Types

Standard data types are int16, int32, uint8, uint16, and uint32. They are stored as 4x registers (40001–4FFFF). The parameters are read using function 03HEX "Read Holding Registers." Parameters are written using the function 6HEX "Preset Single Register" for 1 register (16 bits), and the function 10HEX "Preset Multiple Registers" for 2 registers (32 bits). Readable sizes range from 1 register (16 bits) up to 10 registers (20 characters).

#### Non-standard Data Types

Non-standard data types are text strings and are stored as 4x registers (40001–4FFFF). The parameters are read using function 03HEX "Read Holding Registers" and written using function 10HEX "Preset Multiple Registers." Readable sizes range from 1 register (2 characters) up to 10 registers (20 characters).

## 7.10 Examples

### 7.10.1 Read Coil Status (01 HEX)

#### Description

This function reads the ON/OFF status of discrete outputs (coils) in the frequency converter. Broadcast is never supported for reads.

#### Query

The query message specifies the starting coil and quantity of coils to read. Coil addresses start at zero.

Example of a request to read coils 33–48 (Status Word) from slave device 01.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01 (frequency converter address)
Function	01 (read coils)
Starting Address HI	00
Starting Address LO	20 (32 decimals) Coil 33
No. of Points HI	00
No. of Points LO	10 (16 decimals)
Error Check (CRC)	-

Table 7.19 Query

#### Response

The coil status in the response message is packed as one coil per bit of the data field. Status is indicated as: 1 = ON; 0 = OFF. The LSB of the first data byte contains the coil addressed in the query. The other coils follow toward the high-order end of this byte, and from 'low order to high order' in subsequent bytes.

If the returned coil quantity is not a multiple of eight, the remaining bits in the final data byte are padded with zeros (toward the high-order end of the byte). The Byte Count field specifies the number of complete bytes of data.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01 (frequency converter address)
Function	01 (read coils)
Byte Count	02 (2 bytes of data)
Data (Coils 40–33)	07
Data (Coils 48–41)	06 (STW=0607hex)
Error Check (CRC)	-

Table 7.20 Response

## NOTE

Coils and registers are addressed explicit with an off-set of -1 in Modbus.

Coil 33 is addressed as Coil 32, for example.

### 7.10.2 Force/Write Single Coil (05 HEX)

#### Description

This function forces the coil to either ON or OFF. When broadcast, the function forces the same coil references in all attached slaves.

#### Query

The query message specifies the coil 65 (parameter write control) to be forced. Coil addresses start at zero. Force Data = 00 00HEX (OFF) or FF 00HEX (ON).

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01 (frequency converter address)
Function	05 (write single coil)
Coil Address HI	00
Coil Address LO	40 (64 decimal) Coil 65
Force Data HI	FF
Force Data LO	00 (FF 00 = ON)
Error Check (CRC)	-

Table 7.21 Query

#### Response

The normal response is an echo of the query, returned after the coil state has been forced.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01
Function	05
Force Data HI	FF
Force Data LO	00
Quantity of Coils HI	00
Quantity of Coils LO	01
Error Check (CRC)	-

Table 7.22 Response

### 7.10.3 Force/Write Multiple Coils (0F HEX)

This function forces each coil in a sequence of coils to either ON or OFF. When broadcast, the function forces the same coil references in all attached slaves.

The query message specifies the coils 17–32 (speed set-point) to be forced.

#### NOTE

Coil addresses start at zero, so coil 17 is addressed as 16, for example.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01 (frequency converter address)
Function	0F (write multiple coils)
Coil Address HI	00
Coil Address LO	10 (coil address 17)
Quantity of Coils HI	00
Quantity of Coils LO	10 (16 coils)
Byte Count	02
Force Data HI (Coils 8–1)	20
Force Data LO (Coils 16–9)	00 (ref. = 2000 hex)
Error Check (CRC)	-

Table 7.23 Query

#### Response

The normal response returns the slave address, function code, starting address, and quantity of coils forced.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01 (frequency converter address)
Function	0F (write multiple coils)
Coil Address HI	00
Coil Address LO	10 (coil address 17)
Quantity of Coils HI	00
Quantity of Coils LO	10 (16 coils)
Error Check (CRC)	-

Table 7.24 Response

### 7.10.4 Read Holding Registers (03 HEX)

#### Description

This function reads the contents of holding registers in the slave.

#### Query

The query message specifies the starting register and quantity of registers to read. Register addresses start at zero, that is, registers 1–4 are addressed as 0–3.

Example: Read 3-03 *Maximum Reference*, register 03030.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01
Function	03 (read holding registers)
Starting Address HI	0B (Register address 3029)
Starting Address LO	D5 (Register address 3029)
No. of Points HI	00
No. of Points LO	02 - (Par. 3–03 is 32 bits long, that is, 2 registers)
Error Check (CRC)	-

Table 7.25 Query

### Response

The register data in the response message are packed as 2 bytes per register, with the binary contents right justified within each byte. For each register, the first byte contains the high-order bits and the second contains the low-order bits.

Example: Hex 0016E360 = 1.500.000 = 1,500 RPM.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01
Function	03
Byte Count	04
Data HI (Register 3030)	00
Data LO (Register 3030)	16
Data HI (Register 3031)	E3
Data LO (Register 3031)	60
Error Check (CRC)	-

Table 7.26 Response

### 7.10.5 Preset Single Register (06 HEX)

#### Description

This function presets a value into a single holding register.

#### Query

The query message specifies the register reference to be preset. Register addresses start at zero, that is, register 1 is addressed as 0.

Example: Write to *1-00 Configuration Mode*, register 1000.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01
Function	06
Register Address HI	03 (Register address 999)
Register Address LO	E7 (Register address 999)
Preset Data HI	00
Preset Data LO	01
Error Check (CRC)	-

Table 7.27 Query

### Response

The normal response is an echo of the query, returned after the register contents have been passed.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01
Function	06
Register Address HI	03
Register Address LO	E7
Preset Data HI	00
Preset Data LO	01
Error Check (CRC)	-

Table 7.28 Response

## 7.11 Danfoss FC Control Profile

### 7.11.1 Control Word According to FC Profile (8-10 Control Profile=FC profile)

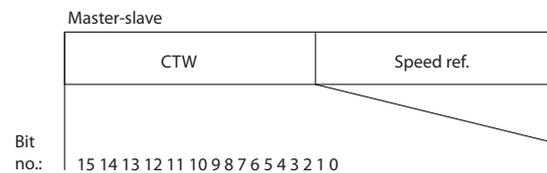


Illustration 7.16 CW Master to Slave

Bit	Bit value=0	Bit value=1
00	Reference value	external selection lsb
01	Reference value	external selection msb
02	DC brake	Ramp
03	Coasting	No coasting
04	Quick stop	Ramp
05	Hold output frequency	use ramp
06	Ramp stop	Start
07	No function	Reset
08	No function	Jog
09	Ramp 1	Ramp 2
10	Data invalid	Data valid
11	No function	Relay 01 active
12	No function	Relay 02 active
13	Parameter set-up	selection lsb
14	Parameter set-up	selection msb
15	No function	Reverse

#### Explanation of the Control Bits

##### Bits 00/01

Bits 00 and 01 are used to choose between the four reference values, which are pre-programmed in *3-10 Preset Reference* according to *Table 7.31*.

Programmed ref. value	Parameter	Bit 01	Bit 00
1	[0] 3-10 Preset Reference	0	0
2	[1] 3-10 Preset Reference	0	1
3	[2] 3-10 Preset Reference	1	0
4	[3] 3-10 Preset Reference	1	1

Table 7.29 Control Bits

## NOTE

Make a selection in *8-56 Preset Reference Select* to define how Bit 00/01 gates with the corresponding function on the digital inputs.

### Bit 02, DC brake

Bit 02='0': Leads to DC braking and stop. Set braking current and duration in *2-01 DC Brake Current* and *2-02 DC Braking Time*.

Bit 02='1': Leads to ramping.

### Bit 03, Coasting

Bit 03='0': The frequency converter immediately "lets go" of the motor (the output transistors are "shut off") and it coasts to a standstill.

Bit 03='1': The frequency converter starts the motor if the other starting conditions are met.

Make a selection in *8-50 Coasting Select* to define how Bit 03 gates with the corresponding function on a digital input.

### Bit 04, Quick stop

Bit 04='0': Makes the motor speed ramp down to stop (set in *3-81 Quick Stop Ramp Time*).

### Bit 05, Hold output frequency

Bit 05='0': The present output frequency (in Hz) freezes. Change the frozen output frequency only with the digital inputs (*5-10 Terminal 18 Digital Input* to *5-15 Terminal 33 Digital Input*) programmed to *Speed up* and *Slow down*.

## NOTE

If freeze output is active, only the following conditions can stop the frequency converter:

- Bit 03 Coasting stop
- Bit 02 DC braking
- Digital input (*5-10 Terminal 18 Digital Input* to *5-15 Terminal 33 Digital Input*) programmed to *DC braking*, *Coasting stop*, or *Reset and coasting stop*.

### Bit 06, Ramp stop/start

Bit 06='0': Causes a stop and makes the motor speed ramp down to stop via the selected ramp down parameter.

Bit 06='1': Permits the frequency converter to start the motor, if the other starting conditions are met.

Make a selection in *8-53 Start Select* to define how Bit 06 Ramp stop/start gates with the corresponding function on a digital input.

### Bit 07, Reset:

Bit 07='0': No reset.

Bit 07='1': Resets a trip. Reset is activated on the leading edge of the signal, that is, when changing from logic '0' to logic '1'.

### Bit 08, Jog

Bit 08='1': The output frequency depends on *3-19 Jog Speed [RPM]*.

### Bit 09, Selection of ramp 1/2

Bit 09="0": Ramp 1 is active (*3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time* to *3-42 Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time*).

Bit 09="1": Ramp 2 (*3-51 Ramp 2 Ramp Up Time* to *3-52 Ramp 2 Ramp Down Time*) is active.

### Bit 10, Data not valid/Data valid

Tell the frequency converter whether to use or ignore the control word. Bit 10='0': The control word is ignored.

Bit 10='1': The control word is used. This function is relevant because the telegram always contains the control word, regardless of the telegram type. Thus, it is possible to turn off the control word if not in use when updating or reading parameters.

### Bit 11, Relay 01

Bit 11="0": Relay not activated.

Bit 11="1": Relay 01 activated if *Control word bit 11* is chosen in *5-40 Function Relay*.

### Bit 12, Relay 04

Bit 12="0": Relay 04 is not activated.

Bit 12="1": Relay 04 is activated if *Control word bit 12* is chosen in *5-40 Function Relay*.

### Bit 13/14, Selection of set-up

Use bits 13 and 14 to choose from the four menu set-ups according to *Table 7.32*:

Set-up	Bit 14	Bit 13
1	0	0
2	0	1
3	1	0
4	1	1

**Table 7.30 Selection of Set-up**

The function is only possible when *Multi Set-Ups* is selected in *0-10 Active Set-up*.

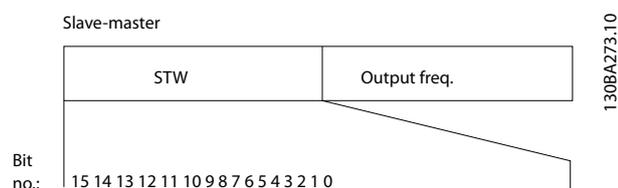
Make a selection in *8-55 Set-up Select* to define how Bit 13/14 gates with the corresponding function on the digital inputs.

### Bit 15 Reverse

Bit 15='0': No reversing.

Bit 15='1': Reversing. In the default setting, reversing is set to digital in *8-54 Reversing Select*. Bit 15 causes reversing only when Ser. communication, Logic, or Logic and is selected.

## 7.11.2 Status Word According to FC Profile (STW) (8-10 Control Profile = FC profile)



**Illustration 7.17 STW Slave to Master**

Bit	Bit=0	Bit=1
00	Control not ready	Control ready
01	Drive not ready	Drive ready
02	Coasting	Enable
03	No error	Trip
04	No error	Error (no trip)
05	Reserved	-
06	No error	Triplock
07	No warning	Warning
08	Speed≠reference	Speed=reference
09	Local operation	Bus control
10	Out of frequency limit	Frequency limit OK
11	No operation	In operation
12	Drive OK	Stopped, auto start
13	Voltage OK	Voltage exceeded
14	Torque OK	Torque exceeded
15	Timer OK	Timer exceeded

### Explanation of the Status Bits

#### Bit 00, Control not ready/ready

Bit 00='0': The frequency converter trips.

Bit 00='1': The frequency converter controls are ready but the power component does not necessarily receive any power supply (in case of external 24 V supply to controls).

#### Bit 01, Drive ready:

Bit 01='1': The frequency converter is ready for operation but the coasting command is active via the digital inputs or via serial communication.

#### Bit 02, Coasting stop

Bit 02='0': The frequency converter releases the motor.

Bit 02='1': The frequency converter starts the motor with a start command.

#### Bit 03, No error/trip

Bit 03='0': The frequency converter is not in fault mode.

Bit 03='1': The frequency converter trips. To re-establish operation, enter [Reset].

#### Bit 04, No error/error (no trip)

Bit 04='0': The frequency converter is not in fault mode.

Bit 04='1': The frequency converter shows an error but does not trip.

#### Bit 05, Not used

Bit 05 is not used in the status word.

#### Bit 06, No error/triplock

Bit 06='0': The frequency converter is not in fault mode.

Bit 06='1': The frequency converter is tripped and locked.

Bit 07, No warning/warning

Bit 07='0': There are no warnings.

Bit 07='1': A warning has occurred.

Bit 08, Speed≠ reference/speed=reference

Bit 08='0': The motor is running but the present speed is different from the preset speed reference. It could be the case when the speed ramps up/down during start/stop.

Bit 08='1': The motor speed matches the preset speed reference.

Bit 09, Local operation/bus control

Bit 09='0': [Stop/Reset] is activated on the control unit or *Local control* in 3-13 *Reference Site* is selected. The frequency converter cannot be controlled via serial communication.

Bit 09='1' It is possible to control the frequency converter via the fieldbus/serial communication.

Bit 10, Out of frequency limit

Bit 10='0': The output frequency has reached the value in 4-11 *Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]* or 4-13 *Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]*.

Bit 10='1': The output frequency is within the defined limits.

Bit 11, No operation/in operation

Bit 11='0': The motor is not running.

Bit 11='1': The frequency converter has a start signal or the output frequency is greater than 0 Hz.

Bit 12, Drive OK/stopped, autostart

Bit 12='0': There is no temporary over temperature on the inverter.

Bit 12='1': The inverter stops because of over temperature but the unit does not trip and resumes operation once the over temperature stops.

Bit 13, Voltage OK/limit exceeded

Bit 13='0': There are no voltage warnings.

Bit 13='1': The DC voltage in the intermediate circuit is too low or too high.

Bit 14, Torque OK/limit exceeded

Bit 14='0': The motor current is lower than the torque limit selected in 4-18 *Current Limit*.

Bit 14='1': The torque limit in 4-18 *Current Limit* is exceeded.

Bit 15, Timer OK/limit exceeded

Bit 15='0': The timers for motor thermal protection and thermal protection are not exceeded 100%.

Bit 15='1': One of the timers exceeds 100%.

If the connection between the Interbus option and the frequency converter is lost, or an internal communication problem has occurred, all bits in the STW are set to '0.'

### 7.11.3 Bus Speed Reference Value

Speed reference value is transmitted to the frequency converter in a relative value in %. The value is transmitted in the form of a 16-bit word; in integers (0–32767) the value 16384 (4000 Hex) corresponds to 100%. Negative figures are formatted with 2's complement. The Actual Output frequency (MAV) is scaled in the same way as the bus reference.

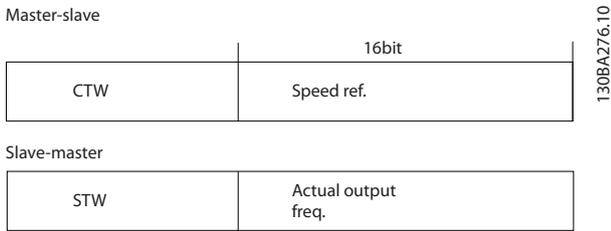


Illustration 7.18 Bus Speed Reference Value

The reference and MAV are scaled as showed in *Illustration 7.19*.

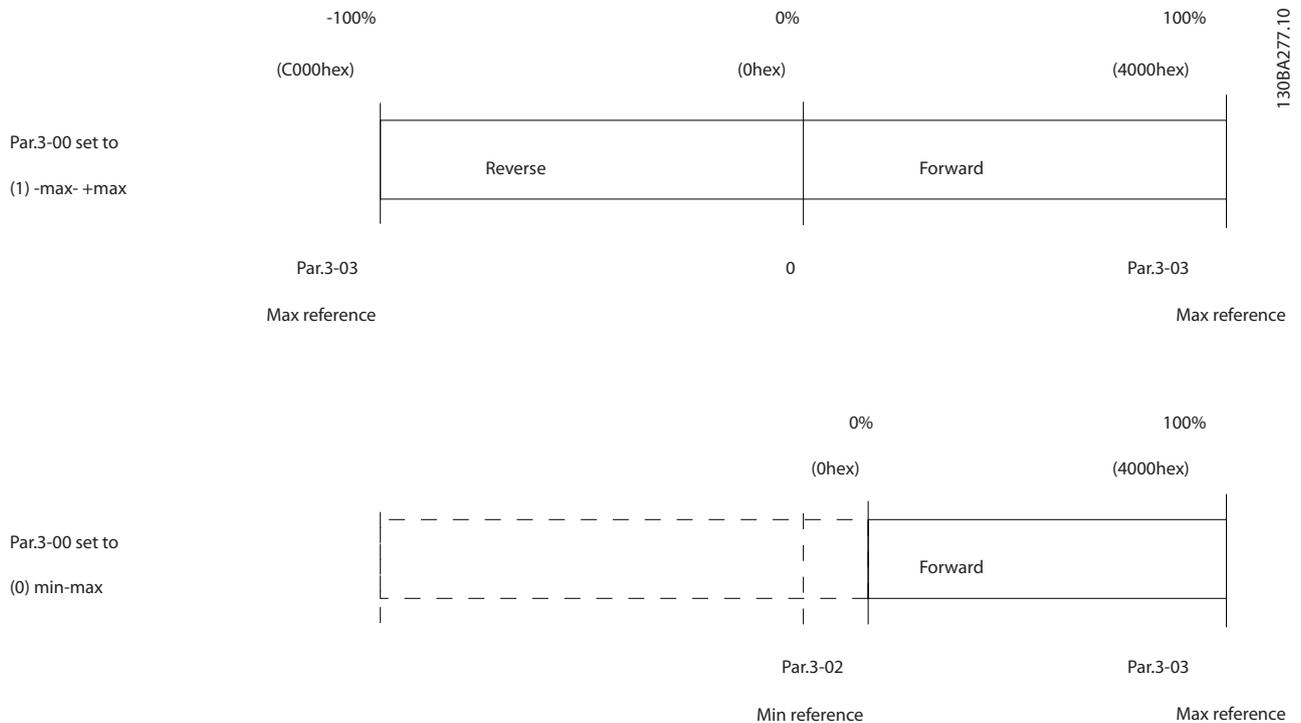


Illustration 7.19 Reference and MAV

## 8 Troubleshooting

### 8.1 Status Messages

A warning or an alarm is signaled by the relevant LED on the front of the frequency converter and indicated by a code on the display.

A warning remains active until its cause is no longer present. Under certain circumstances, operation of the motor can continue. Warning messages are sometimes critical, but are not always so.

In case of an alarm, the frequency converter has tripped. Alarms must be reset to restart operation once their cause has been rectified.

**There are four ways to restart:**

1. By pressing [Reset].
2. Via a digital input with the "Reset" function.
3. Via serial communication/optional fieldbus.
4. By resetting automatically using the [Auto Reset] function, which is a default setting for VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202 Drive. See *14-20 Reset Mode* in *VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202 Programming Guide*

8

### NOTE

**After a manual reset pressing [Reset], [Auto On] or [Hand On] must be pressed to restart the motor.**

If an alarm cannot be reset, the possible reason is that its cause has not been rectified, or the alarm is trip-locked (see also *Table 8.1*).

Alarms that are trip-locked offer more protection, means that the mains supply must be switched off before the alarm can be reset. After being switched back on, the frequency converter is no longer blocked and can be reset once the cause has been rectified.

Alarms that are not trip-locked can also be reset using the automatic reset function in *14-20 Reset Mode*

### NOTE

**Automatic wake-up is possible!**

If a warning and alarm are marked against a code in *Table 8.1*, this means that either a warning occurs before an alarm, or it can be specified whether it is a warning or an alarm that is displayed for a given fault.

This is possible, for instance, in *1-90 Motor Thermal Protection*. After an alarm or trip, the motor carries on coasting, and the alarm and warning flash on the frequency converter. Once the problem has been rectified, only the alarm continues flashing.

No.	Description	Warning	Alarm/Trip	Alarm/Trip Lock	Parameter Reference
1	10 Volts low	X			
2	Live zero error	(X)	(X)		6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function
3	No motor	(X)			1-80 Function at Stop
4	Mains phase loss	(X)	(X)	(X)	14-12 Function at Mains Imbalance
5	DC link voltage high	X			
6	DC link voltage low	X			
7	DC over voltage	X	X		

No.	Description	Warning	Alarm/Trip	Alarm/Trip Lock	Parameter Reference
8	DC under voltage	X	X		
9	Inverter overloaded	X	X		
10	Motor ETR over temperature	(X)	(X)		1-90 Motor Thermal Protection
11	Motor thermistor over temperature	(X)	(X)		1-90 Motor Thermal Protection
12	Torque limit	X	X		
13	Over Current	X	X	X	
14	Earth fault	X	X	X	
15	Hardware mismatch		X	X	
16	Short Circuit		X	X	
17	Control word timeout	(X)	(X)		8-04 Control Word Timeout Function
23	Internal Fan Fault	X			
24	External Fan Fault	X			14-53 Fan Monitor
25	Brake resistor short-circuited	X			
26	Brake resistor power limit	(X)	(X)		2-13 Brake Power Monitoring
27	Brake chopper short-circuited	X	X		
28	Brake check	(X)	(X)		2-15 Brake Check
29	Drive over temperature	X	X	X	
30	Motor phase U missing	(X)	(X)	(X)	4-58 Missing Motor Phase Function
31	Motor phase V missing	(X)	(X)	(X)	4-58 Missing Motor Phase Function
32	Motor phase W missing	(X)	(X)	(X)	4-58 Missing Motor Phase Function
33	Inrush fault		X	X	
34	Fieldbus communication fault	X	X		
35	Out of frequency range	X	X		
36	Mains failure	X	X		
37	Phase Imbalance	X	X		
39	Heatsink sensor		X	X	
40	Overload of Digital Output Terminal 27	(X)			5-00 Digital I/O Mode, 5-01 Terminal 27 Mode
41	Overload of Digital Output Terminal 29	(X)			5-00 Digital I/O Mode, 5-02 Terminal 29 Mode
42	Overload of Digital Output On X30/6	(X)			5-32 Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101)
42	Overload of Digital Output On X30/7	(X)			5-33 Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101)
46	Pwr. card supply		X	X	
47	24 V supply low	X	X	X	
48	1.8 V supply low		X	X	
49	Speed limit	X			
50	AMA calibration failed		X		
51	AMA check $U_{nom}$ and $I_{nom}$		X		
52	AMA low $I_{nom}$		X		
53	AMA motor too big		X		
54	AMA motor too small		X		
55	AMA parameter out of range		X		
56	AMA interrupted by user		X		
57	AMA timeout		X		

No.	Description	Warning	Alarm/Trip	Alarm/Trip Lock	Parameter Reference
58	AMA internal fault	X	X		
59	Current limit	X			
60	External Interlock	X			
62	Output Frequency at Maximum Limit	X			
64	Voltage Limit	X			
65	Control Board Over-temperature	X	X	X	
66	Heat sink Temperature Low	X			
67	Option Configuration has Changed		X		
68	Safe Stop Activated		X <sup>1)</sup>		
69	Pwr. Card Temp (E- and F-frames only)		X	X	
70	Illegal FC configuration			X	
71	PTC 1 Safe Stop	X	X <sup>1)</sup>		
72	Dangerous Failure			X <sup>1)</sup>	
73	Safe Stop Auto Restart				
76	Power Unit Setup	X			
79	Illegal PS config		X	X	
80	Drive Initialised to Default Value		X		
91	Analog input 54 wrong settings			X	
92	NoFlow	X	X		22-2* No-Flow Detection
93	Dry Pump	X	X		22-2* No-Flow Detection
94	End of Curve	X	X		22-5* End of Curve
95	Broken Belt	X	X		22-6* Broken Belt Detection
96	Start Delayed	X			22-7* Short Cycle Protection
97	Stop Delayed	X			22-7* Short Cycle Protection
98	Clock Fault	X			0-7* Clock Settings
104	Mixing Fan Fault (D-frame only)	X	X		14-53 Fan Monitor
220	Overload Trip		X		
243	Brake IGBT	X	X		
244	Heatsink temp	X	X	X	
245	Heatsink sensor		X	X	
246	Pwr.card supply		X	X	
247	Pwr.card temp		X	X	
248	Illegal PS config		X	X	
250	New spare part			X	
251	New Type Code		X	X	

**Table 8.1 Alarm/Warning Code List**

(X) Dependent on parameter

1) Cannot be Auto reset via 14-20 Reset Mode

A trip is the action when an alarm has appeared. The trip coasts the motor and can be reset by pressing [Reset] or make a reset by a digital input in parameter group 5-1\* *Digital Inputs [1] Reset* ). The origin event that caused an alarm cannot damage the frequency converter or cause dangerous conditions. A trip lock is an action when an alarm occurs, that can damage the frequency converter or connected parts. A Trip Lock situation can only be reset by a power cycling.

Warning	yellow
Alarm	flashing red
Trip locked	yellow and red

Table 8.2 LED Indication

Alarm Word and Extended Status Word					
Bit	Hex	Dec	Alarm Word	Warning Word	Extended Status Word
0	00000001	1	Brake Check	Brake Check	Ramping
1	00000002	2	Pwr. Card Temp	Pwr. Card Temp	AMA Running
2	00000004	4	Earth Fault	Earth Fault	Start CW/CCW
3	00000008	8	Ctrl. Card Temp	Ctrl. Card Temp	Slow Down
4	00000010	16	Ctrl. Word TO	Ctrl. Word TO	Catch Up
5	00000020	32	Over Current	Over Current	Feedback High
6	00000040	64	Torque Limit	Torque Limit	Feedback Low
7	00000080	128	Motor Th Over	Motor Th Over	Output Current High
8	00000100	256	Motor ETR Over	Motor ETR Over	Output Current Low
9	00000200	512	Inverter Overld.	Inverter Overld.	Output Freq High
10	00000400	1024	DC under Volt	DC under Volt	Output Freq Low
11	00000800	2048	DC over Volt	DC over Volt	Brake Check OK
12	00001000	4096	Short Circuit	DC Voltage Low	Braking Max
13	00002000	8192	Inrush Fault	DC Voltage High	Braking
14	00004000	16384	Mains ph. Loss	Mains ph. Loss	Out of Speed Range
15	00008000	32768	AMA Not OK	No Motor	OVC Active
16	00010000	65536	Live Zero Error	Live Zero Error	
17	00020000	131072	Internal Fault	10V Low	
18	00040000	262144	Brake Overload	Brake Overload	
19	00080000	524288	U phase Loss	Brake Resistor	
20	00100000	1048576	V phase Loss	Brake IGBT	
21	00200000	2097152	W phase Loss	Speed Limit	
22	00400000	4194304	Fieldbus Fault	Fieldbus Fault	
23	00800000	8388608	24 V Supply Low	24V Supply Low	
24	01000000	16777216	Mains Failure	Mains Failure	
25	02000000	33554432	1.8V Supply Low	Current Limit	
26	04000000	67108864	Brake Resistor	Low Temp	
27	08000000	134217728	Brake IGBT	Voltage Limit	
28	10000000	268435456	Option Change	Unused	
29	20000000	536870912	Drive Initialised	Unused	
30	40000000	1073741824	Safe Stop	Unused	

Table 8.3 Description of Alarm Word, Warning Word, and Extended Status Word

The alarm words, warning words and extended status words can be read out via serial bus or optional fieldbus for diagnosis. See also 16-90 Alarm Word, 16-92 Warning Word and 16-94 Ext. Status Word.

## Index

### A

Abbreviations.....	8
Access To Control Terminals.....	105
Accessory Bag Control Terminals.....	78
Acoustic Noise.....	51
Aggressive Environments.....	14
Air Humidity.....	14
Airflow.....	96
Alarm/Warning Code List.....	186
Alarms And Warnings.....	184
Aluminum Conductors.....	102
AMA.....	157
<b>Analog</b>	
I/O Option MCB 109.....	59
I/O Selection.....	59
Inputs.....	9, 48
Output.....	48
Outputs - Terminal X30/5+8.....	57
Voltage Inputs - Terminal X30/10-12.....	57
Approvals.....	8
<b>Automatic</b>	
Adaptations To Ensure Performance.....	54
Motor Adaptation.....	157
Motor Adaptation (AMA).....	148
Available Literature.....	7

### B

<b>Back</b>	
Channel Cooling Kits.....	64
Cooling.....	96
<b>Basic</b>	
Cascade Controller.....	61
Wiring Example.....	106
Battery Back-up Of Clock Function.....	59
Better Control.....	16
<b>Brake</b>	
Function.....	36
Power.....	9, 36
Resistor.....	36
Resistor Cabling.....	37
Resistors.....	63, 62
Branch Circuit Protection.....	103
Building Management System.....	59

### C

<b>Cable</b>	
Clamp.....	153
Clamps.....	151
Length And Cross-section.....	102
Lengths And Cross Sections.....	48

Cable-length And Cross-section.....	114, 136
Cabling.....	114, 134
Cascade Controller Option.....	61, 60, 61
CE Conformity And Labelling.....	13
Coasting.....	181, 8, 180
Conducted Emission.....	32
Connection To Mains.....	101
Constant Torque Applications (CT Mode).....	53
<b>Control</b>	
Board VLT® AQUA DriveFC 202.....	78
Cable Length.....	107
Cable Terminals.....	105
Cables.....	151, 108, 112, 107, 110
Card Performance.....	50
Card, 10 V DC Output.....	50
Card, 24 V DC Output.....	49
Card, RS-485 Serial Communication.....	48
Card, USB Serial Communication.....	50
Characteristics.....	50
Structure Closed Loop.....	23
Structure Open Loop.....	22
Terminals.....	105
Word.....	179
Cooling.....	53, 96
Copyright, Limitation Of Liability And Revision Rights.....	7
Cos $\Phi$ Compensation.....	17

### D

Database Error Codes.....	176
DC Brake.....	180
De-coupling Plate.....	101
Definitions.....	8
<b>Derating</b>	
For Low Air Pressure.....	52
For Running At Low Speed.....	53
DeviceNet.....	77
<b>Digital</b>	
Inputs.....	49
Inputs - Terminal X30/1-4.....	57
Output.....	49
Outputs - Terminal X30/5-7.....	57
DISCHARGE TIME!.....	12
Disposal Instruction.....	13
Drive Configurator.....	72
DU/dt Filters.....	64, 85
Duct Cooling.....	96

### E

<b>Earth</b>	
Connection.....	101
Leakage Current.....	151, 35

<b>Earthing</b>		<b>Hold Output Frequency</b> .....	180
Earthing.....	153	<b>How To Connect A PC To The Unit</b> .....	150
Of Screened/Armoured Control Cables.....	153		
<b>Efficiency</b> .....	51	<b>I</b>	
<b>Electrical</b>		<b>I/Os For Set Point Inputs</b> .....	59
Installation.....	102, 107	<b>IEC Emergency Stop With Pilz Safety Relay</b> .....	70
Installation - EMC Precautions.....	151	<b>Immunity Requirements</b> .....	33
<b>EMC</b>		<b>Index (IND)</b> .....	169
Directive 2004/108/EC.....	14	<b>Input</b>	
Precautions.....	165	Filters.....	63
Test Results.....	32	Polarity Of Control Terminals.....	112
<b>Emission Requirements</b> .....	31	<b>Installation</b>	
<b>Energy Savings</b> .....	16, 15	At High Altitudes.....	12
<b>Equalising Cable</b> .....	154	Of Back Channel Cooling Kit In Rittal.....	64
<b>Ethernet IP</b> .....	78	Of Input Plate Options.....	68
<b>Example Of Closed Loop PID Control</b> .....	27	Of Mains Shield For Frequency Converters.....	68
<b>Extended Cascade Controller MCO 101 And Advanced Cascade Controller, MCO 102</b> .....	60	On Pedestal.....	66
<b>External</b>		<b>Insulation Resistance Monitor (IRM)</b> .....	70
24 V DC Supply.....	59	<b>Intermediate Circuit</b> .....	37, 51, 52
Fan Power Supply.....	144		
Temperature Monitoring.....	71	<b>J</b>	
<b>Extreme Running Conditions</b> .....	37	<b>Jog</b> .....	8, 180
<b>F</b>		<b>L</b>	
<b>FC Profile</b> .....	179	<b>Laws Of Proportionality</b> .....	15
<b>Final Set-Up And Test</b> .....	147	<b>LCP</b>	
<b>Fixed Speed Pump</b> .....	61	LCP.....	8, 10, 63
<b>Follower Drive</b> .....	61	101.....	77
<b>Frame Size F Options</b> .....	69	102.....	77
<b>Freeze Output</b> .....	8	Cable.....	77
<b>Frequency Converter With Modbus RTU</b> .....	172	Kit.....	77
<b>Function Codes Supported By Modbus RTU</b> .....	175	<b>Lead Pump Alternation Wiring Diagram</b> .....	163
<b>Fuses</b> .....	103	<b>Leakage Current</b> .....	35
<b>Fusing</b> .....	114, 134	<b>Lifting</b> .....	92
		<b>Load Drive Settings</b> .....	150
		<b>Local (Hand On) And Remote (Auto On) Control</b> .....	22
<b>G</b>		<b>M</b>	
<b>General</b>		<b>Mains</b>	
Aspects Of EMC Emissions.....	30	Plug Connector.....	101
Aspects Of Harmonics Emission.....	32	Supply.....	11
Considerations.....	94, 95	Supply (L1, L2, L3).....	47
Description.....	61	<b>Manual</b>	
<b>Gland/Conduit</b>		Motor Starters.....	70
Entry - IP21 (NEMA 1) And IP54 (NEMA12).....	98	PID Adjustment.....	29
Entry, 12-Pulse - IP21 (NEMA 1) And IP54 (NEMA12).....	99	<b>Master Drive</b> .....	61
		<b>MCA</b>	
		101.....	77
		104.....	77
		108.....	77
<b>H</b>			
<b>Harmonic Filters</b> .....	78		
<b>Harmonics</b>			
Emission Requirements.....	33		
Test Results (Emission).....	33		
<b>High Voltage Test</b> .....	151		

<b>MCB</b>			
101.....	77		
105.....	77		
105 Option.....	58		
107.....	77		
109.....	77		
114.....	77		
<b>MCF 103</b> .....	77		
<b>MCO</b>			
101.....	77		
102.....	77		
<b>MCT</b>			
10.....	150		
10 Set-up Software.....	150		
31.....	151		
<b>Mechanical</b>			
Dimensions.....	88, 87		
Installation.....	87		
Mounting.....	90		
<b>Moment Of Inertia</b> .....	37		
<b>Motor</b>			
Cable Connection.....	101		
Cables.....	151, 102		
Name Plate.....	147		
Output.....	47		
Parameters.....	157		
Phases.....	37		
Protection.....	47		
Thermal Protection.....	182, 37		
Voltage.....	52		
<b>Multi-zone Control</b> .....	59		
<b>N</b>			
<b>Name Plate Data</b> .....	147		
<b>NAMUR</b> .....	70		
<b>Network Connection</b> .....	166		
<b>Ni1000 Temperature Sensor</b> .....	59		
<b>O</b>			
<b>Open Loop Mode</b> .....	61		
<b>Options And Accessories</b> .....	56		
<b>Ordering</b>			
Numbers.....	72		
Numbers: Advanced Harmonic Filters.....	78		
Numbers: Brake Resistors.....	86		
Numbers: Options And Accessories.....	77		
Numbers: Sine-Wave Filter Modules, 380–690 V AC.....	3		
<b>Output</b>			
Filters.....	63		
Performance (U, V, W).....	47		
<b>Outputs For Actuators</b> .....	59		
<b>Outside Installation/NEMA 3R Kit For Rittal</b> .....	66		
<b>Over-current Protection</b> .....	103		
<b>P</b>			
<b>Parameter Values</b> .....	177		
<b>Pay Back Period</b> .....	16		
<b>PC Software Tools</b> .....	150		
<b>Peak Voltage On Motor</b> .....	52		
<b>PELV - Protective Extra Low Voltage</b> .....	34		
<b>Planning The Installation Site</b> .....	91		
<b>PLC</b> .....	154		
<b>Potentiometer Reference</b> .....	157		
<b>Power</b>			
Connections.....	114		
Connections 12-Pulse Drives.....	134		
Factor.....	11		
Factor Correction.....	17		
<b>Preparing Gland Plates For Cables</b> .....	100		
<b>Principle Diagram</b> .....	59		
<b>Profibus</b>			
Profibus.....	77		
DP-V1.....	150		
D-Sub 9.....	77		
<b>Programming Order</b> .....	28		
<b>Protection</b>			
Protection.....	14, 34		
And Features.....	47		
<b>Protocol Overview</b> .....	166		
<b>Pt1000 Temperature Sensor</b> .....	59		
<b>Public Supply Network</b> .....	33		
<b>Pulse</b>			
Inputs.....	49		
Start/Stop.....	156		
<b>Pump Staging With Lead Pump Alternation</b> .....	161		
<b>R</b>			
<b>Radiated Emission</b> .....	32		
<b>Rated Motor Speed</b> .....	8		
<b>RCD</b>			
RCD.....	10		
(Residual Current Device).....	70		
<b>Read Holding Registers (03 HEX)</b> .....	178		
<b>Real-time Clock (RTC)</b> .....	60		
<b>Receiving The Frequency Converter</b> .....	92		
<b>Reference Handling</b> .....	26		
<b>Relay</b>			
Option MCB 105.....	58		
Outputs.....	49		
<b>Residual Current Device</b> .....	155		
<b>Rise Time</b> .....	52		
<b>RS-485</b>			
RS-485.....	165		
Bus Connection.....	149		

**S**

**Safe**

Stop + Pilz Relay..... 70  
 Stop Commissioning Test..... 149  
 Stop Installation..... 148  
 Stop Operation (optional)..... 39

**Safety**

Earth Connection..... 151  
 Note..... 12  
 Regulations..... 12  
 Requirements Of Mechanical Installation..... 91

Save Drive Settings..... 150

Screened..... 108

Screened/armoured..... 112

Screening Of Cables..... 102, 114, 135

**Serial**

Communication..... 50, 154  
 Communication Port..... 9

Set Speed Limit And Ramp Time..... 148

Short Circuit Protection..... 103

Side-by-side Installation..... 90

**Sine-wave**

Filter..... 101, 114, 136  
 Filters..... 64

Smart Logic Control..... 157

Soft-starter..... 17

**Software**

Version And Approvals..... 13  
 Versions..... 78

**Space**

Space..... 94  
 Heaters And Thermostat..... 69

Star/delta Starter..... 17

Start/Stop..... 156

Status Word..... 181

Successful AMA..... 148

Surroundings..... 50

Switches S201, S202 And S801..... 112

Switching Frequency..... 102, 114, 136

Symbols..... 7

System Status And Operation..... 161

**T**

Telegram Length (LGE)..... 167

**Terminal**

37..... 39  
 Blocks..... 77  
 Locations..... 125

**The**

Clear Advantage - Energy Savings..... 15  
 EMC Directive (2004/108/EC)..... 13  
 Low-voltage Directive (2006/95/EC)..... 13  
 Machinery Directive (2006/42/EC)..... 13

**Thermistor**..... 10

**Torque**

Torque..... 113  
 Characteristics..... 47

**Transmitter/sensor Inputs**..... 59

**Tuning The Closed Loop Controller**..... 29

**Type Code String**..... 73

**U**

**Unpacking**..... 92

**Unsuccessful AMA**..... 148

**USB**

Cable..... 77  
 Connection..... 105

**Use Of EMC-Correct Cables**..... 153

**V**

**Variable**

(Quadratic) Torque Applications (VT)..... 53  
 Control Of Flow And Pressure..... 16  
 Speed Pumps..... 61

**Varying Flow Over One Year**..... 16

**Vibration And Shock**..... 15

**Voltage Level**..... 49

**WCplus**..... 10

**W**

**Warning Against Unintended Start**..... 12

**What**

Is CE Conformity And Labelling?..... 13  
 Is Covered..... 13

**Wire Access**..... 94



[www.danfoss.com/drives](http://www.danfoss.com/drives)

---

Danfoss can accept no responsibility for possible errors in catalogues, brochures and other printed material. Danfoss reserves the right to alter its products without notice. This also applies to products already on order provided that such alterations can be made without subsequential changes being necessary in specifications already agreed. All trademarks in this material are property of the respective companies. Danfoss and the Danfoss logotype are trademarks of Danfoss A/S. All rights reserved.

---

